

THE  
ZULU-KARIR  
LANGUAGE  
ROBERTS

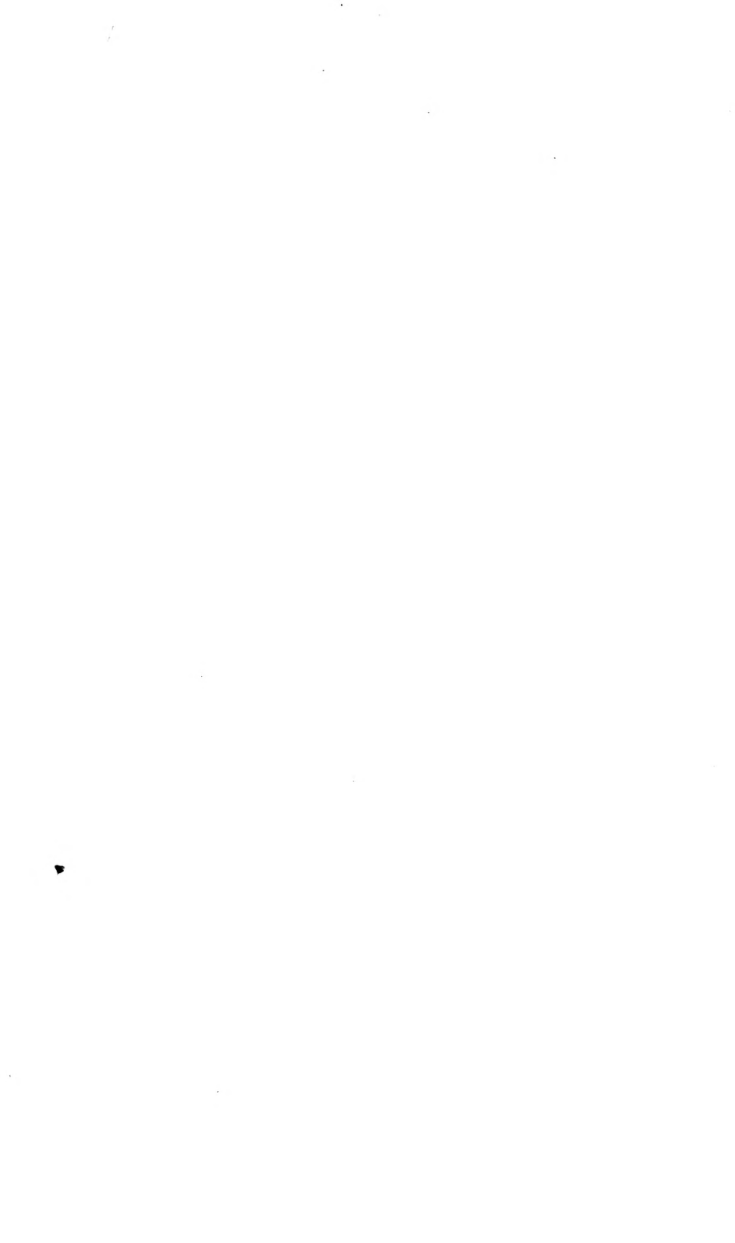


**Ex Libris**

*Henry H. Bucher, Jr.*

*Cat Garlit Bucher*





14  
~~Mark: n~~  
Transfered from  
Matt's Library to  
Henry's, On the  
occasion of his  
60th Birthday.  
6 March 1996

THE

Love,  
Matt

ZULU-KAFIR LANGUAGE

## AFRICAN LANGUAGES.

---

BY THE SAME AUTHOR.

**An English-Zulu Dictionary:** with the Principles of Pronunciation and Classification fully explained. By the Rev. CHARLES ROBERTS. Second Impression of the Second Edition, with Supplement. Royal 16mo. 5s. net.

---

**Comparative Grammar of the South African Bantu Languages,** comprising those of Zanzibar, Mozambique, the Zambezi, Kafirland, Benguela, Angola, the Congo, the Ogowe, the Cameroons, the Lake Region, &c. By the Rev. J. TORRENT. Super-royal 8vo. 25s.

---

**Somali-English and English-Somali Dictionary.** By the Rev. FR. EVANGELISTE DE LARAJASSE. Imperial 16mo. 12s. net.

---

**Practical Grammar of the Somali Language.** By the Rev. FR. EVANGELISTE DE LARAJASSE and the Rev. FR. CYPRIEN DE SAMPONT, with a Manual of Sentences. Imperial 16mo. 12s. net.

---

**Grammar of the Hausa Language.** By C. ROBINSON. Crown 8vo. 5s.

---

LONDON: KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO., LTD.

T H E  
Z U L U - K A F I R  
L A N G U A G E

SIMPLIFIED FOR BEGINNERS.

BY THE  
REV. CHARLES ROBERTS,

*Author of an "English-Zulu Dictionary," "The South African Travellers' Handbook," "Step-by-Step in Zulu," &c.*

THIRD EDITION, ENLARGED.

SECOND IMPRESSION

LONDON :  
KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO., LTD.  
PATERNOSTER HOUSE, CHANCERY LANE.

—  
1899

LONDON

PRINTED BY GILBERT AND RIVINGTON, LD.,  
ST. JOHN'S HOUSE, CLEERINWELL ROAD, E.C.

## PREFACE.

---

SINCE I am not writing a Zulu Grammar (*i.e.*, according to the common acceptation of the word), I have felt at liberty to fix upon that arrangement which experience has induced me to believe is best for beginners.

Although this book is not intended to supersede grammars, it will be found to contain many of the forms of expression most generally used; and it will save the learner the labour of committing to memory other forms, well-nigh obsolete.

Those who have a better acquaintance with the language than the writer will doubtless detect a few inaccuracies. At the same time they will perhaps allow that, for beginners, it is not inferior to any that has hitherto appeared.

To several Ministers of the Natal District (particularly the late Revs. J. Cameron, Chairman of the District, and J. Jackson, jun.) I am indebted for the great assistance afforded me by their valuable criticisms and suggestions. And though I alone am responsible for the contents of the Work, it may in many respects be considered a joint composition.

I must also mention the obligations I am under to the Revs. Boyce, Appleyard, Grout, Davis, as well as Dr. Colenso, with whose admirable works on the Kafir Language I am somewhat familiar.

## PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION.

---

IN preparing a Second Edition of the following graduated Lessons, I have not made any alteration in the general arrangement, nor have I considered it expedient to enlarge the scope ; because an extension of the plan would have increased the cost without affording any special advantage to those persons for whom the Work was originally written. Each page has, however, been carefully revised, and, where necessary, additions to the Exercises have been made.

C. R.

LONDON, 1880.

## PREFACE TO THE THIRD EDITION.

---

SOME time ago the writer was fully convinced that the previous editions could, by judicious enlargement, be greatly improved ; and, it is hoped, the additional matter contained in its present form will supply what was needed to make the book available for all ordinary purposes, without the necessity of referring to a Grammar, elaborate or otherwise. The last edition having been stereotyped, I have not been able to re-arrange the larger vocabularies at the end. But the shorter ones, connected with the lessons, together with my English-Zulu Dictionary, will be found amply sufficient. The aim throughout has been to make it a standard work ; and those conversant with the subject will be able to judge whether the Author has succeeded in doing so.

# CONTENTS.

---

| Lesson.   | Page. |
|---|-------|
| 1. Orthography and Accentuation ... ..  | 1     |
| 2. Emphatic personal forms of Present tense, Indicative mood ... ..   | 2     |
| 3. Accusative case of the Personal pronouns ... ..  | 2     |
| 4. Omission of <i>ya</i> . Formation of Present Participle. <i>Uma</i> , if ... ..  | 3     |
| 5. First future tense, <i>simple</i> and <i>premissory</i> ... ..   | 4     |
| 6. Simple <i>Past</i> tense. Two forms of the <i>Past-progressive</i> ... ..  | 5     |
| 7. Present and Imperfect tense, Potential Mood ... ..   | 6     |
| 8. Present tense, Imperative Mood ... ..  | 7     |
| 9. Government of the 3rd Per. by eight classes of nouns in the sing. num. and<br>four in the plur. ... ..                             | 9     |
| 10. 3rd Per. of the Past and Future tenses, simple and emphatic ... ..  | 9     |
| 11. Useful forms of the 3rd Per., Past-progressive tense ... ..   | 10    |
| 12. 3rd Per. sing. and plur. of the Personal pronouns. Verb "To be" ... ..  | 11    |
| 13. Varieties of the Accusative case of the Personal pronouns. Emphatic form<br>of pronoun. Dative case of pronouns ... ..            | 12    |
| 14. Adj. used as a Predicate and an Epithet. Position of the adj. Relative<br>pronouns and <i>how united</i> to a verb or adj. ... .. | 13    |
| 15. <i>By means of, on, about, with, and</i> ... ..   | 15    |
| 16. Euphonic letter. Possessive pronouns. Possessive case of Proper names of<br>persons ... ..  | 16    |
| 17. Table of Demonstrative pronouns ... ..  | 18    |
| 18. To express It is I, &c. My, thy father, mother, &c. ... ..  | 19    |
| 19. Inflection of nouns ... ..  | 20    |
| 20. <i>Mine, thine, his. It is mine, &amp;c.</i> ... ..   | 22    |
| 21. <i>Only, alone, all</i> ... ..  | 23    |
| 22. To express <i>whose</i> ... ..  | 24    |
| 23. Accusative of the Relative pronoun ... ..   | 24    |
| 24. <i>To whom, by whom, with whom</i> ... ..   | 26    |
| 25. Vowel verbs. Use of the verb <i>ukuti</i> ... ..  | 26    |
| 26. Comparative degree of adjectives. Superlative ... ..  | 28    |
| 27. <i>Certain</i> . Demonstrative Adverbs ... ..   | 29    |
| 28. Perfect and Pluperfect tenses ... ..  | 30    |
| 29. A few <i>idioms</i> of the language ... ..  | 32    |
| 30. Another variety of the Perfect tense ... ..   | 33    |

| Lesson.  | Page. |
|--|-------|
| 51. Second-future tense ... ..   | 34    |
| 52. First-future-progressive tense ... ..  | 35    |
| 53. Subjunctive Mood. Verbs joined by the Copulative conj. <i>and</i> ...  | 35    |
| 54. <i>All three, four, &amp;c.</i> ... ..   | 36    |
| 55. <i>One by one, other</i> .. ... ..   | 38    |
| 56. To express, <i>still, yet, a polite request, strong entreaty, now, until, do a thing once, just manage to do it, not so</i> ... ..   | 39    |
| 57. <i>Continually, just, like as, a long time, where.</i> Verb intensified ...  | 41    |
| 58. Interrogative Pronouns and Adverbs ... ..  | 42    |
| 59. Objective, Causative, Reflective, and Reciprocal verbs ... ..  | 43    |
| 60. Adverbs of <i>time, place, &amp;c.</i> First, &c., person or thing. <i>Bo, simply, merely</i>  | 44    |
| 61. Dative and Ablative cases. How united to other forms. Towards ...  | 45    |
| 62. Vocative case. Employment of Inf. Mood ... ..  | 47    |
| 63. Negative Verbs ... ..  | 48    |
| 64. Neg. of Present tense, Ind. Mood. <i>Tyo, to say.</i> Has not yet ... ..   | 50    |
| 65. Neg. of Present and Past Participles. The sense of before, as applied to time  | 51    |
| 66. Neg. of Perf. and Imp. tense, Ind. Mood. Endings of <i>ala, ela, &amp;c.</i> , in Perfect tense ... ..   | 52    |
| 67. Neg. of First Future and Pluperfect tenses ... ..  | 53    |
| 68. Neg. of Second-future and Future-progressive ... ..  | 54    |
| 69. Neg. of <i>Present and Past</i> tenses, Potential Mood ... ..  | 55    |
| 70. Neg. of Imp. Mood ... ..   | 56    |
| 71. Passive voice of the <i>Simple, Causative and Objective</i> forms ... ..   | 56    |
| 72. Passive voice of words which have <i>b, p, m, mb, mp</i> , in the last syllable ...  | 58    |
| 73. To express <i>never</i> of past time, <i>ought, continuing the same, it is not</i> ...   | 59    |
| 74. Passive voice for the Active. To express <i>never</i> of future time. Cannot. <i>Umnini</i> joined to a <i>noun</i> ... ..   | 60    |
| 75. Prefixes of Adjectival-monosyllabic roots. The position of adjectives when emphasis is required. He, she, &c., has not. Nouns used adverbially. He is merciful, strong, &c. ... .. | 62    |
| 76. To express Oh ! that I, he, &c., may. May I, &c. ... ..  | 63    |
| 77. <i>Then</i> in the Imp. tense. Person to whom something is given ... ..  | 65    |
| 78. Numeral Adverbs. Conversion of adjectives into adverbs. Motion <i>from</i> a place ... ..  | 66    |
| 79. Ineffective tenses. Conviction of certainty. By <i>myself, for my part, &amp;c.</i> ..   | 67    |
| 80. The use of the verb <i>ukuti</i> , as a Prefatory predicate. In connection with a sign. To express we, you are many, &c. ... ..  | 68    |
| 81. Singular nouns coupled by <i>and</i> . Natives count with their <i>fingers</i> . Forms of <i>salutation</i> . ... ..   | 69    |
| 82. Remarks on the composition of Hymns in <i>Kafir</i> ... ..   | 71    |
| 83. Remarks on the language ... ..   | 72    |
| 84. Exercise for correction ... ..   | 73    |
| 85. Differences of Idiom ... ..  | 75    |

| Lesson.   | Page. |
|---|-------|
| 66. To express <i>usually, generally, as soon as, sequence of time</i> , be on the point of<br><i>doing, accidentally, or purposely</i> ... .. 77 | 77    |
| 67. The repetition of an action, or one long continued ... .. 78  | 78    |
| 68. <i>And after, and then, contrive, scheme, get to do...</i> ... .. 79  | 79    |
| 69. Day and night ... .. 79   | 79    |
| 70. Days of the week ... .. 80  | 80    |
| 71. Months of the year, seasons, points of the compass ... .. 81  | 81    |
| 72. The weather ... .. 82   | 82    |
| 73. Differences in idiom, idiomatic verbs ... .. 83   | 83    |
| 74. <i>Exceed, surpass, excel, so that, in order that</i> ... .. 86   | 86    |
| 75. Colloquial contractions ... .. 86   | 86    |
| 76. Planets and constellations ... .. 87  | 87    |
| 77. To express <i>dislike, contempt, superiority, excellence, beauty</i> ... .. 87  | 87    |
| 78. To intensify, diminish ... .. 88  | 88    |
| 79. Adverbs, illustrations ... .. 90  | 90    |
| 80. Order of words composing a period ... .. 92   | 92    |
| 81. To increase intensity of expression ... .. 94   | 94    |
| 82. Objective verbs ... .. 94   | 94    |
| 83. Reciprocal verbs ... .. 95  | 95    |
| 84. Special forms of plural ... .. 96   | 96    |
| 85. <i>Actually, just so, it came to pass</i> ... .. 96   | 96    |
| 86. Selections for translation ... .. 97  | 97    |
| 87. Points of resemblance between Zulu-Kafir and Hebrew languages ... 101   | 101   |
| 88. Questions ... .. 103  | 103   |

---

## APPENDIX.

|   | Page. |
|---|-------|
| Table of the Classes of Nouns ... ..                          | 106   |
| ----- Dative and Ablative Cases ... ..                        | 106   |
| ----- Personal Pronouns, 1 and 2 pers. ... ..                 | 107   |
| ----- 3 per. ... ..   | 107   |
| ----- Demonstrative Pronouns ... ..                           | 108   |
| ----- Interrogative Pronouns ... ..                           | 108   |
| ----- Relative Pronouns, 1 and 2 pers. ... ..                 | 108   |
| ----- 3 per. ... ..   | 109   |
| ----- Demonstrative Adverbs ... ..                            | 110   |
| ----- Adjectives ... ..                                       | 110   |
| ----- Adverbs ... ..  | 111   |
| ----- Conjunctions ... ..                                     | 112   |
| ----- Interjections ... ..                                    | 112   |
| ----- Cardinal and Ordinal Numbers ... ..                     | 112   |
| ----- Ind. Mood, Active Voice ... ..                          | 113   |
| ----- Varieties of the Root of the Passive voice ... ..       | 116   |
| ----- Ind. Mood, Active voice, Negative ... ..                | 116   |
| ----- Potential Mood, Affirmative and Negative ... ..         | 118   |
| ----- Optative Mood ... ..                                    | 120   |
| ----- Subjunctive Mood, Affirmative and Negative ... ..       | 120   |
| ----- Imp. Mood, Affirmative and Negative ... ..              | 120   |
| ----- Infinitive Mood ... ..                                  | 121   |
| Causative, Objective, Reflective, and Reciprocal Verbs ... .. | 121   |

VOCABULARY 1. English-Zulu.

VOCABULARY 2. Zulu-English.





# THE ZULU-KAFIR LANGUAGE.

---

## LESSON 1.

1. The sounds of the Zulu-Kafir language are expressed by means of twenty-six letters, seventeen being used for the *consonants*, five for the *vowels*, three for the *clicks*, and one for a harsh *guttural*.

2. The *vowels* are sounded as follows:—

|   |       |                     |        |
|---|-------|---------------------|--------|
| a | as a  | in the English word | father |
| e | as e  | ..                  | there  |
| i | as i  | ..                  | pique  |
| o | as o  | ..                  | hole   |
| u | as oo | ..                  | moon   |

3. The *consonants* are pronounced as in the English language, with the exception of *g*, which is always *hard*, as in *give*.

*Example.*

ukugijima, to run.

4. The guttural *r*, and the clicks *c*, *q*, *x*, also *hl* and *dhl*, can be best learned from a native.

5. As a rule the accent falls on the *penultimate* of each word; but when followed by monosyllables, as *nje*, *ke*, &c., it passes on to the ultimate.

*Example.*

tulá ke, please be quiet.

6. There is no Article in the language.

## EXERCISE I.

Pronounce the following syllables:—

ba, gi, ko, qu, xe, po, ru, ca, tí, so, no, je.

## LESSON 2.

1. The emphatic-personal forms, Present tense, Indicative mood, are as follows :—

|       | 1.P.  | 2.P. | 3.P. |
|-------|-------|------|------|
| SING. | ngiya | uya  | uya  |
|       | 1.P.  | 2.P. | 3.P. |
| PLUR. | siya  | niya | baya |

When the action is progressive, the *ya* is generally used.

2. Uku or ukw is the sign of the Infinitive.

## VOCABULARY 1.

|                 |               |                 |          |
|-----------------|---------------|-----------------|----------|
| Baca, <i>v.</i> | Hide oneself. | Buba, <i>v.</i> | Perish.  |
| Bema, <i>v.</i> | Take snuff.   | Busa, <i>v.</i> | Govern.  |
| Biza, <i>v.</i> | Call.         | Buta, <i>v.</i> | Gather.  |
| Bona, <i>v.</i> | See.          | Buya, <i>v.</i> | Return.  |
| Bopa, <i>v.</i> | Bind.         | Buza, <i>v.</i> | Enquire. |

## EXERCISE 2.

I am taking snuff. He enquires. Thou bindest. We see. I govern. You return. They gather. Thou enquirest. They perish. We hide. Thomas calls. We call. You see.

N.B.—In translating an English proper name place the prefix *u* before it.

Siya biza. Baya buza. Niya buta. Ngiya buya. Baya bema. Ngiya baca. Uya busa. Siya bopa. Niya bona. Uya buba.

ℳ There are other forms of the 3rd Per., Sing. and Plur., which will be given in future Lessons.

## LESSON 3.

1. The *accusative* forms of the personal pronouns are :—

|       | 1.P. | 2.P. | 3.P. |
|-------|------|------|------|
| SING. | ngi  | ku   | ni   |
|       | 1.P. | 2.P. | 3.P. |
| PLUR. | si   | ni   | ba   |

2. These forms are placed immediately before the *root* of the verb.

*Examples.*

Baya m bona, they see him.  
 ngiya ni funa, I want you.

3. When great emphasis is required, the nouns for which the pronouns stand are placed *after* the verb, as well as a pronoun in the accusative case *before* it.

*Example.*

ngiya m tanda umfana, I do like the boy.

4. Substantives in the accusative case do not undergo any alteration. In the exercise below, where nouns are governed, the pronoun is to be omitted.

## VOCABULARY 2.

|                         |             |                             |               |
|-------------------------|-------------|-----------------------------|---------------|
| Camanga, <i>v.</i>      | Think.      | Tanda, <i>v.</i>            | Love or like. |
| Cela, <i>v.</i>         | Ask for.    | Bisi (U for Ulu), <i>n.</i> | Sweet milk.   |
| Cima, <i>v.</i>         | Extinguish. | Bila (im), <i>n.</i>        | Rock-rabbit.  |
| Camelo (Isi), <i>n.</i> | Pillow.     | Bila (um), <i>n.</i>        | Mealies.      |
| Hashi (I), <i>n.</i>    | Horse.      | Buzi (im), <i>n.</i>        | Goat.         |
| Ntu (Umu), <i>n.</i>    | Person.     | Buto (I), <i>n.</i>         | Soldier.      |
|                         |             | Bane (Isi), <i>n.</i>       | Candle.       |

## EXERCISE 3.

I extinguish the candle. We like sweet milk. Thou lovest them. They are binding the soldier. I see thee. We are calling you. I govern him. I want a pillow. We are asking for a goat. You think. They see a rock-rabbit. I want you. They love me. He loves him. They want them. Return the pillow. I am calling for a candle.

Ngiya funa imbuzi. Uya tanda umbila. Baya ngi funa. Siya ba bona. Niya ngi biza. Baya tanda ubisi. Siya bona ilhashi. Ngiya cima isibane. Ngiya cela imbila.

## LESSON 4.

1. When no particular stress is required, the emphatic form *ya* is omitted.

*Examples.*

|                     |                             |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| ufuna ni?           | what do you want?           |
| ngi funa umuti,     | I want medicine.            |
| utanda loku yinina? | dost thou like this or not? |
| ngiya ku tanda,     | I do like it.               |

2. By changing the final *a* of the prefixes of the 3. Per., sing. and plur., into *e*, the Present Participle is obtained.

*Example.*

e tanda, he loving.

3. Uma, if, is placed before the Participle.

*Example.*

uma e tanda, if he loves.

### VOCABULARY 3.

|                        |            |                       |                           |
|------------------------|------------|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| Dabula, <i>v.</i>      | Tear.      | Didakalisa, <i>v.</i> | Confuse, as in reckoning. |
| Dada (I), <i>n.</i>    | Duck.      | Diliza, <i>v.</i>     | Pull down,                |
| Dela, <i>v.</i>        | Give up    | Donsa, <i>v.</i>      | Pull.                     |
| Depa, <i>v.</i>        | Grow tall. | Dhlu (In), <i>n.</i>  | House.                    |
| Dhla, <i>v.</i>        | Eat.       | Dwa (Umu), <i>n.</i>  | Line drawn.               |
| Dhlovu (In), <i>n.</i> | Elephant.  | Dweba, <i>v.</i>      | Draw, as a line.          |

### EXERCISE 4.

You confuse me. I like the duck. We are pulling down the house. I am drawing a line. They see an elephant. We eat mealies. They are growing tall. I give thee up. If he pull. We do think.

Niya ngi dela. Baya ngi bopa. Ba dons a indhlovu. U diliza indhlu. Baya m didakalisa. Si bona idada. u-Jack uya depa. Siya m bona. Ngiya dweba umudwa. Siya dhla idada. Uya dons a ihashi.

### LESSON 5.

1. The *First-future Tense* is made by adding *ku* to the *emphatic* form of the present tense.

*Examples.*

ngiyaku bona, I shall see.  
layaku ngi biza, they will call me.

2. To express *promise* or *determination*, the *emphatic* form is used:—

|       |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
|       | 1. P. | 2. P. | 3. P. |
| SING. | ngo   | wo    | wo    |
|       | 1. P. | 2. P. | 3. P. |
| PLUR. | so    | no    | bo    |

*Examples.*

bo hamba, they shall go.  
ngo ku siza, I will help you.

## VOCABULARY 4.

|                          |                  |                       |                |
|--------------------------|------------------|-----------------------|----------------|
| Fa, <i>v.</i>            | Be sick or dead. | Fika, <i>v.</i>       | Arrive.        |
| Fakazi (U), <i>n.</i>    | Witness.         | Finya, <i>v.</i>      | Blow the nose. |
| Faka, <i>v.</i>          | Put on or into.  | Doda (In), <i>n.</i>  | Man.           |
| Fasimba (U), <i>n.</i>   | Dry fog.         | Fazi (Um), <i>n.</i>  | Woman.         |
| Fana (Um), <i>n.</i>     | Boy.             | Gane (In), <i>n.</i>  | Infant.        |
| Fe (Im), <i>n.</i>       | Sweet reed.      | Futa (Ama), <i>n.</i> | Fat.           |
| Felokazi (Um), <i>n.</i> | Widow.           | Funda, <i>v.</i>      | Learn.         |
| Fezela (U), <i>n.</i>    | Scorpion.        | Fu (Ili), <i>n.</i>   | Cloud.         |

## EXERCISE 5.

We shall see a dry fog. We like sweet reed. You will arrive. I will pull down the house. Thou shalt go. I shall confuse them. They like fat. You will want a witness. Thou shalt draw a line. They shall learn. I shall eat duck. They will bind the soldier. He calls the boy. The witness returns. The boy learns. The woman is sick.

Ngo buya. Wo finya. Ngiyaku baca. Ngo biza indoda. Bayaku buba. Niyaku cima isibane. Ngiya funa isicamelo. Ngi cela umbila. Siya tanda ingane. Umfelokazi uya fika. Ingane iyadabula. Umfana uya dweba.

## LESSON 6.

1. Change the *o* of the emphatic form of the future into *a*, and you will have the *Simple-Past* tense.

*Examples.*

ngo sebenza, I will work.  
nga sebenza, I worked.

2. (*a.*) Of the Past-progressive tense, there are several varieties, of which the two most frequently used are the following:—

|       |       |       |                       |
|-------|-------|-------|-----------------------|
|       | 1. P. | 2. P. | 3. P.                 |
| SING. | bengi | ubu   | ube ( <i>or ebe</i> ) |
|       | 1. P. | 2. P. | 3. P.                 |
| PLUR. | besi  | beni  | bebe                  |

This is used, when speaking of that which has lately occurred.

(b.) The next is, for the most part, simply a union of the past and present simple tenses.

|       |        |      |      |
|-------|--------|------|------|
|       | 1.P.   | 2.P. | 3.P. |
| SING. | ngangi | wau  | waye |
|       | 1.P.   | 2.P. | 3.P. |
| PLUR. | sasi   | nani | babe |

*Example.*

babe sebenza, they were working.

VOCABULARY 5.

|                      |                   |                        |            |
|----------------------|-------------------|------------------------|------------|
| Gaya, <i>v.</i>      | Grind, as corn.   | Gubo (In), <i>n.</i>   | Blanket.   |
| Geja (I), <i>n.</i>  | Native pick.      | Guga, <i>v.</i>        | Grow old.  |
| Geza, <i>v.</i>      | Wash.             | Gulube (In), <i>n.</i> | Hog.       |
| Gijima, <i>v.</i>    | Run.              | Gwe (In), <i>n.</i>    | Panther.   |
| Godi (Um), <i>n.</i> | Hole.             | Gwenya (In), <i>n.</i> | Alligator. |
|                      | Gwinya, <i>v.</i> | Swallow.               |            |

EXERCISE 6.

We shall grow old. They shall grind the mealies. They were washing (late)ly the dress. He wanted a hog. You saw an alligator. He was running. He wanted a boy. Thomas loved the infant. I extinguished the candle. They called the man. The boy is tearing the blanket.

Ba biza umfana. Sa bona umgodi. Babe dons a ingwenya. Wa diliza indhlu. Umfana ube depa. Ubu funa ukugeza ingubo. Sa buza. Sa buya. Ba buba. Wa biza umfazi. Babe dhla indhlovu. Wa dabula ingubo. Ba m didakalisa. Ngo ku biza. Siya guga. Baya gaya umbila.

LESSON 7.

1. The Present tense of the Potential mood is formed by substituting *nga* for the *ya* of the P. T. Ind. mood. The only exception is the 3rd Per. Sing., where the initial vowel of the prefix must be changed into *u*.

*Examples.*

anga sebenza, he may work.  
banga puna, they may go out.

2. The Imperfect tense requires the *nga* to be added to the prefixes of the two varieties of the Past Progressive (Lesson 6): the first variety is used when proximity of time is implied.

*Example.*

banginga tanda, I might, could, would love.

VOCABULARY 6.

|                       |            |                        |                  |
|-----------------------|------------|------------------------|------------------|
| Hlaba (Um), <i>n.</i> | Earth.     | Hlansi (In), <i>n.</i> | Spark of fire.   |
| Hlafuna, <i>v.</i>    | Masticate. | Hlanzi (In), <i>n.</i> | Fish.            |
| Hlaka (In), <i>n.</i> | Gum.       | Hlaulisa, <i>v.</i>    | Make pay a fine. |
| Hlakula, <i>v.</i>    | Weed.      | Hleba, <i>v.</i>       | Speak evil of.   |

Hleka, *v.* Laugh.

EXERCISE 7.

They will speak evil of you. I see a fish. They are laughing. Thou mayest wash the dress. They could arrive. They could grind the mealies. He might call the boy. Thou mayest ask for a candle. They might tear the dress. They will run. They shall see you. They will see you. They could pull down the house. He might confuse you in reckoning. I will make him pay a fine.

Ubunga funda. Unga hamba. Benginga hlafuna. Ngiya bona inhlanzi. Baya ngi hleka. Bebenga tanda ingane. Ngo fika. Ngiyaku hlakula. Ngo ku hlaulisa. Banga geza. Baya hleba umuntu. Banga gijima.

LESSON 8.

1. In the formation of the Imperative mood, pres. tense, *a* or *ma* is placed before the simple form of all the persons and classes (see Lesson 9) of the present tense, Ind. mood; and the final letter of the root is changed into *e*. The exceptions to this rule are found in the 3. per. sing., and the 3. per. plur. 2. class :—

| 1.P.  | 2.P. | 3.P.      |
|-------|------|-----------|
| maugi | mau  | maka, &c. |

*Examples.*

|                             |                        |
|-----------------------------|------------------------|
| aka hlakule,                | let him weed.          |
| aba (or maba) donse inkabi, | let them pull the ox.  |
| aka pume amalashi,          | let the horses go out. |

2. In the *second* person, sing. and plur., *mau* and *mani* are employed only when you make a request, or order politely. The forms generally used are—the simple root in the sing., and the root with the

affix *ni* in the plur. And when the root begins with a vowel, the letter *y* must be prefixed.

*Examples.*

|                 |              |
|-----------------|--------------|
| suka,           | get away.    |
| sukani,         | get ye away. |
| yemuka (emuka), | depart.      |
| gijimani,       | run ye.      |

3. When a pronoun in the accusative case is placed before a verb in the Imp. mood, the final letter of the root is changed into *e* (*i.e.* in the 2. per. sing. and plur.)

*Examples.*

|            |               |
|------------|---------------|
| m shiye,   | leave him.    |
| m shiyeni, | leave ye him. |

4. In connection with *ya* and *za*, there is a *contracted* form of the imperative, when the sign of the inf. (*uku*) is dropped, and the second letter of the prefixes given in Lesson 9 is changed to *o*.

*Examples.*

|                     |                                 |
|---------------------|---------------------------------|
| asi ye ukulima,     | } let us go to plough.          |
| (contr.) aso lima } |                                 |
| aso bona unlungu,   | let us go to see the white man. |

### VOCABULARY 7.

|                      |                  |                         |                  |
|----------------------|------------------|-------------------------|------------------|
| Hlinza, <i>v.</i>    | Skin.            | Kabi (In), <i>n.</i>    | Ox.              |
| Hlobo (I), <i>n.</i> | Summer.          | Zolo (I), <i>n.</i>     | Yesterday.       |
| Hlonipa, <i>v.</i>   | Behave modestly. | Hliziyo (In), <i>n.</i> | Heart.           |
| Hlusula, <i>v.</i>   | Wring off.       | Hloma, <i>v.</i>        | Prepare for war. |
| Kanda (I), <i>n.</i> | Head.            | Hlaza (Um), <i>n.</i>   | Sweet potato.    |
| Hlanya, <i>v.</i>    | Be insane.       | Hlangu (Isi), <i>n.</i> | War-shield.      |

### EXERCISE 8.

Let them grind the corn. He may run. Let her wash the dress. Put on the dress. They are sick. I saw a scorpion yesterday. Learn ye. Let them return. Extinguish the candle. Be quiet (politely). We like the summer. Prepare ye for war. Behave modestly. He is insane. Skin the ox. They like sweet potatoes. Let him grind the mealies.

Bamba inhlanzi. Hlinzani inkabi. Hlaulisa indoda. Baya ngi hleka. Bebenga biza umfana. Ninga dhla idada. Umfana uya depa. Ngiya tanda ihlobo. Niyaku bona isihlangu. Faka ingubo. Aka fune isicamelo. Hambani. Aso hlinza inkabi. Ani gaye umbila. Aka gze ingubo. Hlonipani indoda. Sukani. Aso hlakula. Baya hlanya. Abo hlinza inkabi. Aso diliza indhlu.

## LESSON 9.

1. The *third* person *sing.* is governed by eight classes of nouns, and it changes its initial letter according to the prefix of the nominative with which it is connected.

2. The third person *plur.* is governed by four classes of nouns. Both the *sing.* and *plur.* of the *first* variety of both of these classes have already been considered in Lesson 2, &c.

3. On examination, it will be found that the prefixes of the noun and corresponding verb are much alike.

4. The emphatic form, of course, takes the *ya* in every class :—

|       | 1. P. | 2. P. | 3. P. 1. Class. | 2. C. | 3. C. | 4. C. | 5. C. | 6. C. | 7. C. | 8. C. |
|-------|-------|-------|-----------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| SING. | ngi   | u     | u               | li    | i     | si    | lu    | u     | bu    | ku    |
|       | 1. P. | 2. P. | 3. P. 1. Class. | 2. C. | 3. C. | 4. C. |       |       |       |       |
| PLUR. | si    | ni    | ba              | a     | zi    | i     |       |       |       |       |

N.B.—These forms are the *nom.* case of the *personal pronouns*.

## VOCABULARY 8.

|                        |                      |                          |                   |
|------------------------|----------------------|--------------------------|-------------------|
| Jabula, <i>v.</i>      | Be glad.             | Jaka (Isi), <i>n.</i>    | Passionate person |
| Jezisa, <i>v.</i>      | Condemn, as a judge. | Jama, <i>v.</i>          | Look sternly.     |
| Baba, <i>v.</i>        | Be bitter.           | Ilungu (Ubu), <i>n.</i>  | Pain.             |
| Jingi (Isi), <i>n.</i> | Kind of porridge.    | Ilonyane (Um), <i>n.</i> | Wormwood.         |
| Juba (1), <i>n.</i>    | Dove.                | Jwayela, <i>v.</i>       | Be accustomed to. |

## EXERCISE 9.

Ihashi liya jabula. Umuntu uya jama. Isijingi siya baba. Inkabi iya jwayela. Ubuhlungu buya hlupa. Isijaka siya fika. Inhlanzi iya guga. Indoda iya hlafuna umhlonyane. Aka hlinze inkabi. Uyaku jama. Ingulube iya gijima. Izinkomo ziya jabula. Ingwe iya gwinya imbuzi. Jabulani. Yemukani. Aso funa ijuba. Ano geza. Isijaka siya jama.

## LESSON 10.

1. The prefixes given in Lesson 9 are a key both to the *Past* and *First-future* tenses emphatic. The prefixes of the former are :—

|       | 1. P. | 2. P. | 3. P. 1. C.     | 2. C. | 3. C. | 4. C. | 5. C. | 6. C. | 7. C. | 8. C. |
|-------|-------|-------|-----------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| SING. | nga   | wa    | wa              | la    | ya    | sa    | hwa   | wa    | ba    | kwa   |
|       | 1. P. | 2. P. | 3. P. 1. Class. | 2. C. | 3. C. | 4. C. |       |       |       |       |
| PLUR. | sa    | na    | ba              | a     | za    | ya    |       |       |       |       |

2. The prefixes of the *First-future* tense emphatic are obtained by changing the final *a* of the past tense into *o*. But in class 8 the *w* is dropped.

*Examples.*

|                         |                                 |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------|
| indoda ya fika izolo,   | the man arrived yesterday.      |
| indoda yo fika ngomuso, | the man shall arrive to-morrow. |
| umfana wo sebenza,      | the boy shall work.             |

3. The first-future *simple* takes *yaku* after the prefixes given in Lesson 9; but *zaku* in the sense of coming to a place.

*Example.*

isidakwa siyaku tanda ukupuza, the drunkard will desire to drink.

## VOCABULARY 9.

|                        |                     |                       |                      |
|------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| Ka, <i>v.</i>          | Dip water.          | Kasa, <i>v.</i>       | Crawl, as an infant. |
| Nzi (Ama), <i>n.</i>   | Water.              | Kato (In), <i>n.</i>  | Lot.                 |
| Kaba, <i>v.</i>        | Kick.               | Kau (In), <i>n.</i>   | Monkey.              |
| Kala, <i>v.</i>        | Cry.                | Koba (Um), <i>n.</i>  | Yellow-wood tree.    |
| Kalima, <i>v.</i>      | Turn back, as oxen. | Kolo (Isi), <i>n.</i> | School.              |
| Kanya, <i>v.</i>       | Shine.              | Kolwa, <i>v.</i>      | Believe.             |
| Konyane(In), <i>n.</i> | Calf.               | Kononda, <i>v.</i>    | Grumble.             |
| Ja (In), <i>n.</i>     | Dog.                | Kota, <i>v.</i>       | Lick.                |
| Kuba (Um), <i>n.</i>   |                     | Custom.               |                      |

## EXERCISE 10.

I like the custom. They may believe. A horse kicked the boy. Turn back (sing.) the ox. The dog will kill the calf. A dog bit the monkey. An infant was crawling. They grumble. The monkey does like water. I see a yellow-wood tree. A boy is crying. The porridge was bitter. The man was insane yesterday. A man shall go. A hog ran.

Kalimani inkabi. Baya ka amanzi. Inkau iya hlupa. Siya tanda isikolo. Indoda ya kala. Kolwani. Inkosi ya jama. Umfazi wa hleka umfana. Aba funde ukuhlinza inkomo. Isidakwa sa dabula ingubo. Aso ka amanzi. Ingane iya kala. Siya kononda. Inja ikota. Inkonyane iya kota.

## LESSON 11.

1. Useful forms of the Past-progressive of the classes given in Lesson 9 can be made as follows :—

|       | 1.P.  | 2.P. | 3.P.I.C.     | 2.C. | 3.C. | 4.C. | 5.C. | 6.C. | 7.C. | 8.C. |
|-------|-------|------|--------------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| SING. | bengi | ubu  | ube          | beli | ibi  | besi | belu | ubu  | bebu | beku |
|       | 1.P.  | 2.P. | 3.P.I.Class. | 2.C. | 3.C. | 4.C. |      |      |      |      |
| PLUR. | besi  | beni | bebe         | abe  | bezi | ibi  |      |      |      |      |

*Example.*

inkomo ibi puza amanzi, the cow was drinking water (lately, as yesterday).

2. When the proximity of time is *not* intended join the simple past and the present tense together :—

|       | 1.P.   | 2.P. | 3.P.1.C.     | 2.C. | 3.C. | 4.C. | 5.C.  | 6.C. | 7.C. | 8.C.  |
|-------|--------|------|--------------|------|------|------|-------|------|------|-------|
| SING. | ngangi | wau  | wae          | lali | yai  | sasi | lwalu | wau  | babu | kwaku |
|       | 1.P.   | 2.P. | 3.P.1.Class. | 2.C. | 2.C. | 4.C. |       |      |      |       |
| PLUR. | sasi   | nani | babe         | ae   | zazl | yai  |       |      |      |       |

*Exceptions :—(a.)* 3 P. sing. 1 class, the *u* is changed into *e*; *(b.)* 3 P. plur. 2 C., the *a* is changed into *e*.

*Example.*

ingwe yai bulalainja, a panther was killing a dog (not lately).

### VOCABULARY 10.

|                             |                         |                       |                    |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|
| Kube kupela, <i>adv.</i>    | That's the whole of it. | Lungu (Um), <i>n.</i> | White man.         |
| Kula (U for Ulu), <i>n.</i> | Weeds.                  | Kwitiza, <i>v.</i>    | Speak indistinctly |
| Kumula, <i>v.</i>           | Loosen, take off.       | Lamba, <i>v.</i>      | Be hungry.         |
| Ilalo (Isi), <i>n.</i>      | Seat, saddle.           | Lamula, <i>v.</i>     | Make peace.        |
| Tendele (I), <i>n.</i>      | Partridge.              | Laula, <i>v.</i>      | Joke.              |
| Laza (U), <i>n.</i>         | Cream.                  | Lenga, <i>v.</i>      | Hang down.         |
| Leta, <i>v.</i>             | Bring.                  | Limaza, <i>v.</i>     | Hurt.              |
| Linga, <i>v.</i>            | Try.                    | Lingoza, <i>v.</i>    | Sob.               |
|                             |                         | Loba, <i>v.</i>       | Catch, as a fish.  |

Lomo (Um), *n.* Mouth.

### EXERCISE 11.

A man hurt the boy. The dog brought a partridge. A white man was speaking indistinctly. Bring (sing.) the cream. Take off the saddle. A woman was sobbing. The boy was trying to catch a fish. A man was fishing. A monkey was eating the porridge. The pain was distressing me. You are joking. An alligator swallowed a pig.

Inkato iyaku ba dlila. Bayaku lamba. Lamulani. Indoda iya hlupa umfazi. Umlungu uya kuluma. Besi laula. Babe cela ulaza. Umfazi ube lingoza. Na linga ukubamba inhlanzi. Da ngi limaza. Leta ihashi. Isijaka sasi kononda. Ibuto lali hloma. Ingubo iya lenga. Ano linga. Babe lamula. Siya laula. Baya loba inhlanzi.

### LESSON 12.

1. The third person, sing. and plur. of the *per. pronouns*, nom. case, is contained in what has been already learnt, being nothing more than the prefixes of the *simple-present* tense, Ind. mood, as stated in Lesson 9.

|       | 1.P. | 2.P. | 3.P.1.Class. | 2.C. | 3.C. | 4.C. | 5.C. | 6.C. | 7.C. | 8.C. |
|-------|------|------|--------------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| SING. | ngi  | u    | u            | li   | i    | si   | lu   | u    | bu   | ku   |
|       | 1.P. | 2.P. | 3.P.1.C.     | 2.C. | 3.C. | 4.C. | 5.C. | 6.C. | 7.C. | 8.C. |
| PLUR. | si   | ni   | ba           | a    | zi   | i    |      |      |      |      |

2. The *Present* tense of the Substantive verb "To be" is implied in the above forms, as it sometimes is in the prefixes of the *Past* tense.

*Examples.*

u kona,                      he *is* present.

\*ba fike kutangi,      they arrived the day before yesterday.

VOCABULARY 11.

|                           |                    |                        |                      |
|---------------------------|--------------------|------------------------|----------------------|
| Makoti (U), <i>n.</i>     | Bride.             | Mema, <i>v.</i>        | Invite.              |
| Mangala, <i>v.</i>        | Wonder.            | Mhlaumbe, <i>adv.</i>  | Perhaps.             |
| Somlotyana (U), <i>n.</i> | Raspberry.         | Minya (Isi), <i>n.</i> | Truth.               |
| Manje, <i>adv.</i>        | Just now.          | Mnandi, <i>adj.</i>    | Sweet, <i>nice</i> . |
| Kona, <i>adv.</i>         | There present.     | Mnyama, <i>adj.</i>    | Black.               |
| Lapa, <i>adv.</i>         | Here.              | Moya (U), <i>n.</i>    | Wind.                |
|                           | Mpofu, <i>adj.</i> | Brown.                 |                      |

EXERCISE 12.

The woman is present. The bride called a boy. Perhaps you may go. The milk is sweet. We are here. The horse is brown. You may go out now. The boy is black. The baby is brown. Let them invite the bride. He is there. The cow is black. They will wonder. They were speaking evil of the man. The infant is here.

Isiminya sikona. Ngiya tanda usomlotyana. Bayaku fika mhlaumbe. Isijingi simnandi. Amanzi amnandi. Ikanda limnyama. Bengi laula. Aba kulume manje. Bakona. Siya tanda isiminya. Umakoti uya hlonipa. Kolwa manje. Niya kononda. Umlomo umnyama. Itendele limnandi. Leta ukula. Umlungu waye kala. Fundani. Si lapa. Letani manje. Umoya n kona. Inkonyane impofu.

LESSON 13.

1. The student will not find any great difficulty in acquiring the varieties of the *Accusative* case of the pronouns, which are as follows :—

|       | 1.P. | 2.P. | 3.P.1.Class. | 2.C. | 3.C. | 4.C. | 5.C. | 6.C. | 7.C. | 8.C. |
|-------|------|------|--------------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| SING. | ngi  | ku   | ni (or mu)   | li   | yi   | si   | lu   | wu   | bu   | ku   |
|       | 1.P. | 2.P. | 3.P.1.Class. | 2.C. | 3.C. | 4.C. | 5.C. | 6.C. | 7.C. | 8.C. |
| PLUR. | si   | ni   | ba           | wa   | zi   | yi   |      |      |      |      |

\*As this prefix is like that of the present tense, the time must as ascertained from the context.

2. Every class of personal pronouns has an *empathic* form which can stand either in the nominative or accusative case :—

|       | 1.P. | 2.P. | 3.P.1.Class. | 2.C. | 3.C. | 4.C. | 5.C. | 6.C. | 7.C. | 8.C. |
|-------|------|------|--------------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| SING. | mina | wena | yena         | lona | yona | sona | lona | wona | bona | kona |
|       | 1.P. | 2.P. | 3.P.1.Class. | 2.C. | 3.C. | 4.C. |      |      |      |      |
| PLUR. | tina | nina | bona         | wona | zona | yona |      |      |      |      |

Contrary to the usage of the English language, these forms are frequently placed *after* the noun, in addition to the accusative case *before* it.

*Example.*

siya mu tanda yena, we like *him*.

3. The Dative case of these pronouns is easily obtained from the emphatic form by prefixing *ku* and throwing away the *na*. But when emphasis is wanted the *na* is retained.

*Examples.*

yena, he.  
kuye or kuyena, to him.  
bona, they.  
kubo or kubona, to them.

VOCABULARY 12.

|                           |              |                        |           |
|---------------------------|--------------|------------------------|-----------|
| Mpumpute (Ubu), <i>n.</i> | Blindness.   | Neitya, <i>v.</i>      | Stint.    |
| Mzukwana, <i>adv.</i>     | When.        | Newadi (In), <i>n.</i> | Book.     |
| Mungulu (Isi), <i>n.</i>  | Dumb person. | Nembala, <i>adv.</i>   | In truth. |
| Namuhla, <i>adv.</i>      | To-day.      | Nenkhe (Um), <i>n.</i> | Slug.     |

EXERCISE 13.

A partridge was flying. A dumb person saw us. We want milk. Read the book. In truth, I will see him. The milk is acid. When he invited the bride, the boy was present. I see a slug. Let them try to catch the fish to-day. You will perhaps fish to-morrow. Bring the book to me.

Baya biza wena. Uya si hlupa tina. Itendele wa li bamba. Ubuhlungu bu kona. Pnma wena. Ba m funa yena. Ubisi lumnandi. Nembala izinkomo ziya hamba zona. Leta innewadi kumi. Niya ba neitya bonz. Innewadi ikona. Abo mema umfana. Uya si neitya.

LESSON 14.

1. When an Adjective is used as a *predicate*, the prefixes given in Lesson 9, corresponding to the noun, must be placed before it.

*Example.*

ubisi lumnandi, the milk is nice.

2. When an adjective is employed as an Epithet, a *relative* pronoun is prefixed to it.

*Examples.*

innewadi enhle, a nice book.  
inkabi enkulu, a large ox.

3. As a rule, the adjective is placed *after* the noun.

*Example.*

isibane esikulu, a large candle.

4. The *Relative* pronouns are *a, e, o*, in using which, the student must be entirely guided by the *first* letter of the prefix of the noun. If the initial vowel is *u*, then *o* represents the relative; if *i, e*, and for those beginning with *a, a*. These pronouns are joined to adjectives, and to verbs, active and passive.

5. In uniting a relative to an adjective, or verb, Lesson 9 must be consulted, and a form corresponding to the noun selected, and placed between them. But in the 2nd and 3rd pers. sing., classes 1, 3, 6; and 3rd per. plur., classes 2 and 4; a combination is made, so that *only* the *relative* is heard.

*Examples.*

umuntu omnyama, a person who is black=a black person.  
inkabi ebomvu, an ox which is red=a red ox.  
ihashi elimhlope, a white horse.  
abantu aba kona, the people who are present.

6. When a relative pronoun is united to a verb, *yo* is frequently affixed to the letter; particularly when the accusative case comes immediately before the verb:

*Examples.*

intombi ehlonipayo, a girl who behaves modestly.  
umntwana otandiweyo, a child which is loved.

VOCABULARY 13.

|                          |                           |                       |                      |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| Nga (Ama), <i>n.</i>     | Lies.                     | Nika, <i>v.</i>       | Give.                |
| Ngaka, <i>adv.</i>       | So large.                 | Nina (U), <i>v.</i>   | His or her mother.   |
| Ngasese, <i>adv.</i>     | Privately.                | Ningi, <i>adj.</i>    | Much.                |
| Ngeweke (In), <i>n.</i>  | Wagon.                    | Njalo, <i>adv.</i>    | Thus, in this manner |
| Ngele (In), <i>n.</i>    | Sleet.                    | Nkani (In), <i>n.</i> | Strife.              |
| Ngena, <i>v.</i>         | Come in.                  | Nkone, <i>adj.</i>    | Striped.             |
| Ngisi (I), <i>n.</i>     | Englishman.               | Nogwaja (U, <i>n.</i> | Hare.                |
| Ngonyama (In), <i>n.</i> | Lion.                     | Kanti, <i>adv.</i>    | But.                 |
| Kanti noko, <i>adv.</i>  | But notwith-<br>standing. | Nqina (In), <i>n.</i> | Hunting party        |
|                          |                           | Nqola (In), <i>n.</i> | Wagon.               |

## EXERCISE 14.

A large wagon. The wagon is large. A striped ox. The ox is striped. The man troubles me, but notwithstanding I like him. Come in (sing.) privately. Give the infant to his mother. Let the wagon go. Let the Englishman come in. The hunting-party went out yesterday. There was strife. A hare was running. A black cow. A brown cow. A white dog. A black dumb person. Many people. A large infant. Acid milk.

Baya kuluma amanga. Ngiya tanda unogwaja. Baya gula njalo. Kuluma ngasese. Banga m bamba yena, kanti noko, nyaku ya kona. Ngenani. Ninga kolwa manje. Kalima inkabi. Niya kuluma amanga. Sa bona inkabi enkone. Nikani innewadi kuye. Sa bona umfana ongaka. Ngiya funa unina. Leta unogwaja. Ingonyama ikona. Inkulu inngewe. Ngena namuhla. Sa tika. Besi kuluma. Sasi hamba. Ba m nika inkomo. Kolwani. Indoda ikona. Baya kwitiza kuye.

## LESSON 15.

1. According to English idiom, we say :—Ride on horse-back, go on foot, travel by ship, &c. ; but a native says :—Ride *by means of* a horse, go by means of the feet, travel by means of a ship.

2. To express this—*by means of*—*nga* is used. It takes the same form of the pronoun as the dative, being merely substituted for the *ku* of the dative (Lesson 13).

3. When joined to a noun, the initial letter of its prefix is changed exactly as in the case of the relative pronouns, and the *a* of the *nga* is rejected.

*Example.*

ngiyaku hamba ngehashi, I shall go on horse-back.

4. This *nga* also means *about* :—

*Example.*

ngiya kuluma ngawe, I am talking about you.

5. To express *with*, or *and*, *na* must be substituted for the *ku* of the dative when joined to the pronouns ; but when united to nouns, the rule contained in paragraph 3 of this Lesson must be strictly observed.

*Examples.*

hamba nehashi, go with a horse.

inja nenkomo, a dog and a cow.

## VOCABULARY 14.

|                        |                    |                        |                 |
|------------------------|--------------------|------------------------|-----------------|
| Engena, <i>v.</i>      | Be indolent.       | Nyama (In), <i>n.</i>  | Meat.           |
| Ntombi (In), <i>n.</i> | Maiden.            | Nyanga (In), <i>n.</i> | Moon, doctor.   |
| Ntu (Umu), <i>n.</i>   | Person.            | Nyatela, <i>v.</i>     | Tread on.       |
| Ntu (Ubu), <i>n.</i>   | Human nature.      | Nye, <i>adj.</i>       | One, another.   |
| Ntwana (Um), <i>n.</i> | Child.             | Nyenyenza, <i>v.</i>   | Whisper         |
| Ntye (In), <i>n.</i>   | Ostrich.           | Nyoka (In), <i>n.</i>  | Snake.          |
| Nuka, <i>v.</i>        | Smell strongly.    | Nyongo (In), <i>n.</i> | Gall, bile.     |
| Nungu (In), <i>n.</i>  | Porcupine.         | Nyoni (In), <i>n.</i>  | Bird.           |
| Nxapa, <i>v.</i>       | Make the x click.  | Nyosi (In), <i>n.</i>  | Bee.            |
| Nyakama, <i>v.</i>     | Knit the brows.    | Buza, <i>v.</i>        | Buzz, as a bee. |
| Nyama (Izi), <i>n.</i> | Grain, as of wood. | Nyovu (Um), <i>n.</i>  | Wasp.           |
| Hle, <i>adj.</i>       | Fine, beautiful.   | Hlaba, <i>v.</i>       | Pierce, prick.  |

## EXERCISE 15.

The bee stings me. A bee was buzzing yesterday. They will see the bee. A large bee. A bee was flying. The maiden is indolent. We shall travel in a wagon. The dog shall go with us. Call a doctor. I am sick with bile. A doctor arrived. Give him medicine. A black man came with the doctor. The grain of the wood is fine. A bird was flying and an ostrich running. A snake was trying to catch a bird. Thou shalt go with me.

Asi hambe ngennewele. Siya kuluma ngomlomo. Isijaka siya nxapa. Umnyovu wa ngi hlaba. Ba fika nenngonyama. Umfazi uya funa innyama emnandi. Ninga funda manje. Umntwana omuhle. Inntye enhle. Nyenyezani. Nyatela lapa. Niyenqena. Ubuntu kunjalo.

## LESSON 16.

1. With one exception (2. class plur.), the classes of nouns have each a *euphonic* letter, by means of which the Possessive case is formed :—

|       | 1.C. | 2.C. | 3.C. | 4.C. | 5.C. | 6.C. | 7.C. | 8.C. |
|-------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| SING. | w    | l    | y    | s    | lw   | w    | b    | kw   |
|       | 1.C. |      | 2.C. |      | 3.C. |      | 4.C. |      |
| PLUR. | b    |      | —    |      | z    |      | y    |      |

2. The *Possessive* pronouns are as follows :—

|       | 1.P. | 2.P. | 3.P.I.Class. | 3.C. | 3.C. | 4.C. | 5.C. | 6.C. | 7.C. | 8.C. |
|-------|------|------|--------------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| SING. | ami  | ako  | ake          | alo  | ayo  | aso  | alo  | awo  | abo  | ako  |
|       | 1.P. | 2.P. | 3.P.I.Class. |      | 2.C. |      | 3.C. |      | 4.C. |      |
| PLUR. | etu  | enu  |              | abo  | awo  |      | azo  |      | ayo  |      |

3. Before these forms must be placed a euphonic letter, according to the class of noun to which the possessive pronoun is joined.

*Examples.*

isibane sabo,    their candle.  
imali yake,    his money.

4. The above rule holds good when a common noun is so used instead of a pronoun. But in this case *i* and *u* must be changed into *e* and *o* respectively.

*Examples.*

umpongolo wendoda,    the man's box.  
innyoni yomtwana,    the child's bird.

5. Singular *Proper* names, and a few common ones, as father, mother, &c., prefix *ka*, preceded by the forms given in Lesson 9. But when that which precedes is the letter *i*, (as in the 3. class sing.), *y* is placed before it, and the letter *u* is rejected.

*Examples.*

innewadi yika Thomas,    Thomas' book.  
umtwana ka Jojo,    Jojo's child.  
ihashi lika baba,    my father's house.

# VOCABULARY 15.

|                           |                  |                         |                       |
|---------------------------|------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| Pa, <i>v.</i>             | Give.            | Kumba, (isi), <i>n.</i> | Skin.                 |
| Pahla, <i>v.</i>          | Surround.        | Palaza, <i>v.</i>       | Spill, as water.      |
| Tixo (U), <i>n.</i>       | God.             | Pango, (I), <i>n.</i>   | Ravenous hunger.      |
| Nkulunkulu (U), <i>n.</i> | God.             | Pata, <i>v.</i>         | Carry.                |
| Dhla, <i>v.</i>           | Eat.             | Pataneka, <i>v.</i>     | Hesitate in speaking. |
| Pahlaza, <i>v.</i>        | Smash in pieces. | Pefumula, <i>v.</i>     | Breathe.              |
| Pakati, <i>adv.</i>       | Within.          | Pehla, <i>v.</i>        | Churn.                |
|                           |                  | Pala, <i>v.</i>         | Scrape.               |

# EXERCISE 16.

God gives His people food. He was scraping their skin. I am hungry. They are present within. God will surround His house. I will go with the skin. A beautiful skin. A black man was trying to talk to them about God, but he hesitated in speaking. Let her carry the child. Truly she is very indolent to-day. Churn the cream. She smashed in pieces the plate. Give him his dog. Their child arrived yesterday.

Leta ingubo yami.    Palani isikumba senu.    Innyoni yomtwana

inhle. Inja yako ya luma inkonyana yami. Inkau yake imbi, ya dhla ukudhla kwami. Niya bona, madoda, ubuhlungu bukona lapa namuhla. Nga faka umuti kona izolo. Nembala angafa yena. Biza innyanga. Umfazi wake uya kala. Lomlungu uya pataueka kakulu.

## LESSON 17.

1. The following table contains the *Demonstrative* pronouns, which must be substituted for the *prefixes* of the different classes of nouns; but should the prefix consist of more than one letter, then only the *first* is rejected.

### *Examples.*

leli hashi,      this horse.  
labo bantu,    those persons.

2. When these pronouns, by way of emphasis, are placed *after* the noun, the prefixes are *not* altered.

### *Examples.*

abantu laba,      these persons.  
ihashi lelo,      that horse.  
izinkomo lezo,    those cows.

| PREFIX. |                 | THIS.  | THAT.  | THAT YONDER.  |
|---------|-----------------|--------|--------|---------------|
| SING.   |                 |        |        |               |
| 1. C.   | u or um         | lo     | lowo   | lowaya        |
| 2. C.   | ili             | leli   | lelo   | leliya        |
| 3. C.   | i               | le     | leyo   | leya          |
| 4. C.   | isi             | lesi   | leso   | lesiya        |
| 5. C.   | ulu             | lolu   | lolo   | loluya        |
| 6. C.   | u               | lo     | lowo   | lowaya        |
| 7. C.   | ubu             | lobu   | lobo   | lobuya        |
| 8. C.   | uku             | loku   | loko   | lokuya        |
| PREFIX. |                 | THESE. | THOSE. | THOSE YONDER. |
| PLUR.   |                 |        |        |               |
| 1. C.   | aba or o        | laba   | labo   | labaya        |
| 2. C.   | ama             | la     | lawa   | lawaya        |
| 3. C.   | izi, izin, izim | lezi   | lezo   | leziya        |
| 4. C.   | imi             | le     | leyo   | leya          |

## VOCABULARY 16.

|                      |                            |                             |                     |
|----------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------|
| Babaza, <i>v.</i>    | Extol, praise.             | Badamu (Um), <i>n.</i>      | Ring-worm.          |
| Baca, <i>v.</i>      | Hide oneself.              | Bango (Um), <i>n.</i>       | Family quarrel.     |
| Badazela, <i>v.</i>  | Stagger, as a drunken man. | Baqa (U for Ulu), <i>n.</i> | Native torch.       |
| Bambezela, <i>v.</i> | Detain, delay.             | Beja, <i>v.</i>             | Be red, as the sky. |

## EXERCISE 17.

That skin. This person. That porcupine yonder. That bird wants water. That child is whispering. This Englishman is tall. Those dogs are eating the meat. That school is large. This pain is great. That heart is black. Those boys are learning to read. Those clouds are black. These horses like mealies. Those soldiers ask for sweet milk. These oxen pull. This goat is sick. That man calls the boy. Those maidens.

Leyo ndoda ya buza indhlela. Lo mfazi uya dela indhlu yake. Lezo zinhlanzi zinkulu. Baya funa isitya leso. Leli ngisi liya iaula. Lowo muntu uya funa ukukuluma ngasese. Abantu labaya baya gijima. Le ngubo iya guga. Lo mfana uya tanda inife. Isibane leso sincinane. Lelo buto liya puza. Isicamelo lesi silukuni. Lezo zinkomo ziya funa ukubuya. Le nyosi ibi ngi hlaba. Leyo ngonyama ya si qeda izolo. Ban gi bambezela. Si bejile izulu. Leso' sitya si kulu. Leyo' nyoni inhle. Lelo' Ngisi liya hleka.

## LESSON 18.

1. To express *it is I, it is thou, it is this, it is these, &c.*, place *yi* (or *i*) before the emphatic forms of the *personal* pronouns (Lesson 13), or the *demonstrative* pronouns (Lesson 17): but *wena* and *yena* take *u*.

*Examples.*

|                    |                     |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| uwena, it is thou. | uyena, it is he.    |
| imina, it is I.    | yibona, it is they. |

2. Natives do not say *my, thy, his* father or mother, but they use in each case a separate word which implies the possessive pronoun.

*Examples.*

|                     |                     |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| my father, ubaba.   | my mother, urname.  |
| thy father, uyihlo. | thy mother, unyoko. |
| his father, yise.   | his mother, unina.  |

## VOCABULARY 17.

|                              |                        |                             |                         |
|------------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| Boko (Um), <i>n.</i>         | Elephant's trunk.      | Divasa, <i>v.</i>           | Walk as a man weary.    |
| Buku (Isi), <i>n.</i>        | Log of wood.           | Dube (I), <i>n.</i>         | Zebra.                  |
| Buyekesa, <i>v.</i>          | Do over again.         | Futa (U for Ulu), <i>n.</i> | Stench.                 |
| Lembu (U for Ulu), <i>n.</i> | Spider.                | Gila (In), <i>n.</i>        | Gizzard of a fowl.      |
| Cica, <i>v.</i>              | Discharge, as a wound. | Gomba (Um), <i>n.</i>       | Tail feather of a bird. |
| Deni (In), <i>n.</i>         | Inside, as of fruit.   | Guza, <i>v.</i>             | Spite a person.         |

## EXERCISE 18.

My father saw the trunk of an elephant. That man spites my mother. His father will shoot that zebra. Thy father will carry this log of wood. My mother says, it is they. It is I. It is we. It is it (horse). It is it (plate). It is it (spider, log of wood, zebra). It is she.

## LESSON 19.

The prefixes of nouns, considered as classes, are twelve in number\* (Lesson 17)—eight in the singular number—and four in the plural. In the following paradigm the corresponding plural prefix is placed with the singular :—

| SING.  |             | PLUR.  |            | EXAMPLES.             |                        |  |  |
|--------|-------------|--------|------------|-----------------------|------------------------|--|--|
| CLASS. | PREFIX.     | CLASS. | PREFIX.    |                       |                        |  |  |
| 1.     | { u<br>umun | 1.     | { o<br>aba | udade, sister.        | odade, sisters.        |  |  |
|        | { umu       |        | { aba      | umuntu, person.       | abantu, persons.       |  |  |
|        | { umu       |        | { aba      | umfana, boy.          | abafana, boys.         |  |  |
| 2.     | { ili       | 2.     | { ama      | ilizwi, word.         | amazwi, words.         |  |  |
|        | { i         |        | { ama      | ibala, spot.          | amabala, spots.        |  |  |
|        | { im        |        | { izim     | imbuzi, goat.         | izimbuzi, goats.       |  |  |
| 3.     | { in        | 3.     | { inkomo   | inkomo, cow.          | izinkomo, cows.        |  |  |
|        | { i         |        | { izi      | iyobo, rejected wooc. | iziyobo, rejected, &c. |  |  |
| 4.     | { isi       |        | { izi      | isitya, plate.        | izitya, plates.        |  |  |
|        | { ula       |        | { izim     | ubambo, rib.          | izimbambo, ribs.       |  |  |
| 5.     | { u         |        | { izin     | nti, stick.           | izinti, sticks.        |  |  |
|        | { umu       |        | { izi      | ulwimi, tongue.       | izilwimi, tongues.     |  |  |
| 6.     | { u         | 4.     | { imi      | umfula, river.        | imifula, rivers.       |  |  |
|        | { u         |        | {          | unyaka, year.         | iminyaka, years.       |  |  |
| 7.     | ubu         |        | no plu.    |                       |                        |  |  |
| 8.     | uku         |        | no plu.    |                       |                        |  |  |

\* I do not *really* differ from those writers who say there are only eight species of nouns. The above classification is less confusing for beginners.

## REMARKS.

(a.) The prefixes of the *first* and the *sixth* class are alike in the sing.; but the former are nearly all personal; on the other hand, the latter belong generally to nouns of the *neuter* gender.

(b.) In the *third* class, a few nouns make the plur. in *ama* :—

*Examples.*

|            |         |             |          |
|------------|---------|-------------|----------|
| inkonyane, | calf.   | amakonyane, | calves.  |
| insimu,    | garden. | amasimu,    | gardens. |
| inkosi,    | chief.  | amakosi,    | chiefs.  |

(c.) 1. In the *fifth* class nouns, whose root begins with a labial, as *b, p, f*, make their plur. in *izin*.

*Examples.*

|         |          |            |           |
|---------|----------|------------|-----------|
| upape,  | feather. | izimpape,  | feathers. |
| ubambo, | rib.     | izimbambo, | ribs.     |

2. Those which begin with a liquid, as *l*, make the plur. in *izi* :—

*Example.*

|         |         |           |          |
|---------|---------|-----------|----------|
| ulembu, | spider, | izilembu, | spiders, |
|---------|---------|-----------|----------|

3. In nearly every other case *izin* makes the plur.

*Example.*

|        |       |           |        |
|--------|-------|-----------|--------|
| uzipo, | claw. | izinzipo, | claws. |
|--------|-------|-----------|--------|

(d.) The *eighth* class includes all *infinitives* used as *substantives*.

(e.) Some nouns are used only in the plur., as *amanzi*, water; *amakaza*, cold; *amafuta*, fat; *amatumba*, intestines; and a few others.

## VOCABULARY 18.

|                         |                             |                          |                                     |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Hlanze (I), <i>n.</i>   | Bushy country.              | Hlungu (I), <i>n.</i>    | Place where grass lately burnt off. |
| Hlenga (Isi), <i>n.</i> | Raft.                       | Hlusa, <i>v.</i>         | Bother.                             |
| Hlengzela, <i>v.</i>    | Rise to the eyes, as water. | Hlwehlwe (Um), <i>n.</i> | Tripe.                              |
| Hlonhlo (I), <i>n.</i>  | Temple of the head.         | Joka, <i>v.</i>          | Have a fancy for.                   |
| Hlule (I), <i>n.</i>    | Clot of blood.              | Jubane (I), <i>n.</i>    | Speed.                              |

## EXERCISE 19.

Fathers. Mothers. Logs of wood. Spiders. Family quarrels. Skins. Porcupines. Ostriches. Snakes. Birds. Bees. Wasps. Children. Maidens. Hares. Lions. Wagons. Englishmen. Slugs. Books. Partridges. Dogs. Schools. Calves. Monkeys. Yellow-wood trees. Summers. Heads. Oxen.

Amahlule akona. Ngiya tanda ihlanze leli. Uya ngi hlusa wena. Onina babekona izolo. Amadoda aya cela amanzi. Biza abantwana. Leta izikumba zami. Lo mfana uya joka leyo ntombi. Ihlungu elihle likona. Amahlonhlo. Amahlanze. Izibuku. Izingila. O Tixo. Izintombi. Onogwaja. Omakoti. Izijaka. Amatendele. Izinkau. Amageja. Imigodi. Amabuto. Izimbuzi. Imifula. Omane. Oyi-hlo. Odade.

## LESSON 20.

1. Mine, thine, theirs, &c., in the sense of *my own* are formed by placing *a*, *e*, or *o* before the possessive pronouns (including the euphonic letter). See Lesson 16. If the initial letter of the prefix is *a*, *a* is required; if *i*, *e*; if *u*, *o*:—

### *Examples.*

abami abantu,      my people.  
ezako izinkomo,    thy cattle.  
okwabo ukudhla,    their food.

2. To convey the meaning—it is mine, thine, theirs, &c.—add *ng* to the forms given in Lesson 9 and prefix to the above:—

### *Examples.*

ningabami abantu,      you are my people.  
kungokwami ukudhla,    the food is mine.

## VOCABULARY 19.

|                         |                          |                              |                                   |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Kangu (Um), <i>n.</i>   | Mole on the face.        | Kwekwe U for Ulu), <i>n.</i> | Cutaneous eruption.               |
| Kanyekanye, <i>int.</i> | All together.            |                              |                                   |
| Keleza, <i>v.</i>       | Go on one leg, hop.      | Kwezi (I), <i>n.</i>         | M o r n i n g - star.             |
| Koko (Ama), <i>n.</i>   | Dry scurf.               |                              |                                   |
| Kotoza, <i>v.</i>       | Glean.                   | Lolwazi (Um), <i>n.</i>      | Grindstone.                       |
| Kowane (I), <i>n.</i>   | Kind of mushroom.        | Lovula (Ama), <i>n.</i>      | Thrush.                           |
| Kutaza, <i>n.</i>       | Speak or act in earnest. | Lunguza, <i>v.</i>           | Stretch forward to see any thing. |

## EXERCISE 20.

These horses are mine. That dog is thine. That ox yonder is his. My wagon. They are my own yellow-wood trees. They are their birds. They are his own ostriches. My own children. My own maidens. Our logs of wood. Their own skins. My skins. These cows are his. Bring me my books. My dog. This grindstone is his. That log of wood is mine.

Isibane sami. Esami isibane. Singesami isibane lesi. Eyami imbuzi. Olwami ubisi. Zingezami izikumba lezo. Izinkuku lezo zingezami. Indhluyami. Imifula yetu. Lezo zinyoni zingezami. Elami itendele. Eyake inkau. Ezetu izingubo.

## LESSON 21.

1. *Odwa* means *only, alone*: and the euphonic letter (given in Lesson 16) corresponding with the class intended must be prefixed to it. But the *w* of class 5. and 8. is excluded.

### Examples.

|                  |            |
|------------------|------------|
| ubuhlungu bodwa, | only pain. |
| ukukuluma kodwa, | only talk. |
| utando lodwa,    | only love. |

2. The first and the second person plural take, respectively, *s* and *n*; and the first and the second person sing. (which requires *edwa*), *ng* and *w*.

### Examples.

|              |           |
|--------------|-----------|
| tina sodwa.  | only we.  |
| nina nodwa,  | only you. |
| mina ngedwa, | only I.   |

3. What has been said of *odwa* (1.) is applicable to the word *onke*, all:—

### Examples.

|                 |             |
|-----------------|-------------|
| abantu bonke,   | all people. |
| izinkomo zonke, | all cattle. |

## VOCABULARY 20.

|                        |                      |                        |                             |
|------------------------|----------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Mango (Um), <i>n</i> . | Precipitous hill.    | Nkankaza, <i>v</i> .   | Speak with nose stopped up. |
| Mtoti, <i>adj</i> .    | Sweet, nice.         | Nyundu(In), <i>n</i> . | Moth which eats clothes.    |
| Mungunya <i>v</i> .    | Munch.               | Paiza, <i>v</i> .      | Flash with anger.           |
| Ncinza, <i>v</i> .     | Pinch, nip.          | Peca, <i>v</i> .       | Turn down, as leaf of book. |
| Neotula, <i>v</i> .    | Pull out, as hair.   |                        |                             |
| Ndinda, <i>v</i> .     | Ramble about.        |                        |                             |
| Hloile (U), <i>n</i> . | Hawk.                |                        |                             |
|                        | Pela (I), <i>n</i> . | Cockroach.             |                             |

## EXERCISE 21.

Bring all the plates. I want all the boys. Only the girl will wash the dress. The girl will wash only the dress. I am alone to-day. They will be alone to-morrow. A man alone is skinning the cow. This ox only is pulling. The maiden alone behaved herself modestly.

Amadoda onke akona. Indoda yodwa ya paiza, abafana ba hleka. Lo muntu uya funa ukutenga izindhlu zonke. Diliza indhlu yonke. Niya cela amanzi odwa. Ngiya kuluma isiminya sodwa.

## LESSON 22.

1. To express *whose* the initial letter of the word immediately following whose is dropped, and the ordinary form of the relative substituted (see Lesson 14).

*Example.*

ihashi elisikumba simnyama, a horse whose skin is black.

2. Whose frequently takes a possessive pronoun after the noun :—

*Example.*

ihashi elisikumba salo simhlope, a horse whose skin is white.

## VOCABULARY 21.

|                    |                    |                     |                                 |
|--------------------|--------------------|---------------------|---------------------------------|
| Peka, <i>v.</i>    | Cook.              | Peza, <i>v.</i>     | Cease.                          |
| Pela, <i>v.</i>    | Come to an end.    | Pezu, <i>adv.</i>   | On, above.                      |
| Pemba, <i>v.</i>   | Make, as fire.     | Pezulu, <i>adv.</i> | High above.                     |
| Penduka, <i>v.</i> | Turn.              | Pika, <i>v.</i>     | Strive, contend.                |
| Penya, <i>v.</i>   | Open, as a book.   | Pila, <i>v.</i>     | Live, recover from<br>sickness. |
| Pepa, <i>int.</i>  | Never mind, &c.    | Pinda, <i>v.</i>    | Repeat.                         |
| Peta, <i>v.</i>    | Hem, as a garment. |                     |                                 |
|                    | Pola, <i>v.</i>    |                     | Become cool.                    |

## EXERCISE 22.

Peka innyama. Ngibona umuntu ozandhla zimnyama. Ya fika indoda esikumba sayo sa nuka kakulu. Siya dlula innyama emnandi. Sa bona umuntu omutwana wake ube gula. Pemba umlilo lapa. Pendukani namuhla. Peta ingubo yako. Penya innwadi yake. Pepa! Peka owami umbila. Amanzi aya pola. Peta eyake ingubo. Penduka wena. Pezani. Pemba umlilo. Kotoza lapa.

## LESSON 23.

1. The Accusative of the relative pronoun whom or which is formed as follows :—

Write the simple nominative, relative and verb—isidakwa esipuza (yo), a drunkard who drinks. Before this nominative place the noun,

the relative of which is to be governed ; and then, *immediately* before the governing verb, place the *accusative* of the personal pronoun agreeing with the noun.

*Example.*

ubutywala isidakwa esi bu puza (yo), Beer which the drunkard drinks.

The emphatic form of the pronoun may also be placed after the verb. And, in the Present and Past tenses, the accusative takes *yo* after the verb.

2. The exceptions to the above rule must now be considered.

(a.) The first person sing. and the 1st and 2nd pers. plur. may be translated by putting *e* before the prefixes of a suitable present, past or future tense (followed by the accusative, as above).

*Examples.*

ihashi engi li funayo, the horse which I want.  
umfazi eniyaku m bona, the woman whom you will see.  
umfana esi m tandayo, the boy whom we love.

(b.) The 2nd per. sing. takes *o* :—

*Example.*

intombi o yi bizayo, the girl whom thou callest.

(c.) The 3rd per. sing. 1. class requires *a* :—

*Examples.*

inkosi a yi konzayo, the chief whom he serves.  
ihashi a li tengayo, a horse which he bought.

## VOCABULARY 22.

|                         |                   |                        |                              |
|-------------------------|-------------------|------------------------|------------------------------|
| Kwele (Ubu), <i>n.</i>  | Jealousy.         | Pumulo (Im), <i>n.</i> | Nose.                        |
| Esabeka, <i>v.</i>      | Be dreadful.      | Pumuza, <i>v.</i>      | Cause to rest.               |
| Pongolo (Um), <i>n.</i> | Box.              | Pumula, <i>v.</i>      | Rest.                        |
| Posa, <i>v.</i>         | Throw.            | Punyuka, <i>v.</i>     | Get slipped out<br>of grasp. |
| Puca, <i>v.</i>         | Shave.            | Pupa, <i>v.</i>        | Dream.                       |
| Levu (Isi), <i>n.</i>   | Beard.            | Epuza, <i>v.</i>       | Loiter.                      |
| Puku (Im), <i>n.</i>    | Mouse.            | Puza, <i>v.</i>        | Drink.                       |
| Pukuza, <i>v.</i>       | Act foolishly.    |                        |                              |
|                         | Puzisa, <i>v.</i> |                        | Cause to drink.              |

## EXERCISE 23.

Shave your beard. His nose is large. A small mouse which was drinking the milk. The mouse, which he sees, is large. The man whom we saw came with his dog yesterday. The boy, whom you call shall go. The meat, which the woman cooked yesterday, is bad to-day. The fish which I caught yesterday, she will cook to-morrow.

Bamba inkabi esa yi bonayo izolo. Puzisa indoda amanzi. Aka punule umfana. Isitya engi si tandayo, wa si pahlaza sona. Umuntu omaziyo uya funa ukutenga inkomo yami. Bayaku hlaba ingulube yake ngomuso. Isijingi a si dhlayo siya baba. Mema umlungu owaye kona mzu kwana sa puma. Ihashi ena li tengayo liya gula. Intombi esiyaku yi bona ngomuso.

## LESSON 24.

1. To construe, *to whom, by whom, with whom*, the rules given in Lesson 23 must be observed; but with this difference, the *accusative* before the verb and the *yo* after it are omitted; and the Dative case (see Lesson 13), or the forms given in Lesson 15, are placed after the verb.

### Examples.

umfana esi kuluma ngaye, the boy of whom we speak.  
 umfazi esi kuluma naye, the woman with whom we speak.  
 umuntu esi kuluma kuye, the person to whom we speak.

## VOCABULARY 23.

|                       |                        |                          |                                   |
|-----------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Pinyaza, <i>v.</i>    | Sprain, as a joint.    | Qojema, <i>v.</i>        | Sit up, as a dog on its haunches. |
| Pohlloza, <i>v.</i>   | Strike violently.      | Qotyama, <i>v.</i>       | Crouch upon the hams.             |
| Puluka, <i>v.</i>     | Recover from sickness. | Qumbu (Isi), <i>n.</i>   | Dirt inside the nails.            |
| Epupa, <i>v.</i>      | Dry up, as a cow.      | Quqa, <i>v.</i>          | Trot, as a horse.                 |
| Putuka, <i>v.</i>     | Get chafed.            | Sengetye (In), <i>n.</i> | Mica-stone.                       |
| Qakala (I), <i>n.</i> | Ankle.                 | Sinde (Isi), <i>n.</i>   | Sod, turf.                        |
| Qazula, <i>v.</i>     | Grind coarsely.        |                          |                                   |
| Qiana, <i>v.</i>      | Sit, as a bold rider.  |                          |                                   |

## EXERCISE 24.

Inkosi a kuluma nayo yena. Indoda a hambela kuyo umfazi. Isikali aba fikayo ngaso abafana. Umuntu eni kuluma ngaye. Ihashi esi li funayo liya gula. Umntwana ena ngena naye uya fa. Isitya setu esa puza ngaso ngiya si funa sona. Inkomo aba yi sengayo iya funa ukwepusa. Lenja eni yi bonayo iya kw-azi ukuqojema.

## LESSON 25.

1. Vowel verbs, or such as begin with a vowel, make use of the different forms of the verbs already enumerated, but a contraction takes place, the final letter of the prefixes being rejected. When *ku* comes immediately before the vowel verb, an elision does not take place, but the letter *w* is substituted for *u*.

*Examples.*

niyazi,            you know.  
 niyakw-azi,    you will know.

2. The 2nd and 3rd pers. sing. class 1, *simple* form, and the 2nd per. plur. class 2, take *w*. And the 3rd per. sing. class 3. takes *y*. And when the relative is used, these letters come between it and the root of the verb which is followed by *yo*.

*Examples.*

|                     |                           |
|---------------------|---------------------------|
| womile amahashi,    | the horses are thirsty.   |
| yepusile inkomo,    | the cow has dried up.     |
| amahashi awomileyo, | horses which are thirsty. |
| inkomo eyepusayo,   | a cow which dries up.     |
| wena owaziyo,       | you who know.             |

3. When an accusative case is inserted no contraction is necessary.

*Examples.*

lomfana uyaku y-azi indoda,    this boy will know the man.  
 inyoka e s-elubazayo isikumba sayo, a snake which casts off its skin.

4. In the Imp. Mood a vowel takes *y* before it.

*Example.*

y-engula ubisi,    skim the milk.

5. Instead of the ordinary verb, with its prefixes and terminal changes, the verb *ukuti* (of very extensive signification) is used in connection with a particle, and is conjugated like other verbs.

*Example.*

lomuti uti twi,    this tree is straight.

## VOCABULARY 24.

|                    |                           |                    |                            |
|--------------------|---------------------------|--------------------|----------------------------|
| Co (ukuti),        | Reverberate.              | Faka (ukuti),      | Sprinkle.                  |
| Cwaka (ukuti),     | Be perfectly still.       | Bobo (ukuti),      | Make hole, as in wood.     |
| Te te te (ukuti),  | Be low, as setting sun.   | Nkwe (ukuti),      | Be ended, finished.        |
| Aluka, <i>v</i> .  | Go out, as cattle, weave. | Enwaya, <i>v</i> . | Scratch.                   |
| Alusa, <i>v</i> .  | Herd cattle.              | Eqa, <i>v</i> .    | Jump, transgress.          |
| Anya, <i>v</i> .   | Suck, as an infant.       | Etula, <i>v</i> .  | Take off, as a pot or hat. |
| Ehla, <i>v</i> .   | Come or go down.          | Ona, <i>v</i> .    | Do wrong.                  |
| Elapa, <i>v</i> .  | Treat, as a doctor.       | Omisa, <i>v</i> .  | Dry.                       |
| Enama, <i>v</i> .  | Be contented.             | Onda, <i>v</i> .   | Be lean.                   |
| Engula, <i>v</i> . | Skim, as milk.            | Onga, <i>v</i> .   | Be economical.             |

## EXERCISE 25.

The boy who herds the cattle. People who transgress the laws. A girl who skims the milk. Children who do wrong. The sun was setting. The rocks are reverberating. The soldier who sprained his ankle. Meat which we cooked yesterday. We are economical. Take off your hat. The infant is sucking. His beard is large. The man was pinching the boy.

Izinkomo ziy-onda. Lennyanga iy-elapa. Izimbusi ziy-aluka kusasa. Amadoda ay-eqa imiteto yami. Ihashi lami liya quqa kahle. Y-ehla wena. Ingane iy-anya. Y-omisani izingubo zenu. Lomfana uy-esabeka. Amapela a si katazayo. Puza ubisi lwami engi lu sengayo. Uy-enama lomfazi. Bay-onga labobantu. Y-elapa lomtwana o gulayo. Y-engula ubisi manje. Bay-ona. Y-engula ubisi lapa. Siti te te te ilanga. Niy-ona izingubo.

## LESSON 26.

1. There are several ways of forming the *Comparative* of adjectives.

(a.) *Ku* (*kw* or *k*) is placed before the thing compared.

*Examples.*

lenncwadi inkulu ku leyo,      this book is larger than that.  
nginkulu k-umfana,      I am greater than the boy.

(b.) Or *kuna* (or *kun*) may be used, but in this case the incipient letter of the thing compared undergoes an alteration, *u* being changed into *o*, and *i* into *e*.

*Examples.*

nginokwazi kunaye,      I have no more knowledge than he.  
indoda inde kun-odade wabo,      the man is taller than his sister.

(c.) *Higher than*, *more than* may be translated by *pezu kw*; and *lower than*, *less than* by *pantsi kw* (or *pantsi kwa*).

*Examples.*

sinamandhla pezu kwabo,      we are stronger than they.  
lomuti upantsi kwalowo,      this tree is less than that.

2. The *Superlative* degree may be construed,—

(a.) by adding the indefinite adjective *onke* to the above forms

(b.) by the addition of *kakulu*,

(c.) or, by saying the opposite to what is intended.

*Examples.*

lomfana ublakanipile kunabo, bonke abafana, this boy is the sharpest  
of all the boys.

leyonkabi iya donsa kahle kakulu, that ox is pulling exceedingly well.  
aka lungile lomntwana, this child is not good—this child is exceedingly  
good.

## VOCABULARY 25.

|                      |                     |                       |                     |
|----------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|
| Qa, <i>ca.</i>       | No.                 | Qeda, <i>v.</i>       | Finish.             |
| Qala, <i>v.</i>      | Begin.              | Qili (I), <i>n.</i>   | Crafty person.      |
| Qamba, <i>n.</i>     | Invent.             | Qina, <i>v.</i>       | Be firm.            |
| Qanda (I), <i>n.</i> | Egg.                | Qingatisa, <i>v.</i>  | Half fill.          |
| Qapela, <i>v.</i>    | Attend to.          | Qiniso (I), <i>n.</i> | Truth.              |
| Qapuza, <i>v.</i>    | Speak fluently.     | Qinisa, <i>v.</i>     | Make firm, declare. |
| Qaqqa, <i>v.</i>     | Rip open.           | Qola, <i>v.</i>       | Perfume.            |
| Qoma (I), <i>n.</i>  | Basket for mealies. | Qonda, <i>v.</i>      | Understand.         |

## EXERCISE 26.

You are taller than I. The person with whom he was talking. It is they. It is thou. The mothers love their children. Take out the fowl's gizzard. These men take snuff. The egg of an ostrich is larger than that of a fowl. The egg of an ostrich is very large. His tree is higher than my house. Thy child is very large. The fish which he bought yesterday is small. My boy is taller than your girl. The woman to whom you went called yesterday. Their house is lower than mine.

Aka qingatise isitya ngamanzi. Qalani namuhla. Ngimkulu kuwe. Abantu abamnyama baya tanda ukuqola. Siya funa ukutenga iqoma lombila. Qeda indhlu yake. Lomlungu wa qapuza kakulu, ukukuluma kwake. Ngena wena siya jabula kakulu uku-bona. Uzaku lala lapa. Nga m bona izolo. Ngiya qinisa. Umfana umkulu kwintombi. Isitya lesi sikulu kunesitya sake. Aya qapuza la'madoda. Siya qinisa.

## LESSON 27.

1. In translating the word *certain*, as a certain thing, or person, *tile* must be used, preceded by the verb To Be, either expressed or implied.

*Example.*

umuntu otile, a certain person.

2. The Demonstrative adverbs *here, there, yonder*, are formed for the different classes of nouns as follows :—

(a.) for *here*.

|       | 1.3.P1.Class. | 2.C.  | 3.C.  | 4.C. | 5.C.  | 6.C.  | 7.C.  | 8.C.  |
|-------|---------------|-------|-------|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| SING. | nangu         | nanti | nansi | nasi | nantu | nangu | nambu | naku  |
|       | 1.3.P1.Class. |       | 2.C.  |      |       | 3.C.  |       | 4.C.  |
| PLUR. | namba         |       | nanka |      |       | nazi  |       | nansi |

*Examples.*

nangu (mina), here I am.

nangu (yena), here he is.

(b.) You may render *there* by changing the final letter *o*.

*Example.*

nambo, there they are.

(c.) *Yonder* is constructed by affixing *ya* to the (a) forms.

*Example.*

nankaya amahashi, yonder are the horses.

VOCABULARY 26.

|                      |                   |                     |                   |
|----------------------|-------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| Musa, <i>v.</i>      | Do not, must not. | Namatela, <i>v.</i> | Stick fast to.    |
| Mpofu, <i>adj.</i>   | Brown.            | Nambita, <i>v.</i>  | Taste.            |
| Na, <i>conj.</i>     | And, also, with.  | Qoto, <i>adj.</i>   | Sincere, upright. |
| Nakuba, <i>adv.</i>  | Although.         | Quba, <i>v.</i>     | Push.             |
| Ngakuba, <i>adv.</i> | Because.          | Kahle, <i>adv.</i>  | Nicely, well, &c. |

EXERCISE 27.

We will go in. Let all the persons speak. I want the letter which a man brought yesterday. The cow which Umpafana bought is sick. The boy was crying, because the girl was eating all the porridge. Show me the basket which the woman wanted to buy. Here it is (basket). Yonder they are (cows). There they are (calves). A certain cow arrived yesterday.

Ngenani noke. Niya kuluma zonke izikati. Isikumba senkomo esa yi hlabayo izolo, siyaku lunga kahle. Nanti iqanda lako. Naziya izimbuzi zabo. Impuku etile iya si kataza.

LESSON 28.

1. The *Perfect* Tense is formed by changing the final *a* of the root of of the simple form, Ind. mood, present tense, into *ile*. But verbs ending in *ela, ala, ama, ana, asa, ata*, nearly always make their perfects in *ele*,

*ete, eme, ene, ese, etc.* And the monosyllabic verbs *ya* and *za*, in *e*. A few, as *tabata*, take both forms.

*Examples.*

|                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| ngi sibekele imbiza,           | I have covered the pot.                |
| mina nomhlobo wami si tandene, | I and my friend have loved each other. |
| ba zambete izingubo,           | they have put on the blankets.         |
| uze, he has come.              | ba ye kona, they have gone there.      |

2. By placing before the root of the perfect tense, the prefixes of the two varieties of the past-progressive (see Lesson 6, &c.), the *Pluperfect*, tense is obtained.

*Examples.*

|                 |                |
|-----------------|----------------|
| ngi sebezile,   | I have worked. |
| bengi sebezile, | I had worked.  |

3. The perfect (but not the pluperfect) sometimes simply changes the final letter of the root into *e*. And the last syllable is accented strongly.

4. Character, Condition, Quality, State, &c., are expressed in this tense (1.).

*Examples.*

|                  |                          |
|------------------|--------------------------|
| u pete inncwadi, | he is carrying a letter. |
| Ba lele,         | they are asleep.         |

5. Have may be frequently translated by, *I am with*, united to a substantive. The *n* (*a*), with, is joined to the noun as explained in Lesson 26.

*Examples.*

|               |                                     |
|---------------|-------------------------------------|
| ngineqoma,    | I am with a basket=I have a basket. |
| banompongolo, | they have a box.                    |

## VOCABULARY 27.

|                        |                  |                        |                 |
|------------------------|------------------|------------------------|-----------------|
| Quleka, <i>v.</i>      | Faint.           | Qwala (Isi), <i>n.</i> | Lame person.    |
| Qumba, <i>v.</i>       | Swell up.        | Rau (Uni), <i>n.</i>   | Strong emotion. |
| Qunga (Isi), <i>n.</i> | Tambootie grass. | Raukela, <i>v.</i>     | Compassionate.  |
|                        |                  | Tyela, <i>v.</i>       | Tell.           |

## EXERCISE 28.

I have a white cow. He has a war-shield. We have bought black oxen. We have a large fish. I have walked much more to-day than yesterday. When we arrived they told us a man had killed a large snake. We wanted to see the stone which the man had found, but they told us he had hidden it. The fowl which I bought yesterday, is white. They had been talking about my mealies.

Umfazi u qulekile. Inkabi i qumbile. Aka lete isiqunga esa si bonayo kutangi. Innwele iyeza inesiqwala pakati. Ngiya rankela wena, ngokuba nya blupeke kakulu. Besi hambile ukubona umfazi obe gulayo. Ba nomrau impela. Si nembiza enkulu.

## LESSON 29.

We now introduce the student to a few of the *Idioms* of the language.

1. When we speak of a man's knowledge or proficiency in any trade, profession, &c., we say, he is able to read, write, print, survey; but a native says, "He knows to read," &c.

2. I want one, two, three plates—is translated, I want plates, let them be one, two, three=ngi funa izitya zibe mbili, zibe ntatu. In this case, the *ma* of the Imp. mood is not wanted.

3. When uttering a threat, or warning a person of danger, we naturally consider the emphatic form of the future most suitable, but in the Kafir vernacular, the *Imperfect* tense is employed. It is also used when there is a strong probability about a future event.

### Examples.

nga ku tyaya, I will beat you.  
na fa, you will be killed.  
sa ni fumanisa, we shall overtake you.

4. "You must *not* do that" is to be translated thus:—

### Examples.

(SING.) musa ukwenza loko, You must not to do that=you must not do that.

(PLUR.) musani ukwenza loko, you must not do that.

The *positive* form, "You must do that," requires a different construction, viz. :—"You are fit or proper to do that"—ufanele ukwenza loko.

### Examples.

abantwana bafanele ukungena, the children must come in.  
incekú ifanele ukuya, the servant must go.

5. "Nearly fell" is rendered nearly to fall, the *a* of *posa* being elided.

### Example.

nga pos' ukuwa, I nearly fell.

6 "He speaks falsely" may be construed either unamanga, he has lies, or u qamb' amanga, he invents lies.

¶2. When two vowels of two different words, the first is sometimes cut off.

## VOCABULARY 28.

|                      |                        |                         |               |
|----------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|---------------|
| Rudula, <i>v.</i>    | Draw along the ground. | Shinga, <i>v.</i>       | Act wickedly. |
| Sa (Umu), <i>n.</i>  | Kindness.              | Senga, <i>v.</i>        | Milk.         |
| Sango (i), <i>n.</i> | Gate.                  | Sensane (In), <i>n.</i> | Mosquito.     |
| Sauzela, <i>v.</i>   | Scold away at.         | Sekela, <i>v.</i>       | Support.      |
| Sebenza, <i>v.</i>   | Work.                  | Sekelo (Isi), <i>n.</i> | Foundation.   |

## EXERCISE 29.

Baya kw-azi ukusenga inkomo. Siya funa izinkomo zibe zimbili. Nga ku tyaya wena. Uya shinga impela. Nga wa. Musa ukuhlupa lenngane. Nifanele ukufunda innewadi. Sa pos' uku m rudula pansi. Aka senge inkozo. Insensane ya ngi hlaba izolo. Inkosi yake inomusa. Sekela indhlu. Isango likulu. Qinisa isisekelo. Baya kw-azi uku-shinga bona. Musani ukuhlala lapa. Ngipos' ukutyaya wena. Lezo-zintombi ziya sauzela impela. Inamanga lendoda.

## LESSON 30.

1. The *Perfect* tense of the Ind. mood and the *Present* tense of the *Subj.* mood is often placed before the *Inf.* mood, when the first *u* of its sign is omitted.

*Example.*

uye kusebenza, he has gone to work.

2. Used colloquially, the whole of the sign of the Infinitive is rejected, and the letter which comes immediately before the sign changed into *o*.

*Example.*

uyo lima, he has gone to plough.

## VOCABULARY 29.

|                         |                      |                         |                      |
|-------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|
| Tata (Ama), <i>n.</i>   | Hurry, haste.        | Tuna (i), <i>n.</i>     | Grave.               |
| Tekeza, <i>v.</i>       | Speak roughly.       | Tungulu (Um), <i>n.</i> | Natal plum tree.     |
| Tetema, <i>v.</i>       | Be cross, fretful.   | Tungulu (i), <i>n.</i>  | Fruit of Natal plum. |
| Tukulu (Isi), <i>n.</i> | Stem of native pipe. | Tunuka, <i>v.</i>       | Hurt an old wound.   |
| Tulu (Isi), <i>n.</i>   | Deaf person.         |                         |                      |
|                         | Tupaza, <i>v.</i>    |                         | Toddle, as a child.  |

## EXERCISE 30.

She has fainted. He has spoken fluently. They have gone to finish their work. You must be economical. They can doctor. Dry (sing.) this blanket. My horse is chafed. The girl will recover from sickness. That cow is beginning to dry up. They have acted foolishly. We have come to make a fire. You must not pinch me. Let us work. Let them go to wash their hands. We want some tambootie grass.

Ingubo iqinile. Qapela umsebenzi wako. Qaka loku. Inkabi iqumbile. Inkonyana y-ondile. Abafana balusile. Izinkomo zalukile. Sizo bona wena. Size kubona yena. Bafikile. Ngiya tanda amaqanda. Tela amanzi lapa uqingatise isitya. Fundani ukwenama. U fanele ukutanda lenngane.

## LESSON 31.

1. The *Second-future* tense is a combination of the *First-future* of the verb "To be," and the *Perfect* tense. The literal meaning is— I shall be, I have loved, &c. But remember, the 3rd. per. sing. and plur. class 1, take respectively *e* and *be* before the root of the Perfect. Class 2 of the plur. also takes *e* instead of the ordinary letter.

*Example.*

bayakuba be fundile innwadi, they will have read the letter.

## VOCABULARY 30.

|                     |            |                      |                    |
|---------------------|------------|----------------------|--------------------|
| Shiya, <i>v.</i>    | Leave.     | Sika, <i>v.</i>      | Cut.               |
| Si (Ama), <i>n.</i> | Sour Milk. | Sika (In), <i>n.</i> | Post, pillar.      |
| Sibekela, <i>v.</i> | Cover.     | Sila (Um), <i>n.</i> | Tail of an animal. |

## EXERCISE 31.

They will have spoken to him about the ox which he bought yesterday. You (sing.) will have seen the man whose cattle were sick. The monkey will have died. The infant will have cried. He will have gone. You (sing.) must not cry, you must learn. He nearly died yesterday. I see a large lion. He has arrived. I have come to see your dog. My ox kicked a calf.

Baya kutaza. Abantwana baya keleza. Amakoko akona. Kotaza kahle. Uya konanda njalo wena. Innyama innandi pezu kwomhlaza. Uma ni funa inkonyane ninga yi tabata. Inja yako iya shinga, yadhla inkuku yami. Sa yi tyaya impela. Amadoda abe fikile. Lendhlu inesisekelo esi qinileyo. Abafazi banamasi. Sika lapa. Leta amanzi lomfazi nya funa ukuquleka, tyetya

## LESSON 32.

The *First-future-progressive* tense is much like the *Second-future*, the only difference being the present participle is used instead of the Perfect tense.

*Example.*

**amadoda ayakuba ehlakula,** the men will be weeding.

## VOCABULARY 31.

|                       |                                    |                             |                                  |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <b>Sila, v.</b>       | <b>Grind.</b>                      | <b>Sombuluko (Um), n.</b>   | <b>Monday.</b>                   |
| <b>Sina, v.</b>       | <b>Dance.</b>                      | <b>Sondela, v.</b>          | <b>Approach.</b>                 |
| <b>Sinda, v.</b>      | <b>Heavy, smear floor, escape.</b> | <b>Sondeza, v.</b>          | <b>Bring near.</b>               |
| <b>Sindisa, v.</b>    | <b>Cause to escape.</b>            | <b>Songa, v.</b>            | <b>Fold.</b>                     |
| <b>Singata, v.</b>    | <b>Hug.</b>                        | <b>Sonta, v.</b>            | <b>Go to a place of worship.</b> |
| <b>Sipula, v.</b>     | <b>Pull up, as weeds.</b>          | <b>Suka, v.</b>             | <b>Get up, get away.</b>         |
| <b>Siza, v.</b>       | <b>Help.</b>                       | <b>Kwela, v.</b>            |                                  |
| <b>Sizwa (In), n.</b> | <b>Young unmarried man.</b>        | <b>Suku (U for Ulu), n.</b> | <b>Day.</b>                      |
|                       | <b>Kasi (I), n.</b>                |                             | <b>Leaf, as of a book.</b>       |

## EXERCISE 32.

They will be dancing. Black people like to dance. He will have ground the mealies. A white man gave me a post. The dog, which the Englishman gave me, has annoyed me very much, for it killed my beautiful bird. We shall be pulling up weeds to-morrow. Those persons will have acted very foolishly. They will be cooking the food. This infant has thrush. A moth has been eating my blanket. You (sing.) must not turn down the leaves of a book. The boys may go out to see the duck which was sick yesterday.

Biza umfana. Ngiy-esaba umuntu lowo osilevu sake sikulu. Hlusula lenkuku ikanda. Hlaulisa umuntu wake uya qamb' amanga. Hlafuna ukudhla kwako. Musa ukuhleba abantu. Uma ni tanda ninga hleka nouke. Uyakuba esonga izingubo yena. Ngi ba tyele bona. Uya singata ingane yake. Bayakuba besila.

## LESSON 33.

1. (a.) The Subjunctive mood is easily formed. Change the final letter of the root of the simple present tense into *e*. The only exception is the 3. per. sing. class 1, which takes *a* for its full prefix. In some instances the word *ukuba*, that, is used in connection with this mood.

(*b.*) Both present and past time are expressed by this mood.

2. In translating *two* or *more* verbs joined together by the Copulative conjunction *and*, every one after the first must be placed in the above mood.

*Examples.*

ngizaku za ukuba ngisebenze ngomsombuluko, I will come to work on Monday.

puma wena uye lapaya, uhlakule, uqede, ubuyele ekaya, come out, go yonder, weed, finish and then go home.

3. The Infinitive mood does not always express a purpose.

VOCABULARY 32.

|                       |                             |                      |           |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------|-----------|
| Suku (Ubu), <i>n.</i> | Night.                      | Swakamisa, <i>v.</i> | Moisten.  |
| Sula, <i>v.</i>       | Wipe, clean, as<br>a horse. | Swela, <i>v.</i>     | Need.     |
| Sumpa (In), <i>n.</i> | Wart.                       | Ta (Isi), <i>n.</i>  | Enemy.    |
| Susa, <i>v.</i>       | Take away.                  | Taba (In), <i>n.</i> | Mountain. |
| Tyo, <i>v.</i>        | Say, affirm.                | Tabata, <i>v.</i>    | Take.     |
|                       |                             | Takata, <i>v.</i>    | Bewitch.  |

EXERCISE 33.

I will go and talk with him. I will speak to them. He has come to tell you about the sick woman whom you saw yesterday: they think she will die. They say you can cure the sickness which she has. You must not loiter, you must make haste. They will have cooked the porridge, and will be eating it. Moisten the child's mouth. Sprinkle the mealies with water, grind and cook them, and mix them with sour milk. Take off his dress.

Ngiya cabanga ukuba uyaku sinda. Sula ihashi lami, u li puzise amanzi. Asi tande izita zetu. Tabata umntwana nya ngi kataza. Umusa wake uy esabeka. Ngiya tanda umuntu oqoto. Qeda umsebenzi wako. Ufikile umntwana womlungu. Puma wena u banbe inkuku, u yi bulale, u yi lungise, u yi peke. Aso puma ukufafaza izingubo ngamanzi. Insumpa ipina? Ba tyo bona.

LESSON 34.

In speaking of the whole of any number *below six*, 3rd per. plur., the following remarks are noticeable:—(*a.*) Class 1. *Bobu* is placed before the cardinal number required.

*Example.*

abafana bobatatu, all three boys.

(b.) Class 2. The initial letter of the *inflection* (Lesson 19) is simply changed into *o*.

*Example.*

amashi omahlanu, all five horses.

(c.) Class 3. The *emphatic* form of the first-future tense (Lesson 19) is placed before the cardinal number.

*Example.*

izinkomo zone, all four cows.

(d.) Class 4. Put *yomi* before the number.

*Example.*

imifula yomitatu, all three rivers.

(e.) The *first* per. plur. takes *soba*—and 2nd per. plur. *noba*.

*Examples.*

sobatatu, we three.

nobatatu, you three.

2. To construe any number *above* five and *below* twenty, you must write sheep, &c., which are, and then unite to the number in the following manner:—If the initial letter of the prefix of the number is *a*, it is rejected, but if *i*, it is turned into *yi*. (Consult table 22 for numbers.)

*Example.*

abantwana abayisikombisa, children which are seven=seven children.

### VOCABULARY 33.

|                               |                      |                        |                                   |
|-------------------------------|----------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Vemvane(U for Ulu), <i>n.</i> | Butterfly.           | Xonza, <i>v.</i>       | Knock off, as mealies from a cob. |
| Vondwe (I), <i>n.</i>         | Water-rat.           |                        |                                   |
| Vubu (Im), <i>n.</i>          | Hippopotamus.        | Yambazi (I), <i>n.</i> | Thin porridge.                    |
| Vunya (Um), <i>n.</i>         | Fish-moth.           | Yangaza, <i>v.</i>     | Look confounded.                  |
| Vuzamanzi (I), <i>n.</i>      | Kind of water-snake. | Zacisa, <i>v.</i>      | Make lean.                        |
|                               |                      | Zagiga (U), <i>n.</i>  | Mumps.                            |
|                               |                      | Zenze (Isi), <i>n.</i> | Scissors.                         |
|                               | Zila (Um), <i>n.</i> |                        | Cattle-track.                     |

### EXERCISE 34.

Izinneku zonhlanu. Izinngane zombili. Nina nobatatu. Imifula yomihlanu. Amakonyane omahlanu. Izinhlanzi zone. Izinsizwa zon-tatu. Amaqoma omane. Izintsuku eziyishumi nesikombisa. Imisila yomihlanu. Amapela ayisishiyangalunye.

## LESSON 35.

1. To express "one by one," "two by two," the numeral adjective, with the relative and verb agreeing with the noun, must be *doubled* and *nga* prefixed to the *second* adjective.

*Example.*

abangene abantwana abatatu ngabatatu, let the children come in by three and three.

2. To construe other, as other people, &c., the adjective is put *before* the noun.

*Examples.*

ngi funa ezinye izinto, I want the other things.

amanye amakasi ombila, other mealie leaves.

## VOCABULARY 34.

|                             |   |                              |                                  |
|-----------------------------|---|------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Alu (Um), <i>n.</i>         | Place under<br>the ribs.                  | Bambo(U for Ulu), <i>n.</i>  | Rib.                             |
| Anga, <i>v.</i>             | Kiss.                                     | Baru (I), <i>n.</i>          | Skinpetticoat.                   |
| Babe (U for Ulu), <i>n.</i> | Kind of grass<br>much liked<br>by cattle. | Benga, <i>v.</i>             | Slice meat into<br>small pieces. |
|                             |   | Bidi (Izi), <i>n.</i>        | Sediment.                        |
|                             |   | Bityi (U for Ulu), <i>n.</i> | Bog.                             |
|                             | Nwe (Umu), <i>n.</i>                      | Finger.                      |                                  |

## EXERCISE 35.

32. This is promiscuous.

The man whose book I opened. A dog which he killed. My plate. Your bird. Thy ox. His enemy. Their gate. Our kindness. Strike with my hammer. We shall talk about you. I wish to speak with you (sing.) We write with our hands. Deaf people can talk with their fingers. My wart is large. He hugged his heavy boy. He was a kind father. They had built their small house. I will be with you on Monday. I like your (sing.) large wagon. Bring the horse's saddle, I want it. Bring Gebuza's basket for mealies. The people are present. The woman to whom he was talking. The girl for whom you (sing.) bought the dress. These men are exceedingly lazy. Those boys yonder. It is they. Thy father says, it was I who did it. He is calling for all four boys. They were joking. The child was sobbing. I was trying to make peace. The servants were weeding. I shall go. The men are running. Contentment rejoices the heart. A drunkard distresses his wife and children. He may escape. They may be sick. We shall want a witness. He will give us sweet-reed. My plate is dirty. She is carrying the child. You (sing.) must come

in and clean my saddle. I have come to see you about your pig, which I want to buy. I want two candles. They will punish him. My box is smaller than his. He is very strong.

## LESSON 26.

The following are some of the most useful of the numerous particles in the Zulu-Kafir :—

1. (*a.*) *Sa*, placed between the prefixes and root of verb, means *still*, yet, &c.

*Example.*

ngi-sa-sebenza, I am still working (the *ya* of the emphatic form is dispensed with).

(*b.*) Before a substantive, adjective, adverb, *se* is used, and when it immediately precedes a noun, either in the sing. or plur. number, the incipient letter of the noun's prefix is dropped.

*Example.*

ba-se-bantwana, they are still children.

2. *Ake*, with the subjunctive mood, is employed to express a polite request.

*Example.*

ake ungi size, be good enough to help me.

3. *Mane*, with the subjunctive, denotes *strong* entreaty.

*Example.*

mane ungi pate ngomrau, do have mercy upon me.

4. (*a.*) To express now, *se* is placed before the prefixes of the present and future tenses.

(*b.*) In the fifth, sixth, seventh and eight classes, a contraction takes place, *o* being substituted for the *e* of the *se* and initial letter of the prefix.

*Examples.*

sengiyaku geza ingubo yami, now I will wash my blanket.  
nautuya unwaba solubonakala kahle, yonder is a chameleon, it appears well just now.

5. In construing until, the verb *za* in the Subj. mood must be used and followed by the same mood.



## LESSON 37.

1. To express continually, repeatedly, *zinge*, *libele* or *hambe*, is placed after a suitable prefix (See Lesson 9), and followed by the *present participle*.

*Example.*

ulibele ekala, or uhambe ekala, he is continually crying.

2. To express *just*, the particle—*sand*—must be preceded by a prefix corresponding with the noun or pronoun (Lesson 9), and followed by the Infinitive mood.

*Example.*

basand ukufika, they have just arrived.

3. *Njengokuba*, like as ; *lapo*, there, where ; and *uma*, if, when ; are generally placed before a participle.

*Examples.*

njengokuba uyise eraukela abantwana bake, like as a father pitieth his children.

uma betanda, banga puma, if they wish, they may go out.

4. In speaking of a long time *kade* is employed. And the *present* participle is often used for *past* time.

*Example.*

kade be ku funa wena, a long time they have been seeking you.

5. *Lapo*, where, is often heard in connection with *kona*, there, *e.g.*, a Native does not say—"I will go where you go"—but—"ngoya lapo uya kuya kona," "I will go where you go *there*."

6. A verb may be intensified by repeating it in the Infinitive form with *na*.

*Example.*

senga nokusenga, milk in good earnest.

## VOCABULARY 36.

|                        |                 |                       |                   |
|------------------------|-----------------|-----------------------|-------------------|
| Tende (Isi), <i>n.</i> | Heel.           | Ukuti, <i>adv.</i>    | Namely.           |
| Tetisa, <i>v.</i>      | Scold.          | Ti, <i>v.</i>         | Think, say, mean. |
| Teza, <i>v.</i>        | Cut firewood.   | Tete (In), <i>n.</i>  | Locust.           |
| Ti (Umu), <i>n.</i>    | Tree, medicine. | Zambane(I), <i>n.</i> | Potatoo.          |
| Tenga, <i>v.</i>       | Buy.            | Vumo (I), <i>n.</i>   | Tune.             |

## EXERCISE 37.

You (sing.) are continually scolding me. They are constantly buying horses. A man has just brought the medicine. Let him be quiet, he is continually talking. I have been calling him a long time. They told me he had just gone out to kill a snake, which his servant saw under a tree I will live where you live. We can do what they do.

Peka amazambane. Musani ukuteza lapa. Nga tyala lomuti. Isitende sami sibuhlungu. Ngiya bona intete. Tenga loku, inncinane imali. Inja yako imbi, ilibele idhla isinkwa sami. Ngisand ukuqeda lomsebenzi. Kade ukala wena, goduka uye kunyoko, ukuba asule innyembezi zako, aku nike ukudhla okumnandi. Sa fa nanso inyoka bo. Tula wena nga yi tyaya. Si libele si gula kulo' muzi. Si sand ukufika.

## LESSON 38.

Interrogative Adjective Pronouns and Adverbs are rather numerous in Kulu-Kafir. The few which follow will enable the student to ask questions about most subjects. The following remarks may be worthy of consideration.

*by means of, with, why, like, what sort of, often, great, much, who, when.*  
nga, na, yi, njenga or ja, ngakana, ba, ni.

(a.) In asking a question *ni* (empathically *nina*) is affixed to any one of these pronouns, &c.

*Examples.*

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| ufike nini wena?             | when did you arrive?                     |
| nbani lomuntu?               | who is the person?                       |
| uloba ngani wena na?         | what are you writing with (by means of)? |
| babiza loku yinina?          | do they demand this or not?              |
| invubu injanina?             | what is a hippopotamus like?             |
| nifuna insika engakanani na? | how large a post do you want?            |

(1.) Ba, who, is personal and takes *ngoba* for its plural prefix. And with whom, to whom, can be expressed in connection with either the sing. or plur. form.

(b.) *Ni*, what; *ngaki*, how many; *pi*, where; take *na* or may be used alone as well as *ni* itself.

*Examples.*

|                           |                     |
|---------------------------|---------------------|
| u pi umfula?              | where is the river? |
| bangaki abantu?           | how many people?    |
| nitinina?                 | what do you say?    |
| ilizwe leli lingelako na? | is this land yours? |

## EXERCISE 38.

What is your box like? What did he see under the large tree? To whom will they go? Where is my hat? What do these children want? Will you (sing.) finish this work or not? Have you seen my coat or not? We have seen it? What does this bad man say?

Ingubo yami ilahlekile; uyibonile yinina? Injanina? Imnyama yona. Uvela ngapina? Ubani wena? Bangobani? Siyaku ya kubanina? Niya juluka impela. Tulani. Utango u lu qedile na? Yebo baba. U sebenze nobanina? U ngi tembise yinina? Uba? Wena.

## LESSON 39.

1. Objective verbs express what is for a certain purpose, or is done to, or for a person or thing. They are also placed before the Dative case of nouns and pronouns, as *to* a place. (Sometimes the Ablative is implied, but *not* the sense of—from).

*Examples.*

|                            |  |
|----------------------------|--|
| itunga lokusengela,        | a vessel for milking into.             |
| ngi bambele itome lehashi, | hold for me the horse's bridle.        |
| ngo buyela kubaba,         | I will return to my father.            |
| babuyile kuyise,           | they have come back from their father. |

2. Causative verbs are formed by placing *is* before the final *a*. But some verbs ending in *ka* form their causatives in *sa*; others in *lu* form their causatives in *za*.

*Examples.*

|                  |                          |
|------------------|--------------------------|
| polisa lamanzi,  | cool this water.         |
| amanzi apalele,  | the water is spilled.    |
| palaza amanzi,   | spill the water.         |
| invula ikaukile, | the rain has terminated. |
| kaula,           | bring to a termination.  |

3. Reflective verbs take *zi* immediately before the root.

*Examples.*

|                       |                                   |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| baya zitanda,         | they love themselves.             |
| indoda iya zi limela, | the man is ploughing for himself. |

4. Reciprocal verbs take *an* before the final *a*.

*Example.*

laba baya sizana. these help one another.

## EXERCISE 39.

What does the woman say? Send this boy to his father. Take this infant to its mother. You and your sister must not hate each other. Whither has the drunkard gone? What have you brought the child to me for?

Ngiyaku sebenzela umlungu engi-m-aziyo. Siya lingana. Ipi indhlu yokusonta? Izinyo li kumukile. Innyama ibolile. Indawo yokuhlalela. Siyaku hamba siye kulowomuzi. Lomntwana uya kalela ukudhla kwake. Imvubu inomlomo omkulu. Imvubu iya tanda amanzi. Imvubu i namazinyo amakulu.

## LESSON 40.

1. Adverbs of time, place, manner, degree, which do not require any special remark will be found in the appendix, table 11.

2. *First* or *second* thing or person, is translated thing of the first, &c. The Cardinal and Ordinal numbers will be found in the appendix table 22.

*Example.*

hlabelela igama lobuhlana, ivumo elimashumi amabili, sing the fifth hymn to the twentieth tune.

3. *Bo*, which is a strong adverb, is used at the end of a word, particularly in the repetition of a command.

*Examples.*

tula, be quiet. | tula *bo*, be quiet, I say.

4. Merely, simply, &c., may be construed by *nje*.

*Examples.*

ufuna ni lapa? what do you want here?  
ngiya vagatya nje, I am simply taking a walk.

If a Native is speaking to an equal, or answering a superior rudely, he adds *bo* to this, and then it may imply, "What business is it of yours?" = *ngiya vagatya nje bo?*

5. *Obala* expresses the sense of—plain, fully visible—and requires *s* between it and the prefixes.

*Example.*

icala lake lisobala, his guilt is evident.

## VOCABULARY 37.

|                     |                                 |                         |                                  |
|---------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Gwavuma, <i>v.</i>  | Growl, as angry dog.            | Dabane (Isi), <i>n.</i> | Wild banana.                     |
| Coba (I), <i>n.</i> | Sandstone.                      | Damuka, <i>v.</i>       | Break, as a fog.                 |
| Copelela, <i>v.</i> | Be in earnest about<br>a thing. | Dilinga, <i>v.</i>      | Make into a ball,<br>make round. |
| Cupe, <i>int.</i>   | Look out ! (Threat)             | Dilinga (In), <i>n.</i> | Ball.                            |

## EXERCISE 40.

Hlakulani bo. Innewadi yobune. Iqoma lesishiyangalombili. Ani  
ngi size. Mina lapa mfana, umsebenzi wako mubi, musa ukuza lapa  
futi. Pinda ngomuso mfana nga ku tyaya cupe ! Lendoda itinina ?  
Ufudu lu nameva. Copelelani madoda. Izinja ziya gwavuma. Siya  
vagatya kusilwa.

## LESSON 41.

1. The Dative and Ablative cases being rather difficult have  
been reserved for the present Lesson.

(*a.*) Both are formed by simply changing the initial letter of  
the prefix into *e*. This is the case with proper names of most  
places, rivers, and all of the following common nouns :—

*Examples.*

|          |                  |                   |                    |
|----------|------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| ebusuku, | in the night.    | ehlane,           | in the wilderness. |
| ebusika, | in the winter.   | empumalanga,      | in the east.       |
| emmini,  | at noon.         | entyonalanga,     | in the west.       |
| ekaya,   | at home, &c.     | emnyango,         | in the doorway.    |
| ekanda,  | in the head, &c. | elwandhle,        | in the sea.        |
| eziko,   |                  | in the fireplace. |                    |

(2.) A few examples of proper nouns may be also desirable :—

*Examples.*

|                     |                                |
|---------------------|--------------------------------|
| em Gungundhlovu,    | at, in, to Pietermaritzburg.   |
| em Gungundhlovwana, | at, in, to Greytown.           |
| em Dhloti,          | at Verulam.                    |
| em Hlali,           | at Umhlali.                    |
| e Mnambiti,         | Ladismith.                     |
| e Mpfana,           | Mooi River.                    |
| e Molo,             | Boston.                        |
| em Putyini,         | Thornville.                    |
| em Zinyati,         | at the Buffalo River.          |
| e Kangela,          | at the Congella, near D'Urban. |

(3.) P. Nouns of the fifth class generally take *o*.

*Example.*

*o* Tukela, at the Tukela.

(b.) Another way of forming the above cases is *not only* to change the first letter into *e*; but also the last, as follows:—

|           |            |                                 |
|-----------|------------|---------------------------------|
| a         | is changed | into eni, as isitya, esityeni.  |
| e         | „          | eni, as ilizwe, elizweni.       |
| i         | „          | ini, as inkosi, enkosini.       |
| o         | „          | weni, as intando, entandweni.   |
| u         | „          | wini, as izulu, ezulwini.       |
| bo        | „          | tyeni, as icebo, icetyeni.      |
| mbo       | „          | njeni, as isibambo, esibanjeni. |
| mbi       | „          | njini, as inkumbi, enkunjini.   |
| mo        | „          | nyeni, as umlomo, emlonyeni.    |
| pu        | „          | tyini, as impupu, emputyini.    |
| fu and mu | into       | ini, as insimu, ensimini.       |

Remember, when the *last* consonant before the final letter is a labial (b, f, m, p, v), as in the last five examples, the w is omitted.

2. There are a few exceptions to these rules.

(a.) Some nouns ending in *mo* change into *eni*.

*Example.*

izinkomo, ezinkomeni; indawo, endaweni.

(b.) Common nouns of the fifth class occasionally take *enu* as a prefix, or take *o* only.

*Examples.*

eludakeni, in the mud. | onyaweni, on the foot.

3. The Dative is sometimes formed thus: if the initial letter be *a*, cut it off and substitute *ku*; if *i*, simply place *kw* before it; if *u*, either place *kw* or *reject* the *a* and put *ku*.

*Examples.*

ku yise, kwinkosi, kwabantu or kubantu, ngiya kwabetu, I am going to our people.

4. The above cases are united to the present, past and future tenses by placing the letter *s* between them.

*Examples.*

|                    |                           |
|--------------------|---------------------------|
| basekaya,          | they are at home.         |
| uyakuba sensimini, | he will be in the garden. |
| ebesendhlini,      | he was in the house.      |

5. *Towards*, in the direction of, as towards a certain place, may be translated by placing *nga* before the Dative.

*Examples.*

ngasendhlini, towards the house. | ngasemutini, towards the tree

6. Proper names of *places* and a few common names make the Possessive by uniting the prefixes of the *Imperfect* tense to the ablative by means of *s*.

*Examples.*

umuntu wasem Dhloti, a person belonging to Verulam.  
inhlanzi yaselwandlile, a fish of the sea.

## EXERCISE 41.

Put the bread into his mouth. I think they live in the direction of Buffalo River. Have you seen the man belonging to Ladismith? Be good enough to direct me to Mooi River. Is it far to Thornville? They are working in the gardens. Return (sing.) to the house. The sun rises in the east and sets in the west. We are travelling by night (in the night). We wish to go home. I see them on the hills. Among white people that animal which black men call "imvubu" they name "river-horse," because, when swimming, the head \*resembles that of a horse. There is a mouse in the meal. The plate is in the water. I have a sore on my foot. He is swimming in the river. Your cows are in my garden. There is a hole in his blanket. What do you want? We want you. What do you want me for?

Njengasezulwini. Igaba lomuti lisetaleni. Ingubo yake iselutangweni. Ummongo usematanjeni. Tela ubisi emasini. Ukufa kusenyokeni. In-nungu iya hlaba. Udosi lusenyosini. Uma nitanda, ninga funda lendaba emnewadini yami esand ukufika. Leta amanzi amahle. Ufanele ukuka emtonjeni. Abantu ba sem Voti. Ku sendhlini. Ngi nesilonda onyaweni. Ba seludakeni.

## LESSON 42.

1. The Vocative case, used in calling to, or addressing a person, is obtained by dropping the initial vowel. But nouns forming the plural in *o* retain it and prefix *b*.

*Examples.*

zihlobo zami                      my friends.  
bonina ngilaleleni,      mothers, listen to me.

---

\* Fana is connected with a noun or pronoun by na, as fana naye.

2. The Infinitive mood is sometimes employed as an interjection.

*Example.*

ukuvilapa kwake ! his laziness.

VOCABULARY 38.

|                       |                       |                         |            |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|------------|
| Tikatika, <i>n.</i>   | Tickle.               | Tafula (I), <i>n.</i>   | Table.     |
| Xilongo(I), <i>n.</i> | Trumpet.              | Tinta, <i>v.</i>        | Touch.     |
| Tina, <i>adv.</i>     | Truly.                | Tiya, <i>v.</i>         | Trap.      |
| Sipo (In), <i>n.</i>  | Soap.                 | To (U for Ulu),         | Something. |
| Yebo, <i>int.</i>     | Yes.                  | Toba, <i>v.</i>         | Bow, bend. |
| Tini (Um), <i>n.</i>  | Otter.                | Tokoza, <i>v.</i>       | Rejoice.   |
| Tinsila, <i>v.</i>    | Thrown down, as load. | Tokoza (In), <i>n.</i>  | Happiness. |
| Notya, <i>v.</i>      | Drive away.           | Kepekepe (I), <i>n.</i> | Sponge.    |
|                       |                       | Mali (I), <i>n.</i>     | Money.     |

EXERCISE 42.

The man is towards the house. Has he money? I want to buy a black cow. Has this horse any tricks? Who is that knocking at the door? It is I. Who are you? I am a white man. Let me come in, it is raining. The woman says the boy must bring the sponge for washing the children. An otter is in the water. We want something from you. Do you rejoice or not? Yes, truly. Touch this iron. Wash this table with soap and water.

Ngesikati sipi na? Ngo fika ematambama. Upi uyihlo? Uyo kanda insimbi. Unani esandhlени? Nginompongolo. Intombi yako isa pilile na? Isa pilile, kodwa namuhla, ibuhlungu ekanda. Abelungu bayaku tinina ngabantwana be banga umsindo lapa. Bantwana, musani ukubanga umsindo lapa. Tyala imbeu lapaya ngasemutini omkulu; uya wu bona nanguya. Lipi igeja lami. Nanto. Sengi li bouile. Yeka ukukuluma ngani. Zipi izinja zenu. Ngenani madoda. Umtini uya jabula emanini. L-apukili itafula lami.

---

NEGATIVE VERBS.

---

LESSON 43.

1. Let one general rule suffice for the terminations of the *present* and *past* tenses of the Indicative, Imperative and Subjunctive moods: the final letter of the root is changed into *i*.

The important exceptions are as follow:—

(a.) The Perfect tense, Ind. mood, either takes the positive form, or affixes *nga* to the unaltered root.

*Examples.*

ngi tandile, I have loved.  
 angi tandile or angi tandanga, I have not loved.

(b.) The Simple Imperfect and the Pluperfect tense, Incl. mood, terminate like the *positive* form.

*Examples.*

anga tanda, I did not love. | besinga tandile, we had not loved.

2. The next general rule respects the *present* and *past* tenses of the Potential and Optative moods—they end in *e*.

3. This rule concerns the *future* tenses, and embraces *all* the moods—the positive and the negative termination are the *same*.

*Examples.*

angiyiku bona, I shall not see.  
 angiyikuba ngi sebenza, I shall not be working.

4. The next rule relates to the *prefixes* of negative verbs.

(a.) Indicative mood.

(1.) The *simple-present*, Imperfect, Perfect and Future tenses take *a* before the prefix. In addition to this the *ya* of the future is changed into *gi*.

*Examples.*

angi kuluni, I am not speaking, | angi pumile, I have not gone out.  
 anga lima, I did not plough. | angi yiku tula, I shall not be quiet.

(2.) The Past-Progressive, Pluperfect, Present and Past Participles do *not* take *a* before the prefixes, but *nga* immediately *after* them.

*Examples.*

benginga gezi itafula, I was not washing the table.  
 benginga fulele indhlu, I had not thatched the house.  
 engatikile umfana, nga hamba ngingedwa, the boy not having arrived, I travelled alone.

(b.) The Subjunctive and Imperative moods, both the present and the perfect tense, take *nga* after the prefixes of the positive form.

*Examples.*

mane unga si bulali, pray do not kill us.  
 asinga tandi ukwona, let us not love sin.  
 ngi tyayileinja ukuba inga bonakali lapa futi, I have beaten the dog that it may not appear here again.

(c.) The Potential and Optative moods must not be lost sight of. The final letter of the present and past tenses is changed into *e*. In addition to this the empathic form of the Potential mood takes *a* before the prefixes. This form also has an exception,—the 3rd per. sing. 1 class, and 3rd per. plur. 2 class, take as prefixes respectively *akange* and *awange*.

*Examples.*

anginge tande umuntu omubi, I cannot love a bad person.

nginga nginge tande ukwona? may I not love sin?

5. The exceptions to the above rules are not *quite* complete, but will be found *amply* sufficient.

### EXERCISE 43.

Answer the following questions on Lesson 43 :—

Give the neg. prefixes and terminations of the 3rd per. sing. present tense, Indicative mood; Potential mood; Subjunctive; Imperative? How do you form the neg. of the past-progressive tense, 1st and 2nd pers. sing. and plur. of the above moods? Do the present and past tenses of the Potential mood terminate in *e* or *i*? Give the neg. form of the 3rd per. sing. of all the tenses ending in *i* and in all the moods?

## LESSON 44.

1. How is the negative of the present tense, Indicative mood, formed?
2. The termination of the verb *Tygo*, say or affirm, is not altered in the *present* tense. The *positive* perfect tense ends in *ilo* and the Imperfect in *ongo*.

*Examples.*

ngi tyilo, I have said.

angi tyongo, I have not said or did not say.

3. An idiomatic form may here be noticed. To express the sense of “has not yet,” “have not yet,” *ku* is placed between the prefixes and the root of the present tense.

4. With negatives the *na* of *kona* is dropped.

*Examples.*

aka bonakali, he does not appear.

aka ka bonakali, he has not yet appeared.

aba ko, they are not present.

## VOCABULARY 39.

|                        |                          |                          |                         |
|------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| Belesela, <i>v.</i>    | Worry, dun for money.    | Qumqumu(U), <i>n.</i>    | Cape gooseberry.        |
| Bembesela, <i>v.</i>   | Treat unbecomingly.      | Bamu (Isi), <i>n.</i>    | Gun.                    |
| Bambezela, <i>v.</i>   | Make grimaces at.        | Tyengula (In), <i>n.</i> | Snuff-spoon.            |
| Bambata, <i>v.</i>     | Pat, as a dog or horse.  | Kahlela, <i>v.</i>       | Bloom, as flower, kick. |
| Anela, <i>v.</i>       | Suffice, do nothing but. | Zingela, <i>v.</i>       | Hunt.                   |
| Babela, <i>v.</i>      | Burn grass round a hut.  | Tembu (Isi), <i>n.</i>   | Polygamy.               |
| Bandamu(Um), <i>n.</i> | Ring-worm.               | Tembuza, <i>v.</i>       | Practise polygamy.      |
| Bipa, <i>v.</i>        | Look as if about to cry. | Kweli (Uba), <i>n.</i>   | Jealousy.               |
|                        |                          | Kupe (Um), <i>n.</i>     | Fowl lice.              |
|                        |                          | Etyisa, <i>v.</i>        | Chew the cud.           |
|                        |                          | Qatya, <i>v.</i>         | Fly, as sparks.         |
|                        |                          | Numzana(Um), <i>n.</i>   | Chief man at kraal.     |

## EXERCISE 44.

The people do not dun me for money, but demand the girl that came here last week. I do not say you treat me unbecomingly. Those children are making grimaces at you. What are you doing? I am patting the horse. What has this child on his head? I am not certain, but I think it is ring-worm. There is not a candle in the house. We do not want hot water, but cold. Learn to treat all persons kindly, and remember that one who is despised has a heart to feel as well as you.

Musa uku ngi belesela. Aiko imali namuhla. Lensizwa yanele ukuza lapa, ifuna intombi yini? An! musani madoda m yekeni lomfana; akanacala yena. Lomuti au tyetyi ukukula. Musa ukubipa mfana njengenngane. Bapi abantu? Angi ba boni. Ute lomlungukazi, okade lapa, wa fika wa buza kumina upi u Mesise na? Ngati mina ungapakatit wa ngenake yena. Kw' anele kona. Ni tyilo. Aba tyongo. Ba m bembesele umlungukazi. Angi naluto. Umtini u nolaka.

## LESSON 45.

(1. Give the negative form of the *present* and *past Participle* (Lesson 43).

2. The sense of *before*, as applied to time, is expressed by introducing *ka* between the prefixes and root of the participle.

*Examples.*

enga sebenzi, he not working.  
enga (or enge) ka sebenzi, before he works.

## 3. How is the negative of the past-progressive tense formed?

## VOCABULARY 40.

|                       |                     |                       |             |
|-----------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|-------------|
| Camusela, <i>v.</i>   | Hatch, as chickens. | Dhlula, <i>v.</i>     | Pass on.    |
| Capuna, <i>v.</i>     | Take out a little.  | Didakalisa, <i>v.</i> | Confound.   |
| Cicima, <i>v.</i>     | Flow over.          | Doni (Um), <i>u.</i>  | Waterboom.  |
| Cwazimula, <i>v.</i>  | Glitter.            | Dubula, <i>v.</i>     | Shoot at.   |
| Cwila, <i>v.</i>      | Dive, as in water.  | Duku (In), <i>u.</i>  | Long staff. |
| Dabuka, <i>v.</i>     | Be heart-broken.    | Duma, <i>v.</i>       | Thunder.    |
| Nyakenye, <i>adv.</i> | Last year.          | Nonyaka, <i>adv.</i>  | This year.  |

## EXERCISE 45.

The hen was not hatching her chickens. Did you say, the vessel was not flowing over with milk? I did say so. The boy was not diving in the water. His heart is not broken. The shield was glittering in the sun all day. Take out a few mealies, grind and cook them for the boy. I was not shooting birds yesterday morning. You were not seeking your horse yesterday. If you say, a cow does not chew the cud, it is evident you do not understand cattle. Not having seen the chief, he went home. He was not present. Not liking the medicine, he refuses to take it. Many black people practise polygamy. Sparks are flying from the fire. I was not making gaimaces.

Benginga bambatiinja yako. Amadoda abenga cwili emanzini. Izulu belinga dumi izolo. Sasinga dubuli izinyoni nyakane, siya qala nonyaka. Leta induku yami. Umdoni ungumuti oseduze namanzi. Niya ngi didakalisa. Inhliziyo yami ai dabnkile. Leta umlilo ubabele ngasemuzini. Isitembu siya banga isikweli ngapakati kwabalazi. Upi umnumzana? Um funelani na? Ngiya m funa nje.

## LESSON 46.

1. Conjugate negatively the Perfect and Imperfect tenses of the Indicative Mood.

2. In the Perfect and Pluperfect tenses, what are the endings of *aha, ela, ama, asa, ata, ana*

Also of the monosyllabic verbs *ya* and *za*.

*aw* Remember the affix *nga* is very frequently used.

*Example.*

ipi ingubo yami? Angiyazi, angi yi bonanga. Where is my blanket?

I do not know, I have not seen it.

## VOCABULARY 41.

|                      |                         |                       |                           |
|----------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| Fundekela, <i>v.</i> | Tease.                  | Gaxa (Isi), <i>n.</i> | Lump, mass.               |
| Funga, <i>v.</i>     | Swear.                  | Geija <i>v.</i>       | Sharpen, as a stick.      |
| Funza, <i>v.</i>     | Feed, as a child.       | Gibe (Um), <i>n.</i>  | String to hang things on. |
| Fusa, <i>v.</i>      | Smoke over a fire.      | Gila (In), <i>n.</i>  | Gizzard of fowl.          |
| Gamatisa, <i>v.</i>  | Partly fill with water. | Gingqa, <i>v.</i>     | Roll.                     |
| Ganga, <i>v.</i>     | Behave impudently.      |                       |                           |

## EXERCISE 46.

I have not seen him. They have not yet arrived. Thou didst not strike him. I did not clean the house yesterday, but I have washed it to-day. They say, he teased the woman. He did not tease her, but asked her to fill partly a cup with cold water. They have not yet commenced to sow the seed. He has not yet milked the cow. The girl did not behave impudently. The horse has not rolled. Have you fed the infant?

Mina lapa mfana ang'i ku tyelanga na ukuba au fuse isibonda lesi? Cabo au ng'i tyelanga. Ang'i fundekele wena. Lendoda i fungile yini? Ng'iy-esaba ukubabela namuhla, ukona umoya omkulu. Musa ukuganga kubi loko, uy-ezwa. Kuhle ukube si hlonipe abakulu nabadala. Izinkuku lezi zinomkupe. Baya zingela invubu. Musa uku ng'i belesela njalo ang'i tyongo yini ukuba aiko imali kumi (or kimi) ngalennyanga ya pezulu.

## LESSON 47.

1. What are the negative prefixes of the first-future tense—simple and progressive? And is the root altered?

2. Give the negative prefixes of the *Pluperfect* tense?

## VOCABULARY 42.

|                         |                             |                         |                            |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| Endisa, <i>v.</i>       | Make, allow girl to marry.  | Goda (I), <i>n.</i>     | Thick cord.                |
| Enyuka, <i>v.</i>       | Go up.                      | Gobongo (I), <i>n.</i>  | Eggshell.                  |
| Enhla, <i>adv.</i>      | Above.                      | Gubu (Isi), <i>n.</i>   | Drum.                      |
| Enzansi, <i>adv.</i>    | Below.                      | Godi (Isi), <i>n.</i>   | Hollow.                    |
| Fanela, <i>v.</i>       | Fit, meet, proper.          | Godi (Um), <i>n.</i>    | Hole.                      |
| Fenkala (Im), <i>n.</i> | Sorrel, for cleaning teeth. | Gomfa, <i>v.</i>        | Stoop, as one writing.     |
| Feza, <i>v.</i>         | Finish.                     | Gudu (I), <i>n.</i>     | Horn for smoking.          |
| Fililiza, <i>v.</i>     | Crush.                      | Gungubala, <i>v.</i>    | Be imperfectly cooked.     |
| Ficinga, <i>v.</i>      | Squeeze, as sponge.         | Soka (I), <i>n.</i>     | Bachelor.                  |
| Fohla, <i>v.</i>        | Break through a fence.      | Zeke (Isi), <i>n.</i>   | Man rejected by the girls. |
| Fonyo (Isi), <i>n.</i>  | Muzzle for calf.            | Peledi (Isi), <i>n.</i> | Pin.                       |
| Tukutela, <i>v.</i>     | Be angry.                   | Nalide (I), <i>n.</i>   | Needle.                    |

## EXERCISE 47.

He said, he had not squeezed the sponge. He affirmed, the man had not finished his work. They will not ascend the mountain. Shall we see the sea? We shall not build a house. The cows have broken through the fence. That calf will die. The girl had taught the children in the school. The men were seeking the money which had been lost in the river. The people had not been ploughing. These trees do not grow. I will not send the book to-morrow. I had painted the box.

Ku fanele ukuba uye kona. Sula amazinyo ngemfenkala. Uya ngi fihliza, umunwe. Angi vumi uku m nika loku. Angiyikuba kona. Anginamandhla ukufeza indina engaka namuhla. Inkomo ayiyiku folhla lapa. Hamba wena ufune isifongo salennkonyane. Izinkomo azi boxanga enafuleni. Musa ukuhamba ngasenzansi, hamba ngasenhla. Aka tukutele lomuntu uya bila nje. Leta igudu lami. Izintombi zonke ziya m-ala lomuntu, uyisizeke impela. Y-enyuku bo. Au kwazi ukutyaya isigubu wena, si lete lapa.

## LESSON 48.

1. Place the negative prefixes of the first-future tense of the verb "to be" before the *positive* form of the *past* participle and the neg. of the second-future, Ind. Mood, is the result.

2. By placing the above prefixes before the *present* participle, the neg. of the future-progressive is formed.

*Examples.*

angiyiku ba nigisebenza ngomuso, I shall not be working to-morrow.  
asiyiku ba si m bonile. we shall not have seen him.

## VOCABULARY 43.

|                           |                   |                           |                  |
|---------------------------|-------------------|---------------------------|------------------|
| Nono (I), <i>n.</i>       | Tidy person.      | Bobozi (Um), <i>n.</i>    | Garrulous person |
| Deleli (Isi), <i>n.</i>   | Careless do.      | Ncinyane (Um), <i>n.</i>  | Stingy do.       |
| Dondi (Isi), <i>n.</i>    | Reluctant do.     | Dwelemane (In), <i>n.</i> | Clever do.       |
| Vila (I), <i>n.</i>       | Lazy do.          | Sanga (In), <i>n.</i>     | Squinting do.    |
| Libazi (Isi), <i>n.</i>   | Dilatory do.      | Minzi (Isi), <i>n.</i>    | Glutton.         |
| Kutali (Isi), <i>n.</i>   | Industrious do.   | Zimu (I), <i>n.</i>       | Cannibal.        |
| Katazi (Um), <i>n.</i>    | Annoying do.      | Ihlabhiki (Um), <i>n.</i> | Rebel.           |
| Pikeleli (Isi), <i>n.</i> | Contradictory do. | Pangeli (Um), <i>n.</i>   | Plunderer.       |
| Xokozeli (Um), <i>n.</i>  | Turbulent do.     | Jara (I), <i>n.</i>       | Strong man.      |
| Boxi (Um), <i>n.</i>      | Quarrelsome do.   | Qawe (I), <i>n.</i>       | Brave man.       |
|                           |                   | Hloli (In), <i>n.</i>     | Spy.             |

VOCABULARY 43. (*Continued.*)

|                              |                |                         |                       |
|------------------------------|----------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| Telosi (I), <i>n.</i>        | Sailor.        | Zanyana (Um), <i>n.</i> | Nurse of children.    |
| Shumayeli (Um), <i>n.</i>    | Preacher.      | Ondhli (Um), <i>n.</i>  | Guardian of children. |
| Tetiwamacala (Um), <i>n.</i> | Magistrate.    | Zala (um), <i>n.</i>    | Cousin.               |
| Dabulizwe (Um), <i>n.</i>    | Land-surveyor. |                         |                       |

## EXERCISE 48.

Angiyikuba ngi lobile innewadi yami. Musa uku zi tyaya umbobozi, kubi loko. Mahle amanono. Mabi amazimu. Itelosi liya sebenza e-ikepeni. Umdabulizwe uzakuza ninina? U funa ni? Ngiya funa umtetiwamacala. Aka ka fiki. Hamba wena asi funi umboxi lapa. Uyivila lomfazi. Leyontombi iyinsanga. Biza umzanyana apate leungane. Ngiya biza lomfana ukuba angizise, kepa aka vumi kahle uyisidondi nje. Itelosi liya ku funa wena.

## LESSON 49.

1. How do you form the negative of the present and past tenses of the Potential mood? (Lesson 43.)

## VOCABULARY 44.

|                         |                        |                         |               |
|-------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|---------------|
| Gxila, <i>v.</i>        | Stand firmly, as tree. | Zenzisi (Um), <i>n.</i> | Dissembler.   |
| Hlafuna, <i>v.</i>      | Masticate.             | Hlepula, <i>v.</i>      | Break off.    |
| Hlalu (Ubu), <i>n.</i>  | Beads.                 | Hlinza, <i>v.</i>       | Skin.         |
| Hlangabeza, <i>v.</i>   | Go to meet.            | Yali (Um), <i>n.</i>    | Admonisher.   |
| Hloba, <i>v.</i>        | Put on fine clothes.   | Babazi (Um), <i>n.</i>  | Adulator.     |
| Wetu,                   | My good fellow.        | Luleki (Um), <i>n.</i>  | Good adviser. |
| Hlangu (Isi), <i>n.</i> | War-shield.            | Nqobi (Um), <i>n.</i>   | Conqueror.    |
| Hlapaza, <i>v.</i>      | Give profusely.        | Qobi (Um), <i>n.</i>    | Carver.       |
|                         |                        | Kapi (Um), <i>n.</i>    | Conductor.    |
|                         |                        | Yengi (Um), <i>n.</i>   | Tempter.      |

Woza (Colloquial used in 2 Per.), Come.

## EXERCISE 49.

I cannot (have not strength) sing to-day. We like the hymns, but we do not like the tunes. I may not weed in the garden to-day. Your mother says, you (sing.) may not go out. They may not smoke the pipes. The children must masticate their food. You may not burn the grass round the kraal, as the men are not at home.

Puma wena uye u hlangabeze unyoko; nanguya. Ngahluleka ukutenga ubuhlalu izolo, abuko impela. Izinceku bezi hlinza inkomo eya fayoyi. Umyali lowo om-aziyo wena aka fikanga kutangi. Sipi isinkwa? Nasi. Hlepula wetu. Usi funelani isinkwa sami? Ai ke, ngi lambele

nje. Musa ukuhlapaza umbila uzaku pela ngokunjalo. Nazo ke izinsizwa ziya hloba kahle. Lalela lomuntu ungumhleki yena. Wozani majara. Lomuti ugxilile. Isipikeleli lesi sifuna ni lapa? As-azi tina. Bika enkosini ukuba ukona umhlubuki. Ca, akunjalo ngumxokozeli nje. Abenke baye emfuleni ukuka amanzi. Umlungu uti yena ukuba singe ka peli isikati sake kuhle ukuba aqede imisebenzi yake yonke. Inkukukazi iya eamusela, nanto izinyane lipuma egobogweni.

## LESSON 50.

1. Alter the root of the verb, and suitable negative prefixes for the imperative mood.

### EXERCISE 50.

Let us take a walk. Let us not buy that bull. Love not (plur.) the things which are in the world. Let them not wash at the river to-day. Let us go (contr.) to see the clever man. Do not be lazy.

Maninga fungi zihlobo zami. Ake nkosi u hlalise lensizwa iya qamb amanga. Angi tandi lomuntu etukutela njalo uyisijaka. Sengi jwayele umlungu wami. Abanga konondi. Musani ukulimazainja yami ainacala yona. Woza wetu. Umondhli walomtwana, ubani yena? Angi m-azi. Asi kuhume. Asi ye kona. Aba hambi. Abanga hambi. Asi nacala. Aba nalaka.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

## LESSON 51.

1. The passive voice of the Simple, Causative and Objective forms is obtained by inserting *w* before the final vowel of the root of the Active voice.

### *Examples.*

|               |             |  |               |                   |
|---------------|-------------|--|---------------|-------------------|
| ngiya tanda,  | I do love.  |  | siya tuliswa, | we are silenced.  |
| ngiya tandwa, | I am loved. |  | uya funela,   | he wants for.     |
| siya tulisa,  | we silence. |  | nya funelwa,  | he is wanted for. |

To this rule there are a few noticeable exceptions:—

(a.) In many roots beginning with a vowel, in most monosyllabic verbs, and a few others, *iw* is required.

### *Examples.*

|             |              |  |           |                     |
|-------------|--------------|--|-----------|---------------------|
| uku dhliwa, | to be eaten. |  | uku piwa, | to be given.        |
| uku etiwa,  | to be poured |  | carefully | between the thumbs. |

(b.) Ukwazi and ukuti *suffix wa* to the root.

*Examples.*

ukw-aziwa, to be known. | uku tiwa, to be spoken.

2. (a.) In the Perfect tense of verbs terminating in *ile*, the *l* cannot stand before the *w* of the passive form, but is absorbed by it.

*Examples.*

ngi bonile, I have seen. | ngi boniwe, I have been seen.

(b.) Ukubulala, to kill, drops the *l* in all the tenses.

*Examples.*

|                |                        |
|----------------|------------------------|
| ba bulawa,     | they were killed.      |
| ba bulewe,     | they have been killed. |
| baya bulawa,   | they are being killed. |
| bayaku bulawa, | they will be killed.   |

VOCABULARY 45.

|                           |                    |                         |                       |
|---------------------------|--------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| Hloni (Izin), <i>n.</i>   | Bashfulness.       | Mame ! <i>int.</i>      | Dear me !             |
| Hlonze (In), <i>n.</i>    | Wrinkle.           | Yeka ! <i>int.</i>      | Well to be sure !     |
| Illukumeza, <i>v.</i>     | Annoy.             | We ! <i>int.</i>        | Just look !           |
| Hlusa, <i>v.</i>          | Bother.            | Isibili, <i>adv.</i>    | In truth.             |
| Hlwenga (Um), <i>n.</i>   | Mane of horse.     | Ingabe, <i>adv.</i>     | It may be.            |
| Ehe ! <i>int.</i>         | Just so !          | Ingati, <i>adv.</i>     | Whereas.              |
| Au ! <i>int.</i>          | Oh !               | Malungana, <i>adv.</i>  | Opposite.             |
| Iya ! <i>int.</i>         | Away !             | Nganeno, <i>adv.</i>    | This side of.         |
| Sizwakazi (In), <i>n.</i> | Cow without horns. | Cuta, <i>v.</i>         | Compress lips firmly. |
| Tandi (Um), <i>n.</i>     | Lover.             | Gubuda,                 | Hoax, humbug.         |
| Shinga (I), <i>n.</i>     | Base person.       | Fifane (Isi), <i>n.</i> | Angry person.         |

EXERCISE 51.

A large house has been built. A strong box has been made. They say, a beautiful snuff-spoon will be made by that clever person. The fence is broken through. I am confounded. The sponge has been squeezed. The chief is treated unbecomingly. The meat has been smoked. The dog has been beaten. A mouse has been caught. The ox has been skinned. The child has been washed. My boots have been cleaned. The hat was not put into my box yesterday. The bull which I bought the day before yesterday has been much admired.

Ugeziwe umntwana. Yakiwe indhlu. Labo bantu ba tandiwe ngokuba be lungile ngako konke aba kw-enzayo. Inkomo yake inhle isibili. Ipi imali yami ? Iya ! Ngi shiyele (snuff) baba. Aluko wetu. Nga ku tyaya mfana isibili uyishinga impela. Si bulewe isitifane. Tenga insizwakazi yami. Funa nganeno.

## LESSON 52.

1. In forming the Passive voice of verbs (positively or negatively) which have *b*, *p*, *m*, *mb*, *mp*, in the last syllable or the penultimate (sometimes also the antepenultimate), a mutation is necessary.

*b* changes into *ty* (or *j* if followed by *i* or *o*).

*P* „ *ty*.

*m* „ *ny*.

*mb* „ *nj*.

*mp* „ *nty*.

The *w* is of course used, and placed according to the rule in the previous lesson

*Examples.*

ngiya tatyatwa (from tabata), I am taken.

si botyiwe (from bopa), we are bound.

si banjiwe (from bamba), we are held.

2. For the *negative* forms of the passive, a short rule may be given, —the final *e* found in the active voice is retained in the passive; but wherever *i* is met with, *a* must be substituted for it.

*Examples.*

angi tandi, I do not love. | angi tandwa, I am not loved.

## EXERCISE 52.

He has been guided by a boy. He is condemned by the judge. They are not loved. You will not be bound. The goat has been skinned. A large stone has been rolled by this small boy. I did not pat the white dog. We do not burn the grass around the kraal this month. They were not seeking the boundary of the land. We could not consent to that. The oxen did not break through the fence. I am sorry to see this child continually coughing. Three leaves of this new book, which I bought the day before yesterday, are not here. The girl could not go out as she had a large boil on her foot. These children are not bashful. Having spoken, he went away. I will not build my house near a river.

Uvela ngapina? Ngalapaya. Uvelapina? Ngiya vela ekaya. Ngi puzise wetu, ngiya fa, li balele (sun) namuhla. Imbuzi yami ilahlekile. Ilahleke nini? Izolo ekutyoneni. Uyi bonile yini? Ca, wetu, asi yi bonanga. Innewadi ilotyawe. Imbuzi i banjiwe. Baya hlukumeza indwelemanane. Suka, musa uku ngi hlusa. Wati yena ukuba ube funisa ngenkomo yake, nga ya ke mina ukuba ngi yi bone, wa landula, wa ngi gubuda nje. Ba botyiwe. Asi ba tandi labo' bantu. Asi banjiwe.

## LESSON 53.

1. To express *never* of past time, the negative form of *bona* (ending in *nga*) must be placed before the *present participle*.

*Examples.*

angi bonanga ngi siza umuntu lowo, I have never helped that person.  
asi bonanga si sebenza kona, we have never worked there.  
aka bononga e bona loku, he has never seen this.

2. Ought (both in the affirmative and negative) is translated by placing *nga* before the present and past participle.

*Examples.*

nga elinga, he ought to try.  
nga benga kwenzi loku, they ought not to do this.  
nga si sebenzile, we ought to have worked.

3. To express—continuing the same without any improvement, &c.—you must suffix *njani* to the negative prefixes.

*Example.*

injani indoda ebi gula? O nkosi ai njani, how is the man who was sick? He is neither better nor worse, sir.

4. To express it is not, *asi* (occasionally *aku*) is used, and is united to noun, &c., as follows:—

(a.) When the initial letter of a prefix is *u*, *a*, or *o*, *ng* is placed between it and the *asi*; and when the first letter is *i*, *y* is taken.

*Examples.*

asi ngumuntu, it is not a person.  
asi yindhlu, it is not a house.  
asi ngamahashi, it is not the horses.

(b.) Pronouns beginning with *y* take the *asi* only; and in other cases *asi* is either used alone, or *yi* is suffixed to it.

*Examples.*

asi yo inkuku yami, it is not my fowl.  
asi lo ihashi lami, it is not my horse.  
asi bo (or yibo) abantu bami, it is not my people.

## VOCABULARY 46.

|       |                               |                              |                  |
|-------|-------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------|
| Kiti, | My or our people or place.    | Tombazana(IforIn), <i>n.</i> | Girl.            |
| Kini, | Thy or your people or place.  | Nini (Um), <i>n.</i>         | Owner.           |
| Kubo, | His or their people or place. | Tana (Um), <i>n.</i>         | Short for child. |
|       |                               | Tanami (Um), <i>n.</i>       | My child.        |
|       |                               | Ka (Um), <i>n.</i>           | Short for wife.  |
| Woza, | Used in Imp. mood for come.   | Timula, <i>v.</i>            | Sneeze.          |

## EXERCISE 53.

Labo bantu asi yiho abakiti. Nansiya inkomo yakiti. Nambo ubu-  
hlalu bako. Asi loko engi ku funayo. Intombazana isand ukufika  
bati bona, ukuba ikona insizwa yakini igula kakulu. Bapi abanini bala-  
masimu? Cupe mfana! nga ku kolisa ngalenduku. Angi bonanga ngi  
bona indoda njenga le yanele ukutukutela. Woza lapa wetu u bone  
umhlwenga wehashi leli. Angi tyongo\* kuwe yini ukuba u kate wona  
ngomuti u bulale imikaza? Nansi intambo, iqabukile! woza uyi jobelele.  
Hlala lapa wena aze a fike amadoda.

## LESSON 54.

1. The *passive* form is sometimes met with, where, according to English idiom, we should expect to find the active voice. In such instances the impersonal *ku* is generally heard.

*Examples.*

ku yiwe ensizweni ngentombi leyo, he has gone to the young man about  
that maiden.

ku yiwe ukulungiswa, it has gone to be rectified.

kwa ku kanjwa ngezinyawo, they were walking on foot.

ku hlalwe kona, ngokuba besi funa uku m bona, we stayed there, because  
we wanted to see him.

2. Never of *future* time is expressed as follows:—Soze is placed between the negative prefixes of the present and the *full* form of the past tense.

*Example.*

angi soze nga tanda leyondoda, I shall never love that man.

3. The sense of *cannot* may be rendered by introducing ngeze (or ngaze being a tribal difference) between the positive prefixes of the subjunctive mood and those of the *past* tense.

*Example.*

isi tya lesi singeze sa fa, siyinsimbi, this plate cannot be broken, it is  
metal.

4. *Bo* suffixed to the prefixes of the simple present tenses has an *imperative* force (3. P. sing. takes *a*).

*Examples.*

a-bo-m tyela, he is to tell him.

u-bo-wu shiya lomsebenzi, leave this work.

i-bo za indoda nayo inkomo, the man is come with the cow.

\* Remember this word takes *o* instead of *a* for the final termination of the affix.

5. A few more specimens of contractions in the language may be desirable.

(*a.*) When umnini is joined to a noun or emphatic form of personal pronoun, the former loses its initial letter and the latter its *na*.

*Examples.*

umninindhlu, owner of the house. | umniniyo, the owner of it (house)

(*b.*) My, thy, his wife, child, may be construed thus:—Reject the final *a* of the abbreviated form of the words and then place before the possessive form of the personal pronouns.

*Examples.*

umkami, my wife. | unkake, his wife. | untanabo, their child.

VOCABULARY 47.

|                          |                   |                       |                     |
|--------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|
| Jama, <i>v.</i>          | Look sternly.     | Kaulo (Um), <i>n.</i> | Boundary.           |
| Jezisa, <i>v.</i>        | Blame, condemn.   | Kaza (Um), <i>n.</i>  | Large tick.         |
| Jika, <i>v.</i>          | Dangle.           | Kizane (I), <i>n.</i> | Small tick.         |
| Jingijolo (I), <i>n.</i> | Blackberry.       | Kohlala, <i>v.</i>    | Cough.              |
| Jobelela, <i>v.</i>      | Join on to.       | Kolisa, <i>v.</i>     | Satisfy.            |
| Jwayela, <i>v.</i>       | Be accustomed to. | Kotoza, <i>v.</i>     | Glean.              |
| Ka (Ama), <i>n.</i>      | Perfumery.        | Kukuza, <i>v.</i>     | Suck, as a peach.   |
| Kalima, <i>v.</i>        | Turn back, as ox. | Qabuka, <i>v.</i>     | Get broken.         |
| Kapa, <i>v.</i>          | Guide.            | Epula, <i>v.</i>      | Take off, as pot.   |
| Daba (In), <i>n.</i>     | Matter, affair.   | Ntyontya, <i>v.</i>   | Steal small things. |

EXERCISE 54.

I have never learnt to make waggons. We shall never see that country. That matter cannot be rectified this year. You ought not to glean in my garden. The perfumery has not yet arrived. They must work in this place until I return. He has stolen my pins and needles. The owner of that garden is my wife. He is to work. You are to come with the girl. This dog cannot travel to day. They have gone to Ladismith. I will never do what you wish.

Abasoze bajwayela unkuba lowo. Aika vutwa innyama ingeze yepulwa eziko manje. Kuya setyenzwa lapa madoda, siya fa impela, amatambo a buhlungu. Nanti ijingijolo lako woza, u li tabate. Kalima inkabi mfana tyetya. Abo fika ngomuso. Singaze sa hamba namuhla, so hamba ngomhlomunye. Aka bonanga ekuhluma iqiniso. Ani tandane zihlobo zani. Anginge pume manje. Anginamandhla ukupuma. Anginasikati ukupuma. Ipi insizwa yako? Aiko, kuyiwe esilungwini. Asina' nkomo kuleli' lizwe. Iboza indoda nengubo. Angina' ndaba madoda. Kukuza loku : kumnandi.

## LESSON 55.

1. (*a.*) With the exception of *ze*, all adjectival-monosyllabic roots, in a few classes, take a redundancy of letters:—

SING. C. 1. and C. 6. take *mu*.

PLUR. C. 2. takes *ma*.

C. 4. takes *mi*.

*Examples.*

mubi lomuntu, this person is bad.

umntwana omuhle, a beautiful child.

lemiti mide, these trees are high.

(*b.*) A few words of *more* than one syllable also take these forms, as *kulu*, large; *ningi*, many; *bili*, two, &c. But in the C. 1. and C. 6. sing. *u* is dropped.

*Examples.*

umfazi omkulu, a large woman. | amakasi amaningi, many leaves.  
amavumo amabili, two tunes.

2. When emphasis is required, adjectives are placed before nouns.

*Example.*

We bandla! ngi bonile enkulu indodo namuhla, O my good friends!  
I have seen a very large man to-day.

3. "He, she has not," &c., must be rendered in Zulu, "He is not with;" and the incipient letter of the substantive's prefix is rejected.

*Example.*

aka nacala, he is not with fault—he is not blamable.

4. Many substantives (including the Inf. used as a noun) may be employed adverbially by prefixing *nga* to them.

*Example.*

ba buyele ekaya ngokujabula, they have joyfully returned home.

5. He is merciful, strong, &c., is translated, he is with mercy, &c. The initial letter of the noun is, of course, changed according to rules, with which, I presume, the student is now familiar.

6. Make haste may sometimes be rendered by "take feet."

7. Certain adverbial expressions, as *mhla*, on the day; *mzukwana*, *uba* or *ube*, when; *lapo*, where; *kona*, there or then, &c., are followed by a present participle. But when reference is made to *last* time the subjunctive mood is used.

*Examples.*

uba a bube unina ka Tyaka,    when Tyaka's mother died.  
 mhla siye kona,                    on the day we went there.

## VOCABULARY 48.

|                |                        |                             |                       |
|----------------|------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------|
| Ngomsombuluko, | on Monday.             | Ngamabomu, <i>adv.</i>      | Wilfully.             |
| Ngolwesibili,  | on Tuesday.            | Ngemihla, <i>adv.</i>       | Daily.                |
| Ngolwesitatu,  | on Wednesday -<br>day. | Masinyane, <i>adv.</i>      | Immediately.          |
| Ngolwesine,    | on Thursday.           | Ngesita, <i>adv.</i>        | Privately.            |
| Ngolwesihlanu, | on Friday.             | Ndawonye, <i>adv.</i>       | In one place.         |
| Ngomgqibelo,   | on Saturday.           | Konamanje, <i>adv.</i>      | At once.              |
| Ngesonto,      | on Sunday.             | Kuzekubepakade, <i>adv.</i> | For ever and<br>ever. |

## EXERCISE 55.

Muhle lomntwana. Mabi lamanzi. Mi kulu leyomiti. Ngo fika \*ngomsombuluko ngolwesitatu. Angi tandi ukusebenza ngesonto. U kw-enzile loko ngamabomu. Ngi bone umfana omude. Siya funa isitya masinyane. Izintombi lezi azi namaka. Wozani bantu bakiti ni bone impahla yake. Uba abube amahashi ake. Abo bonakala lapa konamanje. U fanele ukutata izinyawo. Banomusa labobantu. Kuyiwe ecaleni. Lezo' zintombi zihlezi ndawonye. Singa fika nangesonto: as'azi kodwa. Ba nomusa labobantu.

## LESSON 56.

1. (*a.*) To express, "Oh! that I, he, they, &c., may," place *sengati* before the whole of the affirmative form of the present tense, Potential mood.

*Example.*

sengati nginga hlangana naye, Oh! that I may meet with him!

(*b.*) In translating the neg. form, "Oh! that I may not," *sengati* is placed before the negative of the above: but the first *a* is generally dropped.

*Example.*

sengati bange bube, Oh! that they may not perish!

2. To express "May I," &c., *double* the prefixes of the Potential mood, present tense. In the neg. form the *first* prefix does not undergo any alteration.

---

\*This is used in connection with any day except Saturday and Sunday.



lomntwana. Hamba wena ulande izembe lami, Lipi? Lisemfuleni eduze nomyezane. Mahle lamanono ngiya wa tanda kakulu. Akunjengokuqala, sengijwayele ukulima. Izinyo lami li kumukile lona.

## LESSON 57.

1. To express *then* in the *Imperfect* tense, the prefixes are doubled and *za* placed between them.

*Example.*

ngaza ngemuka, then I departed.

2. The accusative of the person to whom something is done or given, or from whom something is taken, is frequently placed before a verb which is followed by a noun particularizing.

*Example.*

wa m kipa izinyo lake, he extracted his tooth.

## VOCABULARY 50.

|                       |                     |                     |                    |
|-----------------------|---------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| Palaza, <i>v.</i>     | Spill, as water.    | Peca, <i>v.</i>     | Fold, as paper.    |
| Pambukela, <i>v.</i>  | Turn out to or for. | Pukuza, <i>v.</i>   | Act foolishly.     |
| Pazamisa, <i>v.</i>   | Interrupt.          | Puluka, <i>v.</i>   | Be recovered from  |
| Bo (Im), <i>n.</i>    | Dysentery.          |                     | sickness.          |
| Lenzi (Um), <i>n.</i> | Leg.                | Lo (Izi), <i>n.</i> | Worms.             |
|                       | Lokazana (Isi),     |                     | Dimin. from isilo. |

## EXERCISE 57.

Nginenkwashu umlenzi. Wa m tyaya emhlana ngenduku, kwaza kwa duma esifubeni. Kutangi ngi bone isilokazana emfuleni madoda. Esinjani? Angi s-azi kahle bengi kude naso. Kuhle wetu ukuba uye lapaya ubute amabazelo. Aso pemba umlilo efusini. Amakaza aya si bulala. Ngetukile lapaya izolo, ngapos' ukulimala isibili. Uhambelapi na? Ai ke mgane, ngiya ya enduneni ngibike ukufa, ubaba uya gula. Niya bona madoda angi hlezi lapa kulelilizwe ngi bilelwa ukufa; zonke izingane zami zipantsi angazi zinani. Godusela lomlungu izinkomo zake. Wo! seikulupele lenkabi, ikulupele impela. Deda wetu ngiya bizwa. Icala li m dhlile umlungu. Musa ukubanga umsindo ngeze. Lentombazana iya kala nje imvelo yayo. Unamanga lomuntu angi m tyayanga. Cima amehlo unga beki ukamisa umlomo kodwa. Amanga nkosi, angi bonanga ekwenza loko njengokutyo kwake. Ngake ngambona. Sa ke sa fika kona. Ngike ngi bone isilo leso. Lomntwana unezilo. Baza bapuma. Ngaza nga senga. O! qa wetu! angi tyongo kuye ukuba aka hambe. Bekani madoda mina angibonanga ngenziwa loku akwenzayo kumina. Lomfazi, nangu wa ngi

tyaya ngewisa emlonyeni, amazinyo amabili akumukile nanka. Abantu abamnyama abatandi ukabizwa ngamakafula. Abantu abaningi laya gula. Banani! Banembo. Abanye sebepulukile. Peca lamakasi. Lomuntu uya pukuza.

## LESSON 58.

1. Numeral adverbs for *once*, *twice*, &c., are obtained by prefixing *ka* to the cardinal roots.

### *Examples.*

kabili, twice. | katatu, thrice.

2. By prefixing *ka* as above, many adjectives may be converted into adverbs.

### *Examples.*

kabi, badly. | kakulu, greatly.

3. To express motion *from* a place, the simple form of the verb is used; but *to* a place, the objective.

### *Examples.*

ubuyile emasimini, he has returned from the gardens.

ubuyele emasimini, he has returned to the gardens.

## VOCABULARY 51.

|                        |                                |                      |                          |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------|--------------------------|
| Sakaza, <i>v.</i>      | Scatter.                       | Tumba, <i>v.</i>     | Take captive.            |
| Swendo (Um), <i>n.</i> | Nap on blanket.                | Tupaza, <i>v.</i>    | Toddle, as little child. |
| Tefula, <i>v.</i>      | Misplace a letter in speaking. | Vamo(Im), <i>n.</i>  | Majority.                |
| Tekeza, <i>v.</i>      | Speak roughly.                 | Yeta, <i>v.</i>      | Be low in spirits.       |
| Tikimeza, <i>v.</i>    | Distract.                      | Qanga, <i>v.</i>     | Speak ironically.        |
| Tulu (Um), <i>n.</i>   | Wild-medlar tree.              | Miyane(U), <i>n.</i> | Mosquito.                |

## EXERCISE 58.

Have you a wild-medlar tree near your house? This skin has a very nice nap on it. He told the boy, he had been quick; but he was speaking ironically. Who told you to scatter my mealies? When you speak the language, you must not misplace the letters. Do not speak roughly. They killed all the men, but the women were all taken captive. Oh! that they may become wise! Do listen to me. Willing or unwilling, they shall go. They will have seen him before he arrives. Be quiet, (plur.) you distract me. A mosquito has just bitten me. The majority believe in him.

Yaka indhlu. Izinkomo zalukile. Y-anga iingane yake. Angi kwazi ukumba. Lomuti uya baba. Asi tandi umbabazi lowo. Amalashi aya tanda ubabe impela. Utyani bakona buy-esabeka, ababonanga bebabela. Baca lapa unfana, tyetya. Izolo ngi bone isidakwa si badazela. Leta amanzi wetu, li balele. Ngiya funa, umuti wombandamu. Asi pume ke madoda, lizaku puma (sun) selibejile izulu. Mabi lamanzi anezibidi eziningi. Amanzi a bilile. Anginamandhla ukuhamba lapa lubityi impela. Lembalasi ibunile si yi bone izolo. Abantu abamnyama baya baza izicamelu zabo ngomuti. Isilonda lesi siya cica. Ilizwe lonke li tulile liti ewaka. Intsimbi yomlungu iya ewazimula elangeni. Si capunele umbila. Musa ukucapazela ennewadini, nanti ibala elibi ekasini leli. Inhliziyo yake ilabukile ngalendaba. Aninga piki inkani ngamazwe enu, kuhle ukuba, abizwe umdabulizwe alabule kahle yena.

## LESSON 59.

1. It sometimes happens, we would speak, act, &c., but something prevents: this is expressed by what Dr. Colenso calls "The ineffective tenses." They are formed as follows:—

Place a variety (bengi, &c.) of the *past progressive* before *zaku* or *yaku*; *zo* or *yo* (the corresponding contracted forms).

### *Example.*

bengiya kw-enza loku, I would do this (but, &c.).

2. Ahle, with the Subjunctive mood, expresses conviction of certainty

### *Example.*

ahle ngi kwele lomuti, I am certain I could climb this tree.

3. To express "by myself," &c.; "for my, this, his part," &c., *ngokwe* is placed before the possessive forms of the personal pronouns.

### *Examples.*

nginga kwenza loko ngokwami, I can do that by myself.  
ngokwami angiboni icala kulomuntu, for my part I do not see any  
guilt in this person.

4. Reciprocal verbs *sometimes* take *na* (and, with), with the noun or pronoun as the case may be.

*Examples.*

|                                   |                                      |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| siya sizana naye,                 | we help each other (he and I).       |
| siya tandana nodade wetu,         | we love each other, my sister and I. |
| nga hlangana nabo, endhleleni,    | I met them in the path.              |
| baya bonana,                      | they see each other.                 |
| inhliziyi yami iya fakazana nami, | my heart beareth me witness.         |

## EXERCISE 59.

Izinhlanzi zisemanzini. Izilo zisemhlabeni. Izilo zisesiswini. Izin' kanyezi zisezulwini. Yeka loko. Y-eqa udonga lolu katatu. Bengiyaku ya kona, unyawo kanti lubuhlungu. Niti ni madoda? Uma, bekungabi njalo, besiyaku sebenza. Ahle ngi ewile kulomfula. Yeka okwami, umakazi ngi hambele pina ukuba umuntu atabate imali yami. Nginga hlakula ngokwami. Uzaku za ninina? Babe m bulala ikanda. Kuyiwe emputyini. Asinge hambe ebusuku. Benginga kuluma ngokuba abakiti bebekona. Sengati banga bona ububi babo! Asinga tukuteli. Aso tyaya izinyoni ngesibamu. Nginga aninge lambe! Bayo sebenza emasimini. Ute uma avuke kusasa. Uma behamba siyaku hamba nabo. Abo za nenhlanzi leyo. Sibho m tyela ukuba a tyetye ukufika. Uke wa ba bona na? U hambe utyaya lomfana. Basand ukupuma. Nga si kum-bula abampofu. Miningi imifula. Mubi lomntwana. Mude lomfazi. Nantuya unyazi. Bebehambile. Tyetyani bantwana kade iutsimbi ikala.

## LESSON 60.

1. (a.) The verb "ukuti" is extensively employed idiomatically. The Rev. Mr. Davis names it very properly, "The prefatory predicate." In connection with other verbs, it seems to be used principally for drawing attention, or giving emphasis.

(b.) If the prefixes of *ti* are in the Past tense, the subsequent verb is generally placed in the past; but if in a present, or future tense, the verb following is the present tense of either the Indicative or Subjunctive mood.

*Examples.*

bati ekufikeni kwabo, bangena endhlini, on their arrival, they went into the house.

"ati u Dingane uma angene ebukosini, wa wa bulala onke amaduna amakulu," "when Dingane entered upon the chieftainship, he killed all the great captains."

kuti ebusuku bahlale kona, by night they stay there.

siyakuti silime lapaya, we shall plough yonder.

(c.) To a person who is at a loss for a word, “ukuti” is a very convenient idiomatic form, as it may be used in connection with a sign.

*Example.*

ufanele ukuti, you must do it (sign) in this manner.

2. To express, “we, you are many, great,” &c., the initial letter of the rel. form is rejected.

*Examples.*

|             |               |  |                |                |
|-------------|---------------|--|----------------|----------------|
| si bakuln,  | we are great. |  | ni bamhlope,   | you are white. |
| si baningi, | we are many.  |  | si bamnyama,   | we are black.  |
|             | ni bancinane, |  | you are small. |                |

3. When two vowels come together, as at the end of one word, and the beginning of another, the former is frequently elided, particularly in rapid utterance.

*Example.*

let' isando, bring a hammer.

## LESSON 61.

1. When two or more nouns are joined by the cop. conj. and, you must if possible unite them in a class; but if not, the impersonal form *ku* may be used.

*Examples.*

Babekona intombazana nonina, the girl and her mother were present.  
Kukona umfana nenkomo, a boy and a cow are there.

2. Natives count with their fingers, beginning, generally, with the small one of the left hand, so that the thumb of the right hand is six. Tens are counted in a similar manner; and when they wish to make a sign for any number—as thirty, forty, &c.,—they hold up three fingers, saying, amashumi mati. Occasionally *every* ten is expressed by clapping the hands.

3. The forms of salutation are as follows:—

(a.) On meeting—

|       |           |              |
|-------|-----------|--------------|
| SING. | sakubona, | we saw thee. |
| PLUR. | sanibona, | we saw you.  |

(b.) On leaving—

|       |   |                                    |
|-------|---|------------------------------------|
| SING. | sala <i>or</i> yaka kahle, <i>or</i> njalo, | remain <i>or</i> build nicely, &c. |
| PLUR. | salani <i>or</i> yakani kahle.              |                                    |

## VOCABULARY 52.

|                             |                |                               |                             |
|-----------------------------|----------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Kaza (Ama), <i>n.</i>       | Cold weather.  | Kalo (U for Ulu), <i>n.</i>   | Loin.                       |
| Bili (Isi), <i>n.</i>       | Real truth.    | Dolwane (In), <i>n.</i>       | Elbow.                      |
| Bazelo (I), <i>n.</i>       | Chip of wood.  | Pimbo (Um), <i>n.</i>         | Throat.                     |
| Fusi (I), <i>n.</i>         | Fallow ground. | Pundu (Isi), <i>n.</i>        | Occiput (abl.<br>esipundu). |
| Hlanhla (In), <i>n.</i>     | Good fortune.  |                               |                             |
| Langu (I), <i>n.</i>        | Joint.         | Kakayi (U for Ulu), <i>n.</i> | Skull.                      |
| Kwapa (I), <i>n.</i>        | Armpit.        | Hlonhlo (I), <i>n.</i>        | Temple of the<br>head.      |
| Shiyi (I), <i>n.</i>        | Eyebrow.       |                               |                             |
| Kope (U for Ulu), <i>n.</i> | Eyelash.       | Hlakala (Isi), <i>n.</i>      | Wrist.                      |
| Hlati (Isi), <i>n.</i>      | Cheek.         | Qakala (I), <i>n.</i>         | Ancle.                      |
| Hlati (Um), <i>n.</i>       | Under-jaw.     | Tambo (Um), <i>n.</i>         | Vein.                       |
| Tundu (I), <i>n.</i>        | Upper jaw.     | Bilini (Um), <i>n.</i>        | Bowel.                      |
| Tumba (I), <i>n.</i>        | Boil.          | Sobi (In), <i>n.</i>          | Resemblance                 |
| Bindi (Isi), <i>n.</i>      | Liver.         | Zwane (U), <i>n.</i>          | Toe.                        |

## EXERCISE 60.

All three men must come to me. A dog is growling yonder. The first book. A third letter. He has gone to the Tukela. All these women have come from the Buffalo-river. I want you two boys to go to Ladismith. The rain has terminated. With whom will you go? For whom have they gone. He speaks like a man whose mouth is full of food. We will sleep where they sleep. Do you see that locust? My heel is very painful. While in Maritzburg, we only just managed to see the great chief. Put the bread on the shelf. This tiger is tame. His neck is very long. Repair (plur.) that fence. Here are chips of wood. His eyebrows are long. Their eyelashes are white. The skull of a black man is very hard. The temple of my head is painful. His veins are very full of blood. He has broken his leg near the ankle. Do you like liver? This is fallow ground. I have a sore throat. Break this bone and take out the marrow. They are to tell him what I say. He may remain here until they arrive. They are still knocking off mealies from the cob.

Sakubona mgane, umnumuzana esekaya na? Amanga, amuko, uyo zingela. Umfuna yini? Yebo. Umfunelani? Ngiya-m funa nje. Ungu m tyela ukuba akanga gauli elizweni lami. Bonile bobabili isibili. Siya kuluma isiminya solwa. Amakaza aya si qeda lapa. Nginetumba ekwapeni. Musa uku ngi pazamisa. Lendoda iya pukuza. Muhle lomuntu. Akanasitya. Ngofika ngomsombuluko ngolwesitatu. Ukw-enzile loko ngamabomu. Kuluma ngesita. Basendawonye. Musa ukujujubeza inngane, ngokuba ungu bu-

lala isifuba usenze sibe njengesejuba, amatambo atambile wona. Kwakukona insizwa nembuzi. Ahle ngi lweqe udonga lolu. Siyakumba ngokwetu. Umiyane u ngi lumile bandhla. Ba si tumba tina. Buyela kuye bo. Sesipulukile. Wa ngi tyaya esipundu. Wa qeda ukusebenza kwake, waza wagoduka. Wa m kipa izinyo lake. Anginamandhla ukudhla isinkwa lesi si kuntile. Kwibiza izinkuku lezo. Unani umuntu lowo enyongaza lapaya? Nasi isilokazana si nambuzela emhlabeni. Izinyama zalomuti zihle impela. Ululeme. Isipikile lesi si kumukile. Ninga ninga sindiswa! Sengati nginga bona umtanami. Lendoda inomusa isibili. Asinanewadi tina. Sibonile enkulu inyoka. Mihle lemiti. Mahle lamadoda. Yisonto namuhla. Sengi jwayele ukusenga. Api amaka ami? Kalima inkomo leyo bo. Lomuntu ukwelwe isifuba uya kohlela kakulu. Nangu umkaulo welizwe lami. Kukuza loku kumnandi impela. Iqabukile intambo le. Siy-esaba lomuntu, uya jama. Jika kahle. Kapa lomfana um buyisele endhlabeni u lahlekile. Injani inkonyana yako. Ca wetu amjani. Asiyibo engi ba funayo. Isela lelo libotyiwe. Ipi indhlu yake? Imalungana nendhlu lapo si tenga kona imiti. Ngibonise onga kw-enzayo. Asi vagatye. Asiyiku lima. Sula amazinyo ako ngenfenkala u londonye ngamanzi. Si lete isifonyo salenkonyana. Angi fungile. Gingqa pantsi ilitye leli. Leyontombazana iya ganga. Upi umgibe? Angi w-azi. Lenkuku iya camusela. Bapi? Sebedhlulile. Liya duma nonyaka. Nyakenye, sa lima efusini leliya. Nanto uvemvane oluhle. Lomuntu unozagiga. Inkabi ziya hamba emzileni. Bayangaza. Umvunya uya dhla izingubo zetu. Ivuzamanzi lisemanzini. Siyakuba si sina. Ngizyakuba ngi qedile umsebenzi wami.

---

## LESSON 62.

There are two almost insuperable difficulties in the way of composing good hymns in Kafir,—the accent being on the penultimate of the *root*,—and the paucity of rhyming syllables. Dr. Colenso, in his valuable elementary grammar, says:—"The regular fall of the accent on the penultimate makes the ordinary Long, Common, and Short Metres of English Psalmody utterly unsuitable for Zulu hymns." With this remark I cannot fully concur; indeed, the learned Doctor, in the next paragraph, seems to contradict himself slightly, for when he affirms, "Missionaries *too often* compel the Natives to offend against all the laws of accentuation," he appears to allow that some Missionaries have composed hymns, which have not so offended. And that such is really the case, a single

specimen of Trochaic 8's, taken from the Wesleyan Hymn-book, will sufficiently illustrate :—

“ *Tixo ! siya ku dumisa ;  
Wena uya si vuyisa :  
Wena unotando kuti ;  
Ngoko so dumisa futi.* ”

Many persons, who understand the vernacular, will be prepared to admit, that the above lines cannot be much surpassed : no violence is done to the idiom of the language,—the accent throughout is correct,—the rhyming syllables are accented alike,—the vowels and parts following are similar in sound,—and the letters preceding the vowels are different ; at the same time, without being hypercritical, it may be affirmed, that with better materials the final syllables could be improved.

## LESSON 63.

### REMARKS ON THE LANGUAGE.

When the general principles of a language have been thoroughly mastered, it is not only easily remembered, but the subsequent study is comparatively pleasant.

To the reader who makes a cursory and consequently superficial examination, the Kafir language, like the Hebrew, presents many obstacles in the way of its acquisition ; but with six months' close application on the part of the student, and a judicious selection on the part of the instructor, all difficulties vanish speedily.

A comparison of the columns given in the appendix will shew, that beneath a great diversity and redundancy of forms, branching out in numerous ramifications, there is a unity and general similarity ; and that the changes and additions which cause the dissimilarity are few and simple.

1. Compare, for example, the prefixes of the Simple Present tense, Indicative mood, and you will at once assent to the following observations :—

(a.) In many instances the *initial* letter and the *euphonic* letter are identical.

(b.) *Eight* of the classes form the *possessive* of *proper* names by simply adding *ka*.

(c.) Again, the prefixes of the above tense are much like the inflexions of the nouns. In *five* classes, the former are obtained

by eliding the *last* letter (or letters) of the latter, and in the remaining seven by cutting off the *first* letter. (The 3 C. plur. is sometimes shortened both ways.)

2. Now, compare table 1 with table 4.

(a.) The prefixes of the verb and nom. case of the pronoun are *exactly* alike.

(b.) In ten classes (w being dropped), the possessive case of the pronouns is formed by placing *a* before and *o* after the euphonic letter.

(c.) And the emphatic form of the pronoun, nom. and accus., is formed by *affixing* to the euphonic letter the root of the verb ukwona, to do wrong.

(d.) Reject the *ka* of the possessive form of proper names, and, in a majority of classes, the result will be—the accusative case of the pronouns.

3. If you examine table 1 in connection with table 5, the similarity of which we have spoken will further appear.

(a.) Change the initial letter of the verbal prefix as follows:—*u* into *o* and *i* into *e*, then place *l* before it (*m* or *n* must be rejected), and you will have the Demonstrative pronoun *this*.

(b.) Now, cut off the *l*, and the possessive form of the Relative pronoun (table 8) will be obtained. You will also notice that in most classes *this* form is used for uniting adjectives to nouns.

4. Once more, look at the First-future-progressive and the Second-future tenses, and see what a very trifling alteration changes the positive into the negative form—for the most part *a* is prefixed and *ya* turned into *yi*.

It is not my intention to pursue these resemblances any farther, as it would deprive the reader of the pleasure naturally arising from such discoveries. My object is simply to demonstrate.

---

## LESSON 64.

The exercise is for correction:—

Babakona. Woza yapa. Um bonile na? Angibona ngasebenze. Aboze asebenze. Tula nina. Siya kufika ekutyonani. Indhllela ulungile na? Aka hambe ulanda umbila abuya. Hlakula intsimu. Isitya wapukile. Bengingako izolo. Kutangi ngiyaku fika. Gezani mfana lengubo. Umuntu lo ulimale. Asanamandhla ukwenza loko. Ipi izinkomo zami? Tyaye lapa. Bayikuluma. Sula isihlalo lolu. Muhle lenkabi. Buya

ekaya. Sipiinja yam? Angimaziinja yako. Indhlu senkosi. Abantu kwomhlaba. Ukudhla kwaya baba. Kwalyne ilizwe. Umfula amnyama. Ihashi enkulu. Izinnwadi okuningi. Isela lasibanjwa. Sibotyiwe. Amadada ahle. Sengati singe tanda. Ninge puma. Senga nakusenga. Umfana otandiwayo. Abantu amhlope. Ngibuhlungu esisweni. Ngibuhlungu ekandeni. Wangityaya esipundwini. Basekayeni. Endhlwini. Amasimini. Emasimwini. Sikifile lapa enyakenye. Angi yi tandi isikwa setu. Lombila umbi. Uyafanela ukwenza loko. Igoda lesi siqinile. Isikumba laso sinomswendo amuhle. Ubambo wami utyayekile. Ilala endawani sako. Ipi imali yami? Isemlomeni wami. Pemba umlilo, ilanga lisepumile. Asisa funa ukuya kona. Sika utyani wokufuleka. Leta utyani lwami. Tata iungane uvagatye naye. Womisa izingubo. Panyeka izingubo entambeni. Uqedile lumsebenzi yini? Ukukanya belanga. Abadade betu. Abayise babo. Igamo ka-Yise wako ngubani? Amahashi oumuntu. Uya bizwa. Ngi m kipile amazinyo abo. Lomfana unamandhla pezu kunaye lowo.

The Kafir vernacular is not very difficult to surmount. To this observation I may add, that a full examination, analysis, and comparison of the appended tables will do much towards securing a philological as well as practical acquaintance with the language.

*Correct* pronunciation, and *facility* of expression, can only be obtained by reducing our knowledge to practice as soon as possible. The golden rule is,—From our books to the people. Persons about to study the language are sometimes recommended to reverse this order. But the advice is bad, and arises from a false analogy between one who has been here from his infancy, and another who came in his adult years. To say nothing of the circumlocution of such a course, those who neglect books as little better than useless, and learn from the natives, will “tefula kakulu.”

The vocabulary at the end of the book, containing more than twelve hundred words, will be found of great use. The student will not always hear every syllable pronounced as it is there written but this want of uniformity arises from tribal dialectic differences of enunciation. At one kraal you may here a man say lapa (which is correct) and at another yapa.

In order to the rapid learning of the Vocabulary, the laws of association should *doubtless* be attended. And those of my readers who care not to digest Dugald Stewart, will find some useful remarks on memory in a cheap and popular work by Mr. Stokes, Lecturer at the Royal Polytechnic Institution, &c., &c.

Begin by committing to memory a root, as *gula*, be sick, and advance from it to the causative, objective, reciprocal and reflective forms, both active and passive. Thence to the nouns. Having mastered this group of words, change the first letter of *Gula* into *T*, for *tula*, be quiet, and proceed as before.

## LESSON 65.

### DIFFERENCES OF IDIOM.

| ENGLISH.                       | KAFIR.  |
|--------------------------------|---|
| He is able to read.            | Uyakwazi ukufunda, <i>he knows it to read.</i>  |
| You must <i>not</i> do that.   | Musa ukwenza loko, <i>you must not to do that.</i>  |
| You must do that.              | Ufanele ukwenza loko, <i>you are fit to do that.</i>  |
| I have a dress.                | Nginengubo, <i>I am with a dress.</i>   |
| I want two loaves.             | Ngiya funa izinkwa zibe mbili, <i>I want loaves, let them be two.</i>                               |
| Cut with a sword.              | Sika ngesinkemba, <i>cut by means of a sword.</i>   |
| He nearly fell.                | Wapos' ukuwa, <i>he threw to fall.</i>  |
| I will strike you.             | Ngakutyaya, <i>I struck you.</i>  |
| He is come to see him.         | Ufikile ukuba ambone, <i>he is come that he may see him.</i>  |
| He speaks falsely.             | Unamanga, or uqamb'amanga, <i>he is with lies, or invents lies.</i>                                 |
| The first book.                | Innewadi yokuqala, <i>the book of the first.</i>  |
| We will return <i>to</i> them. | So buyela kubo, <i>we will return for to them.</i>  |
| You are continually working.   | Nihleze, nilibele, nihambe, or nizinge nisebenza, <i>you stay, while away time, or go, working.</i> |
| I have never done that.        | Angibonanga or angibanga ngikwenza loko, <i>I have not seen, or been doing that.</i>                |
| He is merciful.                | Unomusa, <i>he is with mercy.</i>   |
| I will be there in a moment.   | Sengifikile, <i>now I have come.</i>  |
| Wait a minute.                 | Yenza kahle, <i>act gently.</i>   |
| It is worthless.               | Asiluto lwaluto, <i>it is not a thing of a thing.</i>   |

| ENGLISH.   | KAFIR.  |
|--|---|
| A black horse.   | Ihashi elimnyama, a horse which is black.                             |
| That's of no consequence.                              | Akunacala, that has no fault.   |
| Where are you settled ?                                | Wake pi ? Where have you built ?                                      |
| Thou art greater than he.                              | Umkulu pezu kwake, or kunaye, thou art great above, or to with him.   |
| Neither progressing, nor retrogressing.                | Akunjani.   |
| The sun is far from the earth.                         | Ilanga likude nomhlaba, the sun is far with the earth.                |
| Go quickly (on foot).                                  | Tata izinyawo, take feet.   |
| I have a headache, or a pain in the chest.             | Ngikwelwe ikanda, or isifuba, I am climbed by the head, or the chest. |
| They have not yet arrived.                             | Abakafiki, they do not yet arrive.                                    |
| There is not <i>much</i> snuff.                        | Aluko, there is <i>none</i> .   |
| The man is <i>very</i> ill.                            | Indoda ifile, the man is dead.  |
| I shall be killed.                                     | Ngafa, I died.  |
| What is the price of this blanket ?                    | Lengubo idhlani ? what does this blanket eat ?                        |
| There is a scarcity of food.                           | Irdhlala iyasiqeda, a famine is finishing us.                         |
| A great many of his cows are sick.                     | Iziukomo zake zonke ziya gula, all his cows are sick.                 |
| They talk continually.                                 | Baponsa umlomo pezulu, they throw the mouth upward.                   |
| To be contrary to all reasonable expectation.          | Ukubuka emanzini, to look into the water.                             |
| The white man gives us too little for our mealies, &c. | Umlungu nyasidhla, the white man eats us.                             |
| The load is heavy, sir.                                | Ngapukile nkosi, I am broken, sir.                                    |
| He is a stranger.                                      | Ungumuntu wasemizini, he is a person of the kraals.                   |
| We do declare.   | Siya qinisa, we make firm.  |
| The last month.  | Innyanga efileyo, the moon which is dead.                             |
| What has happened ?                                    | Kwenze njani, How has it done !                                       |
| They have lost the case.                               | Icala libadhlile, the case has eaten them.                            |

## LESSON 66.

1. To express "usually," "generally," *kolisa* is used.

*Example.*

lowomfazi ukolisile ukuhlabelela ekuseni, that woman usually sings  
early in the morning.

2. "As soon as" is construed by *qede*.

*Example.*

bafike qede abantwana, watyaya insimbi umfundisi, ba ngena esikoleni,  
as soon as the children arrived, the master rang the bell, and they  
went to school.

3. *Sale* or *sala* sometimes expresses *sequence* of time.

*Examples.*

ba sale, babaleka, then, they ran away.  
sabasa ke umlilo, asale afika ama Swazi, we kindled a fire, and then  
some Swazies arrived.  
ngisale ngiyeke, I must now leave off.

4. *Belu*, an expletive emphasizing an expression, is, in some connections, equivalent to "presently." *Nce* has a similar meaning.

*Examples.*

siyaku fika belu nkosi, we shall arrive presently, sir.  
unce uye ukulumane nabo, go presently and talk with them.  
babe-nce bati asi hlanze izingubo, they said, presently, let us wash  
the clothes.

5. *Ponsa*, *citya*, *funa*, *zingela*, *tanda*, express, to be on the point of doing anything, either *accidentally* or *purposely*.

*(a) Accidentally—**Examples.*

ngiponse ukutyelela, I was on the point of slipping.  
ngicitye ukuminza, ngemuke nomfula; lensizwa, kanti yangi sindisa,  
I was on the point of drowning, and going down with the stream;  
but this young man saved me.

*(b) Purposely—*

ngifune ukuminza, I meant to be drowned.  
uzingel' ukuwela emgodini lomuntu, this person intends to fall into  
the hole.  
utand' ukugula lowomtwana, that child intends to be sick.

## EXERCISE 61.

That man means to stab. We usually rise early in the morning. The dog barked, and then ran away. The children must now go home. The young men will do that work presently. I was on the point of treading on a snake. These men intend to strike me. As soon as they saw the wild cat, they shot it with a gun. The soldier generally passes in the evening. We must now milk the cows. The dark clouds will presently pass away. The young women generally go out for exercise.

## LESSON 67.

1. The repetition of an action (see Lesson 37) is expressed by *pinda, buya*.

*Examples.*

|                          |  |
|--------------------------|--|
| apinde waya kona ukwaka, | he went there again to build.                    |
| sopinda siye kona,       | we will go there again.                          |
| sapinda salima,          | we ploughed again.                               |
| wabuya wakuluma u Tyaka, | Chaka spoke again.                               |
| kwabuya kwalinywa,       | they ploughed again, <i>i.e.</i> it was ploughed |

2. An *action long continued*, or something done *long ago*, is rendered by *kade*.

*Examples.*

|                                    |                                      |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| kade si yi funele lembuzi,         | we have long been seeking this goat. |
| kade emuka,                        | he went away long ago.               |
| kade utyilo umlungu, "hamba wena," | a long time, the white man           |
|                                    | has said, "go."                      |
| kade si zi funa izinkomo,          | we have been long seeking the cows.  |

## EXERCISE 62.

We have been long about this work. Why have you stayed so long? Tell again that story you narrated long ago. Long ago that missionary died. You must not do so again. They went away again. We will sing the hut-song again. The young women will be on their way again. They had gone home again. Chaka called again with a loud voice.

Buya uhlangane naye. Sibuye sagoduka. Babuya babutwa. Siyaku pinda siye kona. Wa pinda wemuka. Umtyele yena apinde aye ukuka futi emfuleni. Kade, si ni funa. Kade bengi ba kataza. Kade ungibiza.

Lomfazi ukolisile kakulu ukuzala amawele. Ba kolisile ukusenga ngesikati lesi. Bafika qede, kutyayiwe insimbi. Izaku puma qede inyoka ilumeinja. Sicitye ukuwa emfuleni. Aubonanga yini? Leyonsizwa itand' uku ngi limaza. Si sale, si wa bulale amalola onke. Basale beqa.

## LESSON 68.

1. *Anduma, anduba, andukuba, andume*, are used to express "and after," "and then."

*Example.*

ake siye lapo uye kona izolo yena; anduba (or andume, &c.) si buyele ekaya, please let us go where he went yesterday, and then return home.

2. To "contrive," "scheme," "get to do," may, in certain connections, be rendered by *fika* or *fike*.

*Examples.*

umlungu, ukwaka kwake indhlu, afike abangqe imijanjato, the white man, in his house building, contrived to join together rafters. ngafika ngadhla nabo kusihlwa, I schemed to eat with them in the evening. into efike isahlule sonke, a thing which got the mastery of us all.

## EXERCISE 63.

Make haste, and contrive to do that. Enter that hut, and scheme to get the old man to come out with you. Will you contrive to finish that work for me? I contrived to hold the boat until they arrived. Be so good as to go to Maritzburg, and then return here. Please let me go to Durban, and then to Zululand.

Ake bandhla siye kiti, anduba si buyele lapa. Aba hambele e Tekwini; andume babuye ba qale ukulima. Isilo esifike sibahlule bonke. Ba fika-ke izolo, bati bafuna umsebenzi. Asi hambe siye em Geni; anduba siye kubo.

## LESSON 69.

### DAY AND NIGHT.

Kusasa, in the morning, this morning. Ekutyoneni kwelanga, at sunset.  
ing.

Ekuseni, early in the morning. Kuhlwile, it is dusk.

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Ekukaleni kwezinkuku, very early,<br>&c. | Kusihlwa, in the evening, this even-<br>ing.        |
| Ekupumeni kwelanga, at sunrise.          | Liswelele (li <i>for</i> izulu), it is twilight.    |
| Uvivi (ulu), dawn.                       | Ubusuku, night.                                     |
| Ikwel' immini, forenoon (it is).         | Ebusuku, in the night.                              |
| Immini (in), noon.                       | Ubusuku obukulu, midnight.                          |
| Intambama (in), afternoon.               | Pakati kwobusuku obukulu, at<br>midnight.           |
| Ilanga lipumile, the sun has risen.      | Ilanga lityonile, the sun has set.                  |
| Usuku (u <i>for</i> ulu), day.           | Kusihlwana, towards evening.                        |
| Ilanga (i), day.                         | Ubusuku bumnyama, the night is<br>dark.             |
| Selidala, the sun is now up.             | Ubusuku bumnyama kakulu, the<br>night is very dark. |

## EXERCISE 64.

The cattle go out early in the morning. The cows are milked in the morning. We shall begin work very early in the morning. The men will start at sunrise. Let us have one day for ploughing. The sun is now up, let them go. I may arrive in the afternoon. We shall arrive there at dawn. It is forenoon, and you have done nothing. The night is very dark. Bring a candle, it is dusk. They returned home at midnight.

Angi tandi ukuhamba ebusuku. Nginga fika Kusihlwana. Seli swelele, asingene endhlini. Ekutyoneni kwelanga, kumakaza. Seli tyonile, yekani imisebenzi yenu. Yafika innyanga yokwelapa pakati kwobusuku obukulu. Ubusuku bumnyama asinamandhla ukubona. Nga zi limaza ebusuku.

## LESSON 70.

## DAYS OF THE WEEK.

|                  |            |                           |
|------------------|------------|---------------------------|
| Isono,           | Sunday.    | Usuku lwesihlanu, Friday. |
| Usuku lwokuqala, | Monday.    | Umqibelo, Saturday.       |
| Usuku lwesibili, | Tuesday.   | Ngomqibelo, on Saturday.  |
| Usuku lwesitatu, | Wednesday. | Ngolwesibili, on Tuesday. |
| Usuku lwesine,   | Thursday.  | Ngolwesine, on Thursday.  |

Ngamalanga ngamalanga, daily.

Namuhla, to-day.

Izolo, yesterday.

Kutangi, day before yesterday.

Ngomuso, to-morrow.

Ngomhlo munye, day after to-morrow.

### EXERCISE 65.

We shall come on Sunday. They may come on Monday. They will not go on Tuesday. We will help you on Thursday. The woman died yesterday. The children play daily. It rained the day before yesterday. He will kill the cow the day after to-morrow. We cannot begin to-day. They will dance to-morrow. Wash the clothes on Monday. Cut down (*plur.*) the trees on Wednesday.

Sengati singa ba bona Ngomgqibelo. Wamtyaya umfazi ngesibamu nge sonto. Ngofika Ngolwesibili. Asiyiku fika Ngolwesi tatu. Inkabi ifile. Ite nini? Kutangi.

## LESSON 71.

### MONTHS OF THE YEAR.

1. Izinnyanga zomnyaka, or months of the year, is an *approximation* to our own.

|             |           |              |            |
|-------------|-----------|--------------|------------|
| Umasingana, | January.  | Umaquba,     | July.      |
| Ungcela,    | February. | Umcwaba,     | August.    |
| Undasa,     | March.    | Umpandu,     | September. |
| Umbaso,     | April.    | Umfumfu,     | October.   |
| Unhlaba,    | May.      | Ulwesi,      | November.  |
| Umdlungulu, | June.     | Uzibandhela, | December.  |

2.

### THE SEASONS.

|  |                  |                |
|--|------------------|----------------|
| Isilimela, spring.                                 | Ikwindhla,       | autumn.        |
| Ihlobo ( <i>i for ili</i> ), summer.               | Ubusika,         | winter.        |
| Ekutwaseni kwelohlobo, at the beginning of summer. | Ubusika obukulu, | mid-winter.    |
| Ehlobo, in the summer.                             | Ihlobo elikulu,  | mid-summer.    |
|  | Ebusika,         | in the winter. |

3.

### POINTS OF THE COMPASS.

|                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| Inyakato, <i>or</i> enhla, north. | Iuningizimu ( <i>in</i> ), south-west. |
| Ityisandhlu, north-west.          | Impumalanga, east.                     |
| Inzansi, south.                   | Iutyonalanga, west.                    |

## EXERCISE 66.

At the beginning of summer we must plant the trees. That land is in the east. That river is in the west. The sun rises in the east, and sets in the west. In some countries it is mid-summer in June; and in others, mid-winter. Many people like the cold in winter. I do not like the north-west wind. In England there is plenty of fog in November. In some countries it is cold in December; and in others, hot. The spring is coming. In the summer, we shall all rejoice. In the spring we sow; and, in the autumn, reap.

## LESSON 72.

## THE WEATHER.

|                               |                                       |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Izulu, sky, weather.          | Ize, zero.                            |
| Isigudumezi, sultry weather.  | Ingele, sleet.                        |
| Itipele, linamafu, cloudy „   | Isitwatwa, hoar frost.                |
| Libalele, liyatyisa, hot „    | Iqegeba, ice.                         |
| Liyana njalo, rainy „         | Liyancibilikisa, thaw.                |
| Liya kitika, snowy „          | Umoja, wind.                          |
| Limakaza, cold „              | Isipepo, gust.                        |
| Imvula, rain.                 | Isivunguvungu, gale.                  |
| Umkizo, small rain.           | Isikwityikwityi, whirlwind.           |
| Amatempukane, very fine rain. | Ukuduma, thunder.                     |
| Isipihli, heavy rain.         | Unyazi (u <i>for</i> ulu), lightning. |
| Livanamaza, mizzling rain.    | Lidikizele, distant thunder.          |
| Inkunga, mist.                | Intyongolo, cold wind.                |

## EXERCISE 67.

There is distant thunder. It is very cold. Give me some water to drink; it is very hot to-day. There is small rain. I have seen hoar frost in the garden. We saw ice on the river. The goats do not like the sleet. This sultry weather makes me ill. The wind is pleasant. The heavy rain has damaged my crops. The children are afraid of thunder. The mizzling rain will make the grass grow. Mist abounds in this country. A sudden gust of wind knocked down her little child. This cold wind hurts delicate people.

## LESSON 73.

## DIFFERENCES IN IDIOM.

(See Lesson 65.)

| ENGLISH.  | ZULU.  |
|---|--|
| This ox is very fat.                                  | Aikulupele lenkabi, this ox is not fat.  |
| The famine here is great.                             | Aiko indhlala kiti lapa, there is no famine.                                       |
| To take breath.                                       | Ukuhlaba ipika, pierce the stitch in the side.                                     |
| The timid girl has a fluttering sensation within.     | Intombazana ingenwa innyoni, a bird has entered the girl.                          |
| This man is influential, <i>i.e.</i> , of importance. | Lendoda inzina.  |
| This person is rude, or unpolished.                   | Udhlele lomuntu emkombeni wempaka, this person has eaten from a wild cat's trough. |
| The story passes telling.                             | Indaba angi yi zekanga, I have not told the story.                                 |
| Disregard the empty threat.                           | Kuza iwawa, put a stop to the barking.   |
| We took firm hold of them.                            | Satula nabo, we were quiet with them.  |
| A headstrong young man.                               | Insizwa engavntwanga, a young man who has not been mellowed.                       |
| I have had nothing to eat.                            | Ngisuti umoya, I am full of wind.  |
| Let me break my fast.                                 | Angi sule umlomo, let me wipe my mouth.  |
| They speak kitchen Kafir.                             | Baya ciciyela ulimi, they mend or patch with the tongue.                           |
| You are whispering.                                   | Nifakana imilomo, you are putting mouths together.                                 |
| He is silenced, as in argument.                       | Ufele pakati, he is dead within.   |
| We made a good bargain.                               | Sa zi fikisela, we caused ourselves to arrive at.                                  |
| They have hushed up the disagreeable matter.          | Bafulele icilo, they have thatched, &c.  |

| ENGLISH.  | ZULU.   |
|---|---|
| He is skilful.  | Unengalo, he has an arm.                                      |
| I am just alive.  | Ngihamba nje, I am just walking.                              |
| We have been looking for him<br>with eager eyes.        | We have been looking for him<br>with red eyes.                |
| The symptoms of disease.                                | Izinhlamvu zokufa, chief points, &c.                          |
| He is prosperous.                                       | Uya dlila ubomi, he eats life.                                |
| It strikes the fancy.                                   | Kuhlaba inhliziyo, it pierces the<br>heart.                   |
| To deliver out of a scrape, &c.                         | Ukuhlengelela ikanda, he redeemed<br>the head.                |
| Give me a pinch of snuff.                               | Ngisize emakaleni, help me in the<br>nostrils.                |
| They incur blame.                                       | Baya twala icala, they carry, &c.                             |
| To travel by night.                                     | Ukudabula ubusuku, to rend, &c.                               |
| He has failed in the lawsuit.                           | Icala limdhlile, the lawsuit has<br>eaten him.                |
| He gave them the benefit of him.                        | Wa m tela pezu kwabo, he poured<br>him upon them.             |
| They are liars.   | Banetama, they have a mouthful.                               |
| To back out from some unpleasant<br>business or matter. | Uku zi cwecwa, to pare one's-self<br>away.                    |
| They speak pure Zulu.                                   | Baya qokota ulimi, they twine the<br>tongue.                  |
| We have a lot of work to-day.                           | Sa hlangana nempi yaluka, we met<br>an army going out to war. |
| They chased the ox.                                     | Inkabi bagijima nayo, they ran<br>with the ox.                |
| They are striking a bargain.                            | Ba kuluma intengo, they are talk-<br>ing the bargain.         |
| To give one's-self out to be, &c.                       | Uku zi tyaya, to strike himself.                              |
| To knock off at a stroke.                               | Uku tyaya kanye, to strike once.                              |
| To be utterly amazed.                                   | Ukufa ngokumangala, to die of<br>wonder.                      |
| To destroy the inclination.                             | Ukubulala inhliziyo, to kill the<br>heart.                    |

## EXERCISE 68.

*Idiomatic Verbs.*

Zi *zinge* izinkomo ziboxa udaka. *Uke* waya nje ukuya 'ku hlola emafolweni na? Ya *simza* insizwa ya yi tata nje impuzana. Amafuta a *sand'* ukudhliwa yinja. Ngi *hlezi* ngetemba. Inkabi yanele ukunikina. Wa *sala*, wa vuka. Wa twala inngane wabuya, wangena nayo endhlini. Wa pinda wapuma. Sesi *damene* sinikwa izinkomo. Ku *sale*, kungene. Wanele ukupuza. Ngihambe ngizwa ngendaba.

*uhle* ezihambazela nje,  
*ulohle* wangi bamba,  
 wa *hla* wati engitengela ngogwai,  
*ake* ulande sizwe,  
 ngi *hlezi* ngipunduliswe uwena,  
*mane* uhambe mgane,  
 soya lapo, anduba sibuye,  
 wanele ukusenga,  
*ahle* ngiseqe lesisifufuyana,  
*ba*lamene be baleka,  
 asala ama-Zulu afike ekuseni,

ngi *ke* ngimbone ekwela ihashi lake,

ngi *hambe*, ngizwa ngendaba,

he is actually walking by himself.  
 you are continually holding me.  
 he actually sold snuff to me.  
 please tell the story at full length.  
 I am continually misled by you.  
 do go friend.  
 we will go there and then return.  
 he has done nothing but milk.  
 I could leap this brooklet.  
 they are continually running away.  
 afterwards the Zulus came early in  
 the morning.

I just caught sight of him riding  
 his horse.

I have continually heard by report.

The woman is continually sweeping her house. He has done nothing to-day but dig in the garden. He actually bought my old horse. Please tell the story about the saddle at full length. Do go my child. Will you go there, and then return? We could leap that wall. I just saw the bird flying. Watch the cattle lest they enter the gardens. We said to him, eat, lest you have no strength. We weeded again. You must not (sing.) do that again. You must (plur.) do that again. The man struck the woman again. You must go quickly. They came again to buy pigs. Please buy a calf for me. The lazy man is actually working.

## LESSON 74.

1. Dhlula is used to express *exceed*, surpass, excel.

*Examples.*

lendoda iya si dhlula ngokwazi, this man excels us in knowledge.  
 insizwa idhlula umutwana ngamandhla, a young man surpasses a child  
 in strength.  
 umponde uya dhlula ushelene, a pound exceeds a shilling.

2. To express *so that*, *in order that*, kandukuma is occasionally used ;  
 but *ukuze* is the more popular form.

*Examples.*

tyaya kakulu ngesando isipikili, kandukuma (or ukuze) siqine, hammer  
 the nail well in that it may be firm.  
 biyani ngamandhla, kandukuma nizahlule izinkomo, fence (plur.)  
 strongly in order that you may stop the cattle.

*Kandu* or *kand'* is, in the above connection, also used as:—  
 nawe unga tenga inkomo, kand' ube nayo, you also may buy the cow,  
 in order that you may have it.

For further information, see Grout's Zulu Grammar, page 364.

## LESSON 75.

## COLLOQUIAL CONTRACTIONS.

1. The letter *k* is sometimes omitted.

siyausenga (full form siyakusenga), we shall milk.

2. The *u* is also omitted.

|                                       |                         |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| baye kuzingela ( <i>ukuzingela</i> ), | they have gone to hunt. |
| asiye kugeza ( <i>ukugeza</i> ),      | let us go to bathe.     |

3. The letter *e* is frequently elided.

|                                     |                         |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| ak' nbize uMakanyane,               | please call uMakanyane. |
| uhl' utule (full form, uhle utule), | just be quiet.          |

4. So is *a*.

|                   |                    |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| cim' amehlo wena, | shut your eyes.    |
| ngen' ubone,      | come in and look.  |
| bek' inngele,     | look at the sleet. |

|  |                                |
|--|--------------------------------|
| hamb' utyaye,                            | go and strike.                 |
| ungambon' ehamba,                        | you may see him walking.       |
| angi bambanga' lizwi (full form ilizwi), | I have not got hold of a word. |

5. The letter *m* is elided.

|                        |                  |
|------------------------|------------------|
| angi kete (for mangi), | let me select.   |
| asi ye (masi) kona,    | let us go there. |

6. So is *i*.

|                                   |                                  |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| ut' (uti) ehlezi ekala lomntwana, | this child is constantly crying. |
| it' insele izakumina,             | the honey-bear is coming to me.  |

## LESSON 76.

### PLANETS AND CONSTELLATIONS

The astronomical knowledge of the Zulus is very limited. Most of the following are translations of the Latin names. To ministers and others desirous of teaching astronomy they will be useful.

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Inkanyezi (in), star.                       | Injankulu, Canis Major.                |
| Inkanyezi erudayo, a shooting star.         | Injancane, Canis Minor.                |
| Ucwazibe, evening star.                     | Isikepe sika Ago, The Ship Argo.       |
| Isicelankobe, „ „                           | Inyoka, Hydra.                         |
| Ubucwaziewazi bezulu, brightness of heaven. | Isitya, Crater.                        |
| Umtala, the milky way.                      | Impisi, Lupus.                         |
| Isilimela (isi), the Pleiades.              | Itafula, The Altar.                    |
| Indosa (in), the planet Jupiter.            | Umqelewasenzansi, The Southern Crown.  |
| Umkati, the firmament.                      | Inhlanzi yasenzansi, Piscis Australis. |
| Ilanga, Sun.                                | Ijuba lika Noa, Columba Noarchi.       |
| Innyanga, Moon.                             | Isipambano sasenzansi, Crux Australis. |
| Umkomo, Cetus.                              |  |
| Ipisi (i), Orion.                           |  |
| Umvundhla, Lepus.                           | Upondolunye (ulu), Monoceros.          |

It has not been deemed necessary to include the northern constellations

## LESSON 77.

1. Kazi sometimes denotes the feminine; and in some instances *dislike* or *contempt*. In other connections it intensifies, or magnifies.

*Examples.*

inkosi, chief, king; inkosikazi, female chief, queen.

umlungu, white man; umlungukazi, white woman.

ibashi, horse; ibashikazi, mare.

bonani leyondodakazi eyivila njalonjalo, look at that man who is continually idle.

inkomokazi enkulukazi, a very large cow.

2. It often signifies *superiority, excellence, beauty*.

umamekazi, my excellent mother.

nyihlokazi, your renowned father.

3. Sometimes the final syllable of the noun is elided, and kazi contracted to azi.

itole, calf.

itokazi, heifer.

indodana, son.

indodakazi, daughter.

## EXERCISE 69.

Bring me a hen. Go to the forest and fell a tree. Cut down a fine tree. We wish to purchase a very large house. This is a fine tree. That is a large forest. This ewe is sick. Can you sell me a wether. Look at that fine child. A man cannot carry that very large stone. Your daughter is a fine, tall girl. We never saw such a huge town. I want to sell my very fine bitch. They have found a very fine dog.

Angi bonanga ngibona umfazikazi omkulukazi. Ngiya funa intombikazi yako endekazi ukuba iye endhlini yetu ipate inngane. Inkosikazi yake inhle impela. Li fike kanjani ityekazi leli kulendawo? Nangu lo' muntukazi oyivula futi. Inkomazi yetu inenkonyana ezelwe kutangi ekuseni. Ngi bone izolo inhlauzi enkulukazi elwandhile e Tekwini; angazi uma iyini unkomokazi nje.

## LESSON 78.

1. By the repetition of syllables a noun is intensified.

si hlezi lapa iminyakanyaka, we have lived here many years.

unkulunkulu, the great great, or very great one. (This word is used of the Supreme Being.)

ukuvunguza, to blow hard. isivunguvunga, gale of wind.

ukuti kwityi, to be in full operation. isikwityikwityi, whirlwind.

siludwendwe, we are a file of people.

bandwendwedwendwe, they are a prodigious troop.

In the above examples the radical portion of the word is doubled.

2. A noun or an adjective is diminished by affixing *ana*, or *anyana*, together with such euphonic changes as the language requires.

(a.) The terminations *a*, *e*, *i*, are generally changed into *ana*, &c.

|                 |                                   |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------|
| umfula, river ; | umfulana, little river.           |
| umsele, ditch ; | umselana, little or narrow ditch. |
| imvu, sheep ;   | imvana, lamb.                     |
| imbuzi, goat ;  | imbuzana, small goat.             |

(b.) Nouns ending in *o* or *u* are changed into *wana*.

|                  |                          |
|------------------|--------------------------|
| into, a thing ;  | intwana, a little thing. |
| umuntu, person ; | umtwana, child.          |

Sometimes the *w* is for the euphony omitted.

umfo, a person ;    umfana (*not* umfwana), boy.

(c.) When the word terminates in *na*, *ne*, or *ni*, it is changed into *nyana*: so are nouns ending in *mo*, as inkoyana from inkomo.

|                                 |                            |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| isilwana, a small wild animal ; | isilwanyana, insect.       |
| imfene, baboon ;                | imfemyana, a small baboon. |
| inyoni, bird ;                  | inyonyana, a little bird.  |

(d.) In the diminutive *la* or *le* is often changed to *yana*, as umfuyana, and ireyana from irele, file of men. This is peculiar to one or two tribes, and need not be *especially* remembered.

(e.) The final syllables *ba* and *bo* are changed into *tyana* or *tyane*.

|                    |                           |
|--------------------|---------------------------|
| intaba, mountain ; | intatyana, small hill.    |
| ingubo, blanket ;  | ingutyana, small blanket. |

(f.) The termination *mbo* is changed into *njana*.

intambo, cord ;    intanjana, small cord.

(g.) And the syllable *pe* or *pi* is changed into *tyana*.

mhlope, white ;    mhlotyana, small and white.

The above diminutives enrich the language considerably ; the changes should therefore be carefully studied.

In the following exercise, the student should be able to explain each termination. There are a few exceptions to the above rules. The diminutive of *iqanda*, egg, is *iqanjana*.

#### EXERCISE 70.

Intanyana. Umfana. Imbuzana. Imvana. Umfulana. Intwana.  
Imfenyana. Inyonyana. Intatyana. Intanjana. Indukwana. Uku-

dhlana. Isilwana. Umntwana. Isivinjana. Iqunjana. Umselana. Imfenyana. Ingutyana.

Write the diminutive of the following words:—

Isilo. Imbuzi. Imvu. Inkomo. Inkabi. Impande. Imfene. Inyoni. Kusihlwa. Amazwi. Induku. Intaba. Ulimi. Indoda. Umfo. Iduli. Isidwaba. Kufupi. Ugedhle. Impumulo.

## LESSON 79.

### ADVERBS.

(Illustrations as to the use of, see Table 11.)

#### (a.) Time:—

|                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| namhlanje, ngiyaku cupa izindhlazi, | I shall, to day, set a trap for small birds with long tail feathers. |
| lendoda idakiwe lapa izolo,         | this man was drunk here yesterday.                                   |
| ngizaku ngena manje,                | I shall enter now.   |
| nginga fika ngomuso,                | I may arrive to-morrow.  |
| asi yiku hina nonyaka,              | we shall not cultivate the land this year.                           |
| sidhla amalanga onke,               | we eat every day.  |
| woza lapa masinyane,                | come here immediately.   |
| aba qale ngomhlomunye,              | let them begin the day after to-morrow.                              |
| asi ngene endhlini sokuswelele,     | let us enter the house, it is now dark.                              |
| ngingayaka indhlu ebusika obukulu,  | I may build a house about mid-winter.                                |

#### (b.) Place:—

|  |   |
|--|---|
| kungapandhle kwotango,                 | it is outside the fence.                          |
| sa catya kona pakati,                  | we hid ourselves inside.                          |
| umuzi wakiti umalungana pela nowakubo, | our kraal is, you see, opposite to theirs.        |
| hambani niye ekutinitini,              | go to So-and-so, i.e. what do you call the place. |
| ngapetsheya nanganeno,                 | on the other side and on this.                    |

ngilhambe ngapansi,  
yati inyoka ingi lume konalapa,  
ubuhlungu bukonalapa eluhlango-  
tini,

(c.) Manner :—

dabulisa kahle,  
abakubo bampata kabi,  
wavela owakwabo ngempela,

hamba ngamandhla, musa ukwenza  
umcatu,  
ukwenzile loku ngamabomu wena,  
tatazinyawo ngokuhamba kwako  
mfana,

(d.) Degree :—

iya loba kahle intombi yako,  
igama lako li dumile kangaka,  
ni fanele ukuvagatya kakulu,

(e.) Number :—

ngi tyilo kabili,  
ani namandhla ukutyo kasitupa,

I walked underneath.  
the snake bit me just here.  
the pain is just here in the side.

tear carefully.  
their people treated him badly.  
there came forth one of his own  
entirely.

do not walk slowly, but quickly.

you have wilfully done this.  
go quickly boy.

your girl writes nicely.  
how glorious is thy name.  
you must take plenty of exercise.

I have said so twice.  
you cannot assert it six times.

### EXERCISE 71.

Zavuka *gede* izinkomo zakiti. Si tyele uma wazi into wena. Um-  
gobo uvutiwe *kahle*. Gezisa lapa, *lokunaku* kuse manzi nje lapa.  
Ngatyo njalo mina. Uma li nile, siyo lima sonke. *Ikona* inyoka kule-  
sisiduli, ngibonile ulwebu *kungatiti* olwemfezi yebuzile. Ngityo nakolu-  
kunje. *Umakazi* ngizakuba yinina? Beka *obala pela*, sizwe. Insimba  
ifika *masingane*. Ngite *kungati* isitya lesi esika ma. Uyinkosi impela  
wena. Ake, nisuke pela. Kodwa bam kalela kakulu. Nembala wazi  
fumana izintombi. Wenzani *ngaloko* na? Kumbe, nginga ku tyela.  
*Konje*, nawe uyakolwa ukuba nyaku fa qede na? *Kepa* mina ngange-  
saba. Songatiti nya hlanya nje. *Qeduba*, bazo puma bonke. *Futi*  
siya zondana *kakulu* nezinyoka. Ku buduleke *kangaka nje*. Katisimbe  
abulawe. Katisimbe adhlwe. Bopela pezulu. Luya vuza lolukamba  
lunofa esiqwini. Ibantyi lami li tungwe *ngesinwe*. Kusemyango. *Ku-*  
*sobala*. Natyo kunene. Hambelani mala pambili. Eloku kwadabuka  
izintaba. Ngala isibili. Lendoda ikudebuduze ife. Utyo *nyakona*.  
Bauka malungana nomuzi.

## LESSON 80.

## THE ORDER OF WORDS COMPOSING A PERIOD.

As a rule, words are arranged according to their relative weight and value.

1. The noun usually precedes its adjective used as an epithet; since an object is in the mind before it can be qualified.

*Examples.*

|                     |                             |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| umutu omubi,        | a bad person.               |
| indhlu enkulu,      | a large house.              |
| isitya esihle,      | a beautiful cup, bowl, &c.  |
| umfazi omude,       | a tall woman.               |
| inhliziy o ebunene, | a gracious (or kind) heart. |
| ihashi elinejubane, | a swift horse.              |

2. When the adjective is considered the *more important* notion, it sometimes stands first, especially when it is the *predicate*. (See Lesson 55, 2.)

*Examples.*

muhle lombodiya, this buckskin petticoat is beautiful.  
 inamandhla leyonkomo, that cow is strong.  
 wo! imbi leyonkabi ka Sicongwana, oh! that ox of Sicongwana is bad.  
 mubi lomuntu, this person is wicked.  
 alukuni amatye alapa, the stones of this place are hard.  
 makulu amandhla ake, his strength is great.  
 umnandi umgobo wosiwe, wild asparagus roasted is nice.  
 makulu amasondo alehashi, this horse's footprints are large.

3. An ordinary sentence begins with the subject followed by the predicate and objective case.

*Examples.*

|                      |                   |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| ngiya tanda ukudhla, | I like food.      |
| nina eniyiziula,     | ye who are fools. |
| ngazi bona izinyosi, | I saw some bees.  |

4. The noun usually precedes the verb.

*Examples.*

leyonja iya qeda izinto zetu, that dog is making an end of our things.  
 izinyoni sezi bungile, the birds have now flocked in small numbers.  
 abafana balibele behlaba imboma, the boys are constantly flipping the  
 small aloe leaves.  
 inja yacamusa indhlu, a dog made a hole in the hut.

5. The verb, being a weighty element of the period, sometimes precedes the subject.

*Examples.*

baya kwinea imboma abafana, the boys flip the small a'oe leaves.  
 lan gi tyaya baba i Banu, the Dutch Boer beat me, father.  
 kwaduma izulu, it thundered.  
 lana izulu lakitika, it rained and snowed.  
 wati umfundisi "woza lapa," the missionary said "come here."  
 yabuza ke yona impi, the foe enquired.  
 afika ama-Ngisi, the Englishmen arrived.  
 u si bulele u-Magaba namhlanje, Magaba has treated us badly to-day.  
 uyemuka lomuntu, this person is going away.

6. The objective case is sometimes placed before the verb.

*Examples.*

izinkomo lezi ngazifuya, I possessed these cows.  
 lomuntu tulisani, quiet this person.

7. The Accusative forms of the pronouns are inserted immediately before the root of the verb. (*See Lesson 3.*)

*Examples.*

ngi ba bonile, I have seen them.  
 amadoda a ngi tyaya, the men struck me.  
 asi ku zwa ukukuluma kwabo, we do not understand their talk.  
 ngiya m-esaba lowomuntu, I am afraid of that person.

8. The emphatic forms of pronoun (*see Table 4*) are placed after the verb, or the noun is used to give emphasis. (*See also Lesson 13.*)

imvula ya si tyaya tina.  
 nga zi kanda izimvu, I happened to light upon the sheep.  
 ba wu cityile umlilo, they have extinguished the fire.  
 bafike ba m sola u-Tusi, they came and blamed Tusi.  
 asi ba sizi bona, we do not help them, i.e. we help others, but not them.

9. The adverb usually follows the verb, but often precedes it, according to the natural construction of the sentence, or the emphasis required

*Examples.*

(a) watyo kunene, he spoke truly.  
 sebenzani kahle, work (plur.) well.

singa fika *ngorivi*, we may arrive at dawn.  
 umsebenzi *wanamuhla*, work of to-day.  
 ukwenzile loku *ngamabomu*, you have wilfully done this.  
 ufike *kutangi*, he arrived the day before yesterday.

- (1) *nant' ihashi*, here is a horse.  
*atyi bo!* uyaku buya, nonsense! you will return.  
 kungaloku anga fika, he may probably arrive.  
*nakanye*, uya shinga, *once for all*, you are acting wickedly.  
*mhla* beyi dhlayo inkabi, on the day, they ate the ox.  
*mbala* kunjalo? is it really so?

## LESSON 81.

To increase the *intensity* of the expression, a noun may be repeated with *na* or *nga*, or the *infinitive* placed after the verb.

### *Examples.*

sabona ubuka akus' nkabi na' nkabi, we saw that it was not a full-grown and proper ox.  
 tina sonke sizakufa nokufa, we shall all certainly die.  
 kwesabeka impela; nabesifazana ba quleka nokuquleka,  
 it was, without doubt, dreadful; and the females fainted.  
 ngim dele nokudela umuntu lowo, I have entirely given up that person.

## LESSON 82.

Objective verbs, and a few others, implying "giving" or "depriving of," &c., take a double accusative.

### *Examples.*

ba m hopa izandhla zake, they bound (l'm) his hands.  
 sa ba tela amanzi, we poured water on them.  
 nga m kipa izinyo, I extracted his tooth.

## EXERCISE 72.

Way' ebula inkomo isikumba. Wam limaza iliso. Bamambula izingubo. Basinika imali yetu izolo. Wabapa amahashi amabili. Nga yi pumuza intombi umtwalo. Sazi kipa amehlo izinhlozi. Izwi laizolo. Umvumbi waitangi. Wabeka ngalapaya. Ngena emfuleni lapa. Hambela pambili. Insundu lenkabi. Ibomvu lenkonyana. Angiyikufa nokufa. Sa ba zonda nokuzonda. Abantu abansunda. Babuba labobantu ukupela kwabo. Sonile sonke.

## LESSON 83.

Reciprocal Verbs (*see* Lesson 39) differ greatly from the English idiom; and the peculiar construction deserves special notice.

*Examples.*

sasitandana kakulu naye, we were very fond of each other.  
 bantanganye naye, both are of the same age.  
 sintanga nye naye, he and I are of the same age.  
 babelingana naye, they were of the same size.  
 sa hlambana naye emfuleni, we swam together in the river.  
 besi kwelene nendoda, I and another man had a tussle.  
 sapikisana naye, he and I had a contention.  
 sibekene naye, we look at each other.

## EXERCISE 73.

Sizakulahlana nalabo' bantu. Siyalandulana. Baletana enkosini. Siya lindana. Uma silinganisene nentaba. Bamemelana. Ukupambana amadolo. Bapatana. Siya pikisana inkani. Impi iqalene. Ngiyabazi abantu abatandayo abantwana babo. Ngiyabazi abanye abatandana kakulu. Baya qakuzana. Siya sinelana.

We have quarrelled. They annoy (touch up) one another. They have shouted applause one to another. We have bargained with one another. In this matter, we may approach one another. Let us draw near to one another. They will be displeased at one another. They will stand manfully for one another. Look out! we shall meet again (tyintyana nawe).

Reciprocal Verbs should be distinguished from others ending in "ana."

## LESSON 84.

## SPECIAL FORMS OF PLURAL.

The names of some insects, plants, birds, trees, also common nouns which have the force of proper ones, and a few words of foreign origin, form the singular in *u* and the plural in *o*.

*Examples.*

ufakolweni, half-a-crown ; plur. ofakolweni.  
 unohoha, baboon (imfene) ; plur. onohoha.  
 unohemu, white crane ; plur. onohemu.  
 ugwai, tobacco ; plur. ogwai.  
 ukova, banana ; plur. okova.  
 umeyane, mosquito ; plur. omeyane.  
 ujojo, long-tailed finch ; plur. ojojo.  
 umbaimbai, cannon ; plur. ombaimbai.  
 umabilwana, tree valued for its medicinal properties ;  
 plur. amabilwana.

## LESSON 85.

1. *Ila* may be rendered "actually, just so, it came to pass."

*Examples.*

uhle, upuze, uqede wena, you have actually drunk and finished off.  
 uhle, wabeka-nje, wa ngi gwaza, wadhlula, he just looked, stabbed me,  
 and went on.  
 kuhle kwati insizwa yakwetu yasukela leyonodda, it came to pass, a  
 young man of our place sprang at that man.  
 kuhle kwati, ngisa puma endhlini wangi tyaya, so it was, that while  
 leaving the hut, he struck me.

2. *Sa* (perfect *se*) has a similar signification.

lasa laduma izulu, it came to pass, the heavens thundered.  
 senifikile, so you have arrived.  
 sezifikile izinkomo, the cattle have actually arrived.  
 wasa wafundisa umlungu abantwana esikoleni, and so the white man  
 taught the children in the school.  
 basa bafika ekupumeni kwelanga, it came to pass they arrived at  
 sunrise.

## EXERCISE 74.

## SELECTIONS FOR TRANSLATION.

These are intended for the more advanced student desirous of testing his knowledge of the language.

## PART I.

Sihlangene nensizwa yakwa' Jobe ; yabuya yati, "Upi Umpendulo na?" Sati, "Usekaya."

Indabuko yabo loko, abantu abamyama yokuzeka abafazi abaningi, nokubonga amadhozi, nokubula ezinnyangeni.

Imbi indabuko leyo, imbi impela.

Asikwazi tina loko okutyoyo wena : ulakiwe.

Ngimdala bandhla miningi iminyaka yami.

Ngikolisekile madoda. Inkuku yami yazalela lapaya ezinnyandeni, ngaya kusasa ngafumana amagobolondo odwa ; angazi uma adhliwe innyoka, noma edhliweinja na?

Izinkabi bandhla zanele ukumikina ikanda.

Ingqola yofika nini? Donsani pambili zinkabi ; niqinise, asivumi ukuba nenze ngobuvila nje.

Nilibele nganina? Ai! asilibalanga, sityetyile tina.

Musani madoda niya qamb' amanga.

Isibambezelo sasikona-ke. Sapambuka, saya lapaya em Sunduze ; ngokuba sizwe ibandhla, lixokozela, kona.

Beka mfana ka sibindi ! mina angibonanga ngenziwa loku okwenzayo kumina.

Imiti yehlali leli iyadepa impela. Uma utanda imiti emihle, leta imbazo yako uyi gaule yona.

Uma ufuna ukwaka indhlu enjengeyabelungu ungayi nquma kabili imiti yalelihlati.

Ngiyamazisa lomuntu umran wake nyesabeka ; ngim raukele. Wafa umtanake, wakala kakulu ; inhliziyoyake iyakudabuka.

Ngidube nje ke, ngidube ngawe Magaba.

Angi tandi lomfazi uyigagu yena.

Ai lentombazana! iyagalazela abantu bonke isauza njalo njalo ngolaka.

Banamandhla labobantu ; isibindi sabo sibi.

Musani ukutyaya umta ka Gombela ngiyam raukela, aniboni yini izixatu emhlana na?

Lipi ityungu lami? Angilazi.

Lipi ityungu lomnumzana na? Lilapaya pezulu, esipanyisweni. Lomuntu kanti, nembala, madoda; usi tyayanisa ngamankanda.

Kade ngisemfuleni lapa nabantu bevela em-Gungundhlovu bebabili.

Ngihlangene kusasa nabantu abatatu bevela em Gungundhlovwana. Ngati mina niyangapi na? Bati, "Sifuna ihashi lenkosi." Ngati, "elayipi inkosi na?" Bati, "elika Somseu." Ngati, "linjani na?" Bati, "linsundu, linesilonda lapa; libaleke ebusuku." Ngati mina "angili bonanga, alihkanga lapa." Bati bona, "sala kahle." Ba dhlula-ke.

Inonile inkabi yakwa Goza; iqata layo linamandhla emlonyeni.

Imvu leyo inonile impela. Angibonanga ngiyibona imvu injeya.

Sibobokile isitya sami esihle; angazi uma sityayiwe yinina. Ngiti mina sityayiwe abantwana; ngokuba, kade, besi pete emnyango lapo. Ilamba ntombazana, uye ehlatini, ubize abantwana, ngiba buze bona ngiso.

Uma intombi yendisiwe, kufika izinkabi katisimbe zibentatu, zifika nentombi.

Ngibuhlungu mngane; ungi bulele u-Zigodo izolo. Ngibiyelela nje, wangi tyaya ngewisa.

Qabulani amehlo nibone, nivuke opekayo akaye ukupeka, owalusayo akaye ukwalusa, otezayo ahambe aye ukuteza. Tyetyani ukwenza imisebenzi yenu.

Izinkomo zako zisi bubisile izolo esifeni setu; umbila wonke, unga ka njeya, ziwu tyaye, zawu lahla: indaba anginamandhla uku yi zeka.

Ngizibulele madoda; ngibulele inhliziyu. Ngatabata isijingi sami, ngaqulela izinyosi, ngadhla.

Nginga fika ekutyoneni kwelanga.

Itunga leli ke Mbokondo, umuntu uligumba lona izinsuku zibe ngaki na? O! qabo, umuntu oyinyanga enezigwedu ezibukali uyaku li qeda ugelanga linye.

Siyi kolisile impunzi esihlahleni lesi namhlanje. Sifike sayi raqa qede, yavuka, yaya lapo, bayi kuza, yaya enhla; bayi kuza, yaya ezansi; bayi kuza, yagada pakati nje.

Ngatatwa ama-Bunu. Asi keta tina sonke si' bancinyane. Aba bulala abadala, abayeka abafazi.

Au! izinkomo seziqedile insimu. Tyetya mfana, uzikipe. Umalusi wabaleka ngokwesaba ukutyayiwa.

Wati umfana kimi, angim nike isigqoko sami. Ngala mina, ngati "Qa isigqoko sami angiyikuku nika sona."

Safika ke kulowo' mfundisi. Kepa, kwakukona abakiti, basiyisa. Wabuza umfundisi wati, "Nifunani na?" Sati, "Ukusebenza."

Wavuma. Sahlala naye kwaza kwaba iminyaka eminingi. Waza wafa. Sakala kakulu. Sa citeka.

Izinkomo ze Bunu ziya bonakala ngokunqanda kahle; zinde futi, zikoka inhlali, zivama ukuba umtoto kuleli lizwe zaletwa lezonkomo.

Izulu lidikizela; lizaku twasa ihlobo. Uyezwa mfana, ngipunduliswe nguweni.

Ngiya bonga ukwenamela kwako wena: kuhle kona.

Abantu abamyama abali tandi lelogama lokuti ama-Kafula; kanti noko, ayiko indawo yoku li zonda; ngokuba aliyiku lahleka nakanye; aliyiku suka kubo.

## VOCABULARY 53.

Hlangana, *v.* Come together, meet,  
&c.

Zeka, *v.* Marry.

Bonga, *v.* Address in prayer, &c.

Bula, *v.* Consult a wizard.

Koliseka, *v.* Be served a fine trick.

Nyanda (in), *n.* Bundle of fire-wood.

Gobolondo (i), *n.* Egg-shell.

Nikina, *v.* Shake, as the head.

Bambezelo (isi), *n.* Cause of detention.

Xokozela, *v.* Make a noise.

Pambuka, *v.* Leave, as a road.

Depa, *v.* Grow tall.

Nquma, *v.* Divide.

Sauza, *v.* Scold.

Gagu (i), *n.* Forward person, good or bad.

Duba, *v.* Take offence.

Xatu (isi), *n.* Welt of a stripe.

Tyungu (i), *n.* Snuff-case.

Panyiso (isi), *n.* Stretched string, as a clothes-line, &c.

Tyayanisa, *v.* Cause to quarrel.

Boboka, *v.* Have a dent.

Qabula, *v.* Refresh the eyes by taking snuff.

## PART II.

Lomntwana uya gula kakulu. Ngiyamelapisa nje ngeze; aka yikunginika luto.

Saya ke, safika, kwahlatywa inkomo, sancama.

Kwati ke, kusihlwa sesuka, sahamba ke ebusuku.

Kwati nxa kusayo safika esi Lungwini.

Lom Lungu unolaka. Ngangena endhlini yake, wangi xotya, wangi sikiza ngesibamu. Ngabekela nje ke. Wa hleka; wati, "Hamba konamanje." Ngahamba, wangi yeka.

Ziyangi hlupa izingulube. Ngalusu zona njalo; ziya dhla umbila ensimini namabele.

Namhlanje bengi lele ensimini yami, ngilinda izingulube; zafika ngezwa zapula. Nga papama, ngali twetya kahle iboqo lami, ngaya kona; ngafika lapo zikona, ngazi hlaba, ngazi juqa kanye ngeboqo lami.

Wali shiya lelo lizwe lama Zulu.

Ngapendula amehlo ami ngabona ibandhla elikulu.

Hambani niye ukulungisa amahashi.

Ama-Bunu akipa omese alwa ngamandhla abulala abaningi. Abakiti bawa tyaya ngemikonto. Kepa, afa ngamanye ngamanye, aza aya apela onke.

Wo! imbi leyonkabi angi yi tandi; iyisilwana sasendhle.

Ausazi isibungu na? "Qa. Sinjani?" Siyisilwanyana esizalwa impukane ebomvu; isizalele pansi emhlabatini.

Indaba leyo innandi ebantwini ngiyazi yona.

Asiku zwa ukukuluma kwabo. Kunjani?

Licitakele izwe lakiti.

Woza wena, uyatele inujobo yami.

Inenkani leyondoda; siyi bonile, ipik' inkani yona.

Kwatula kwati-nya endhlini yake.

Basi pambanisele site siyakuba tyaya; basi tyaya tina. Semuka, saya emapandhlени.

Ake nibeke lenkunzi enkulu lesifufufu; siya fufuzela sibatywa ulaka njeya.

Fudumeza isijingi sami; uma sisidlhla si' makaza nje, sizakusi bangela isilungulela.

Lomkonto waceinwa ngani? Waceinwa ngengeina ngapezulu lapa emtandweni wacapazelwe umkiwane.

Musa ukuba' manqundanqunda, wesabe amehlo abantu.

Wali fohloza ityungu lake, wali tyaya pansi; utukutele enengwa ukuti, "Sishiyele, sishiyele."

## VOCABULARY 54.

|                     |                          |                            |                                    |
|---------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Ze (i), <i>n.</i>   | Nothing.                 | Bungu (isi), <i>n.</i>     | Maggot of large fly.               |
| Nama, <i>v.</i>     | Eat before starting.     | Ilwanyana (isi), <i>n.</i> | Insect.                            |
| Sikiza, <i>v.</i>   | Take aim, as with a gun. | Tando (um), <i>n.</i>      | String wound round spear.          |
| Bekela, <i>v.</i>   | Look for, at, &c.        | Citakala, <i>v.</i>        | Be in wasted or ravaged condition. |
| Papama, <i>v.</i>   | Wake from sleep.         | Njolo (in), <i>n.</i>      | Native's skin-tail.                |
| Twetya, <i>v.</i>   | Select.                  | Pambanisa, <i>v.</i>       | Cross, misplace, &c.               |
| Boqo (i), <i>n.</i> | Large assegai.           | Pandhle (ama), <i>n.</i>   | Country places.                    |
| Juqa, <i>v.</i>     | Stab.                    |                            |                                    |
| Lungisa, <i>v.</i>  | Make ready.              |                            |                                    |

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Fufuzela, <i>v.</i> Go with impetuosity,<br>&c.     | Ngcina (in), <i>n.</i> Glutinous substance. |
| Fufufu (isi), <i>n.</i> Spirited animal,<br>or man. | Geina, <i>v.</i> Make firm, or fast.        |
| Fudumeza, <i>v.</i> Warm, as food                   | Capazela, <i>v.</i> Drop on, or into.       |
| Lungulela (isi), <i>n.</i> Heartburn.               | Nqundanqunda (ama), <i>n.</i> Hesitation.   |

## POINTS OF RESEMBLANCE BETWEEN THE ZULU-KAFIR AND HEBREW LANGUAGES.

1. The noun precedes its adjective.
2. When special stress is laid upon the adjective, it is placed before the noun.
3. To express very good, large, &c., the adjective is sometimes repeated.
4. The verb frequently precedes the noun.
5. The formation of the Relative Pronoun, except in the arrangement of words, &c., is in both languages similar. Compare the following in Hebrew with the Zulu: The priest who he will anoint him = the priest whom he will anoint; the man who he delights in his honour, = the man in whose honour he delights.
6. *Substantives* frequently take the place of *adjectives*. Ex.—The month of the beginning (the first month), innyanga yokuqala. The Hebrew language, being remarkably deficient in adjectives, often requires substantives. Ex.—A deceitful offering is rendered: “an offering of deceit.”
7. The *Past Tense* is, in reference to solemn promises, vows, compacts, used for the future.
8. There is, in both languages, an *Impersonal Expression* of the Verb. Ex.—Kwalalwa kwa' Ngoza, it was slept at Ngoza's; and in Heb., it was well to him, = they slept at, &c., and “he was well.”
9. Several verbs are construed with a *double accusative*. Ex.—Waba pa isinkwa nennyama, he gave them bread and meat. Heb., They baked the dough (into) unleavened cakes.
10. The *Present Tense* of the Substantive Verb is sometimes implied, not expressed.

11. The object, in some instances, is placed at the beginning of the sentence. Ex.—Inhliziyo aba yi bojanga, the heart they did not bind, that is, they bound not the heart. Heb., “*Him* you shall sanctify.”

12. There is a *Pluralis Excellentiae*. Ex.—O Somseu (u), O Mpande, O Tyaka. Heb., God, Lord, The Holy One, The Creator, are in the plural; and, in some instances, with the verb in the singular.

13. In forming the *Comparative of Adjectives*, “kuna” is in Zulu placed before the thing compared, and in Heb. *min*.

14. To increase the intensity of expression, a noun or the infinitive may be repeated. Ex.—Uzakufa nokufa, you will certainly die. In Heb., the infinitive either follows or precedes the finite verb, according as the idea of certainty or of continuance is to be conveyed.

15. There is irony in both languages. A figure of speech, the opposite of hyperbole, namely *Litotes*, representing the subject with reserve, increases the force. Ex.—Kana’ lulaka lomuntu, this person is not passionate! = he is very passionate. In Heb., “The path of the wicked is not good” = the path of the wicked is detestable.

16. Very strong protestations are introduced by peculiar expressions. Ngi m pate u-Mpande, I carry Umpande, *i.e.* I bear the name of, &c. Heb., “By my life,” or “By the life of the Lord.”

17. Sometimes the principal verb is co-ordinated to the verb which has, in that connection, the meaning of an adverb. In both languages the form is, “he added and took,” *i.e.* he took another servant, house, &c.

18. Both languages have a guttural: the letter *r* in Zulu, and in Heb. more than one.

19. The *Present* and *Future* tenses are sometimes used for the *Past*. Zulu: Wayengazi uma uzakutini na, he did not know what she should (shall) say. Heb.: The day on which I was (shall be) born.

The above comparisons will be of considerable value to those students who begin the study of Zulu-Kafir after they have acquired some knowledge of Hebrew syntax. And, as the above remarks do not exhaust the subject, they may be encouraged to seek other points of resemblance.

## QUESTIONS.

---

1. How many clicks are there?
2. How many gutturals?
3. Is *g* hard or soft?
4. Where does the accent fall?
5. Give the *accusative* forms of the personal pronouns I, thou, he?
6. When emphasis is required, what is used in *addition* to these?
7. How is the present participle formed?
8. Give the prefixes of the *simple* present tense, pers. 1. and 2?
9. Give the *emphatic* form of this tense?
10. Repeat the affixes of the *first-future*, pers. 1. and 2?
11. How is the first-future-emphatic formed?
12. What are the two varieties of the *past-progressive*?
13. Form the *present* tense of the *potential* mood, pers. 2. and 3?
14. Form the past tense of the same?
15. Convey a command in a *courteous* manner?
16. Command *harshly*?
17. What is the ordinary form of the imperative mood?
18. How many classes of nouns govern the 3rd per.?
19. Repeat the present, past, and future tenses, *Ind.* mood?
20. When proximity of time is required, *which* variety of the past-progressive is used?
21. Give the accusative of the personal pronouns in all the classes?
22. Give the *dative* case of the personal pronouns, simple and emphatic?
23. Form the adjective as a *predicate*—an *epithet*?
24. Is the adj. placed *before* or *after* a noun?
25. What are the relative pronouns?
26. Show how the relative is united to an adj.—a noun?
27. How is *yo* employed in connection with the relative?
28. Does the form *for whom* take the *yo*?
29. Repeat the *euphonic* letter of the classes of nouns?
30. How are the possessive pronouns formed?
31. With what must these pronouns be connected?
32. Name the demonstrative pronouns, this, that, yonder?
33. Express, it is I, thou, they?
34. Are there *peculiar* forms for father, mother; and what are they?
35. What are the prefixes of the nouns?

36. Construe, mine, thine, it is mine, &c.
37. Express I, thou, he only, or alone?
38. How is *all*, as all the men, expressed?
39. How is whose formed? Whom? To whom? By whom?  
With whom?
40. What *contractions* take place in the use of *vowel* verbs?
41. Do *two vowels* frequently stand together?
42. Form the *comparative* degree—the *superlative*?
43. Translate the word *certain*?
44. Has *every* class a demonstrative adverb, and what is it?
45. Give the prefixes and endings of all the varieties of the *perfect* tense?
46. Form the *pluperfect* tense?
47. What is the second-future tense a combination of?
48. How is the first-future-progressive obtained?
49. In *what* does the Subj. mood *differ* from the Imperative?
50. How do you construe *several* verbs joined by *and*?
51. Render all three, all four, &c.?
52. Construe one by one, other. Any number *above* five?
53. Express, “now I love,” “I still love,” “do love,” “I once loved,”  
“until I love?”
54. Express, continually, just as, like as, a long time?
55. Give the forms of the objective, causative, reflective and reciprocal verbs?
56. How is the ablative formed?
57. Give the *exceptions* to the rules?
58. What forms are used for adverbs of place?
59. *Which* letter is rejected in forming the vocative?
60. Translate *towards*?
61. What alterations and additions are required for the *negative* tenses, Ind. mood—Subj. mood—Potential mood?
62. How is the *passive* voice of the simple—causative—objective form obtained?
63. What are the *exceptions* to the rules?
64. What are the endings of the negative form of the passive?
65. Construe never of *past* time—of *future*?
66. How may the sense of *cannot sometimes* be rendered?
67. What *peculiar* forms do monosyllabic roots require when used as a *predicate* or joined to an *adj.*?
68. When are adjectives placed *before* nouns?
69. Are nouns sometimes used *adverbially*?

70. Express, "may I," "Oh ! that I may" ?
  71. Give these forms in the *imperfect* tense ?
  72. How is motion *from* a place expressed—to a place ?
  73. Form the *ineffective* tense, by myself, &c. ?
  74. Are reciprocal verbs sometimes followed by *na* ?
  75. What *peculiarity* is there in the use of *passive* verbs ?
  76. Has *bo* sometimes an *imperative* force ?
  77. How do natives count ?
  78. What are the forms of salutation ?
  79. When at a loss for a word, can you express yourself by a sign,  
and how ?
  80. Give an example of "ukuti" as a prefatory predicate ?
  81. Translate "you are black" ?
  82. Used colloquially, is the last letter of a word sometimes elided ?
-

## APPENDIX.

## 1.

TABLE OF THE CLASSES OF NOUNS.

| Class. | Inflection.     | Prefixes of verb, P. tense. | Euphonic letter. | Possessive form, proper names of pers. | Examples.           |
|--------|-----------------|-----------------------------|------------------|--|---------------------|
| 1.     | umu, um, u      | u (ya)                      | w                | ka                                     | umntwana wendoda.   |
| 2.     | ili, i          | li (ya)                     | l                | lika                                   | ilashi lika Gebuza. |
| 3.     | ini, in         | i (ya)                      | y                | yika                                   | inkomo yami         |
| 4.     | isi             | si (ya)                     | s                | sika                                   | isitya sika John.   |
| 5.     | ulu, u          | lu (ya)                     | lw               | luka                                   | upape lwomuntu.     |
| 6.     | unu, um, u      | u (ya)                      | w                | ka                                     | umfula welizwe.     |
| 7.     | ubu             | bu (ya)                     | b                | buka                                   | ubuso buka James.   |
| 8.     | uku             | ku (ya)                     | kw               | kuka                                   | ukufa kwake.        |
| Plur.  |                 |                             |                  |  |                     |
| 1.     | aba, o          | ba (ya)                     | b                | baka                                   | omiyane bayahlupa.  |
| 2.     | ama             | a (ya)                      | a                | aka                                    | amashashi enkosi.   |
| 3.     | izim, izin, izi | zi (ya)                     | z                | zika                                   | izinkomo zika baba. |
| 4.     | imi             | i (ya)                      | y                | yika                                   | imisila yezinyoni.  |

## 2.

TABLE OF THE DATIVE AND ABLATIVE CASES.

| Class. | Specimen of noun. | Change of prefix. | Change of termination. | Letter coming between abl. and noun, &c. | Examples.              |
|--------|-------------------|-------------------|------------------------|--|------------------------|
| 1.     | umuntu            | e                 | wini                   | s  | inhliziyo isemuntwini. |
| 2.     | izulu             | e                 | wini                   | s  | ilanga lisezulwini.    |
| 3.     | intaba            | e                 | eni                    | s  | entabeni               |
|        | impuku            | e                 | wini                   | s  | empukwini.             |
|        | intambo           | e                 | njeni                  | s  | entanjeni.             |
|        | impupu            | e                 | tyini                  | s  | imbovana isemputyini.  |
| 4.     | isibuko           | e                 | weni                   | s  | esibukweni.            |
|        | isisu             | e                 | wini                   | s  | ubuhlungu busesiswini  |
| 5.     | utando            | clu or o          | weni                   | s  | elutandweni.           |
|        | unyawo            | clu or o          | (w) eni                | s  | onyaweni.              |
| 6.     | umlomo            | e                 | nyeni                  | s  | kusemlonyeni.          |
|        | umfula            | e                 | eni                    | s  | emfuleni.              |
|        | umkumbi           | e                 | njeni                  | s  | emkunjeni.             |
| 7.     | ubahlalu          | e                 | wini                   | s  | ebuhlalwini.           |
|        | ubuhlungu         | o                 | wini                   | s  | ebuhlungwini.          |
| 8.     | ukufa             | e                 | eni                    | s  | usekufeni.             |
| Plur.  |                   |                   |                        |  |                        |
| 1.     | abantu            | e                 | wini                   | s  | ebantwini.             |
| 2.     | amagama           | e                 | eni                    | s  | emagameni.             |
|        | amacebo           | e                 | tyeni                  | s  | emacetyeni.            |
| 3.     | izintsuku         | e                 | wini                   | s  | ezintsukwini.          |
|        | izinyoka          | e                 | eni                    | s  | ezinyokeni.            |
|        | izimpande         | e                 | eni                    | s  | ezimpandeni.           |
| 4.     | imiteto           | e                 | weni                   | s  | kusemitetweni.         |
|        | imibombo          | e                 | njeni                  | s  | emitonjeni.            |

## 3.

## PERSONAL PRONOUNS, PERS. 1 AND 2.

| Nom.              | Accus.    | Emp. nom. & accus. | Possessive. | Dative.      | Emp. Dative.     | Reflective.          | Examples.                          |
|-------------------|-----------|--------------------|-------------|--------------|------------------|----------------------|------------------------------------|
| ngi<br>u          | ngi<br>ku | mina<br>wena       | ami<br>ako  | kimi<br>kuwe | kimina<br>kuwena | ngokwami<br>ngokwako | bayeza kimi.<br>sebenza ngokwako.  |
| Plur.<br>si<br>ni | si<br>ni  | tina<br>nina       | etu<br>enu  | kiti<br>kini | kitina<br>kinina | ngokwetu<br>ngokwenu | woza kitina.<br>siya ni biza nina. |

## 4.

TABLE OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS, 3. PER.

| Class. | Nom.<br>(Verbal). | Accus. | Emp.<br>nom. &<br>accus. | Possessive. | Emp.<br>Possessive. | Dative. | Emp.<br>Dative. | Reflective. | Examples.                                      |
|--------|-------------------|--------|--------------------------|-------------|---------------------|---------|-----------------|-------------|--|
| 1.     | u                 | m, nu  | yena                     | ake         | owo, oka            | kuye    | kuyena          | ngokwake    | uya-m-tanda <i>owake</i> um-twana.             |
| 2.     | li                | li     | lona                     | alo         | el, elika           | kulo    | kulona          | ngokwalo    | lipi ihashi ? ngiya lam-bela <i>kulo</i> .     |
| 3.     | i                 | yi     | yona                     | ayo         | ey, eyika           | kuyo    | kuyona          | ngokwayo    | <i>eyami</i> intambo, ngiya fuma <i>yona</i> . |
| 4.     | si                | si     | sona                     | aso         | es, esika           | kuso    | kusona          | ngokwaso    | esika Gebuza lesisitya.                        |
| 5.     | lu                | lu     | lona                     | alo         | olw, oluka,         | kulo    | kulona          | ngokwalo    | olwami unyawo.                                 |
| 6.     | u                 | wu     | wona                     | awo         | ow, oka             | kuwo    | kuwona          | ngokwawo    | upi umfula ? ngiya ya kuwona.                  |
| 7.     | bu                | bu     | bona                     | abo         | ob, obuka           | kubo    | kubona          | ngokwabo    | asi bu tandi ubahlungu.                        |
| 8.     | ku                | ku     | kona                     | ako         | okw, okuka          | kuko    | kukona          | ngokwako    | okwako ukufa.                                  |
| Plur.  |                   |        |                          |             |                     |         |                 |             |  |
| 1.     | ba                | ba     | bona                     | abo         | ab, abaka           | kubo    | kubona          | ngokwabo    | banga sebenza ngo-kwabo.                       |
| 2.     | a                 | wa     | wona                     | awo         | aw, aka             | kuwo    | kuwona          | ngokwawo    | aka Thomas lamahashi.                          |
| 3.     | zi                | zi     | zona                     | azo         | ez, ezika           | kuzo    | kuzona          | ngokwazo    | suka uye kuzona (izin-komo).                   |
| 4.     | i                 | yi     | yona                     | ayo         | ey, eyika           | kuyo    | kuyona          | ngokwayo    | unsebenzi wayo (imi-vunya).                    |

## 5.

TABLE OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

| Class. | Prefix.         | This. | That. | That yonder. | Examples.      |
|--------|-----------------|-------|-------|--------------|----------------|
| 1.     | u, um, umu      | lo    | lowo  | lowaya       | umuntu lowaya. |
| 2.     | ili, i          | leli  | lelo  | leliya       | ielohashi.     |
| 3.     | im, in          | le    | leyo  | leya         | leyonkomo.     |
| 4.     | isi             | lesi  | leso  | lesiya       | lesositya.     |
| 5.     | ulu, u          | lolu  | lolo  | loluya       | lohunyawo.     |
| 6.     | u, um, umu      | lo    | lowo  | lowaya       | umfula, lowo.  |
| 7.     | ubu             | lobu  | lobo  | lobuya       | lobobuhlungu.  |
| 8.     | uku             | loku  | loko  | lokuya       | lokukudhia.    |
| Plur.  |                 |       |       |              |                |
| 1.     | aba, o          | laba  | labo  | labaya       | abantu labaya. |
| 2.     | ama             | la    | lawa  | lawaya       | lamahashi.     |
| 3.     | izim, izin, izi | lei   | lezo  | leziya       | lezombuzi.     |
| 4.     | imi             | le    | leyo  | leya         | lemitombo.     |

## 6.

TABLE OF INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

|   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Who ? Ubanina.                             | What locality ? Ngapina ?              |
| 2. Who art thou ? Ungubanina ?                | How many ? Ngaki ?                     |
| 3. To whom ? Kubanina ?                       | What sort, how ? Njani ?               |
| 4. With whom ? Nobanina ?                     | Like what ? Njenganina ?               |
| 5. By whom ? Ngubanina ?                      | How great ? Ngakanani ?                |
| 6. What ? Nina ?                              | How often ? Kangakanani ?              |
| 7. What is it ? Iyinina ?                     | Where ? Pina ?                         |
| 8. With what, or by what means ?<br>Nganina ? | When ? Ninina ?                        |
| 9. Or not ? Yinina ?                          | Ubani igama lako ? What is your name ? |
| 10. What are ye ? Niyinina ?                  | Why ? Po ?                             |

## 7.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS, PERS. 1 AND 2.

| Nom.   | Accus.    | Emphatic<br>Accus. | Possessive. | Examples.   |
|--------|-----------|--------------------|-------------|---|
| e or o | ngi<br>ku | mina<br>wena       | e<br>o      | umuzi engiwubona wona, the kraal which I see.<br>olizwi lake linamandlila, whose voice is strong.               |
| Plur.  | si<br>ni  | tina<br>nina       | e<br>e      | imbenge esiyifunayo, a basket which we want.<br>umuntu osikumba sake sinuyama, a person<br>whose skin is black. |

8.

TABLE OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS, &amp;c. PERS.

| Class. | Noun.  | Accus. | Emph. Accus. | Possessive. | Emph. Possess. | To whom. | With whom. | About, &c., whom. | By whom. | Examples.   |
|--------|--------|--------|--------------|-------------|----------------|----------|------------|-------------------|----------|---|
| 1.     | o, a   | m      | yena         | o           | o, ake         | kuye     | naye       | ngaye             | nguye    | uufana antandayo, a boy whom he loves.                              |
| 2.     | e (li) | li     | lona         | eli         | eli, alo       | kulo     | nalo       | ngalo             | yilo     | ilashi eli-zindhlebe zalo zinde, a horse whose ears are long.       |
| 3.     | e      | yi     | yona         | e           | e, ayo         | kuyo     | nayo       | ngayo             | yiyo     | indoda esa kuluma ngayo, the man about whom we were speaking.       |
| 4.     | e (si) | si     | sona         | esi         | esi, aso       | kuso     | naso       | ngaso             | yiso     | isiqwala esikohliswa yiso, the lame person by whom we are deceived. |
| 5.     | o (lu) | lu     | lona         | olu         | olu, alo       | kulo     | nalo       | ngalo             | yilo     | uluti engiyaku hamba nalo, the stick with which I will go.          |
| 6.     | o      | wu     | wona         | o           | o, awo         | kuwo     | nawo       | ngawo             | yiwo     | umfula omanzi mabi, a river whose water is bad.                     |
| 7.     | o (bu) | bu     | hona         | obu         | obu, abo       | kubo     | nabo       | ngabo             | yibo     | ubulungu obungenakutwalwa, a severe pain.                           |
| 8.     | o (ku) | ku     | kona         | oku         | oku, ako       | kuko     | nako       | ngako             | yiko     | ukwazi onako, knowledge which thou hast.                            |
| Plur.  |        |        |              |             |                |          |            |                   |          |   |
| 1.     | a (la) | ba     | hona         | aba         | aba, abo       | kubo     | nabo       | ngabo             | yibo     | abantu abankomo yabo inhle, people whose cow is fine.               |
| 2.     | a      | wa     | wona         | a           | a, awo         | kuwo     | nawo       | ngawo             | yibo     | amakonyana amisila mininyama, calves whose tails are black.         |
| 3.     | e (zi) | zi     | zona         | ezi         | ezi, azo       | kuzo     | nazo       | ngazo             | yizo     | izimuncu esizifunayo, servants whom we want.                        |
| 4.     | e      | yi     | yona         | e           | e, ayo         | kuyo     | nayo       | ngayo             | yibo     | imitombo engi yi tandayo, fountains which I like.                   |

## 9.

TABLE OF DEMONSTRATIVE ADVERBS.

| Class. | Here. | There. | Yonder. | Examples.                |
|--------|-------|--------|---------|--------------------------|
| 1.     | nangu | nango  | nanguya | upi umfana ? nanguya.    |
| 2.     | nanti | nanto  | nantiya | igaba lipi ? nanti.      |
| 3.     | nansi | nanso  | nansiya | nansiya (inkomo).        |
| 4.     | nasi  | naso   | nasiya  | leta isitya, naso.       |
| 5.     | nantu | nanto  | nantuya | nantu uhlobo oluhle.     |
| 6.     | nangu | nango  | nanguya | umuti olukuni, nango.    |
| 7.     | nambu | nambo  | nambuya | nambu ubuhlalu bako.     |
| 8.     | naku  | nako   | nakuya  | ukusebenza okuhle, nako. |
| Plur.  |       |        |         |                          |
| 1.     | namba | nambo  | nambaya | nambaya befuna wena.     |
| 2.     | nanka | nanko  | nankaya | api amaswazi ? nanko.    |
| 3.     | nazi  | nazo   | naziya  | naziya izimbuzi.         |
| 4.     | nansi | nanso  | nansiya | imifanekiso, nansi.      |

## 10.

TABLE OF ADJECTIVES.

| Class. | Noun.      | He,<br>fine. | Bi,<br>bad. | Kulu,<br>large. | Mnyama,<br>black. | Lukuni,<br>hard. |
|--------|------------|--------------|-------------|-----------------|-------------------|------------------|
| 1.     | umuntu     | omuhle       | omubi       | onkulu          | omnyama           | olukuni.         |
| 2.     | ilitye     | elihle       | elibi       | elikulu         | elinnyama         | elilukuni.       |
| 3.     | intombi    | enhle        | embi        | enkulu          | emnyama           | elukuni.         |
| 4.     | isibaya    | esihle       | esibi       | esikulu         | esimnyama         | esilukuni.       |
| 5.     | utambo     | oluhle       | olubi       | ohkulu          | olumnyama         | olulukuni.       |
| 6.     | umkomo     | omuhle       | omubi       | onkulu          | omnyama           | olukuni.         |
| 7.     | ubuso      | obuhle       | obubi       | obukulu         | obumnyama         | obulukuni.       |
| 8.     | ukusebenza | okuhle       | okubi       | okukulu         | okumnyama         | okulukuni.       |
| Plur.  |            |              |             |                 |                   |                  |
| 1.     | abantu     | abahle       | ababi       | abakulu         | abamnyama         | abalukuni.       |
| 2.     | amatye     | amahle       | amabi       | amakulu         | amnyama           | alukuni.         |
| 3.     | izintombi  | ezinhle      | ezinbi      | ezikulu         | ezimnyama         | ezilukuni.       |
| 4.     | imikomo    | emihle       | emibi       | emikulu         | emnyama           | emilukuni.       |

11.  
TABLE OF ADVERBS.

| Time.   | Place.   | Manner.   | Degree.   | Number.  | Affirmation, or negation.   |
|---|--|---|---|--|---|
| namuhla, to-day<br>izolo, yesterday.<br>ngumuso, to-morrow.<br>kusasa, in the morning.<br>ekuseni, early in the morning.<br>ekukaleni kwezinkaku, very early in the morning.<br>sinezakafiki, before.<br>ekudhlaleni, after.<br>ngemihla, daily.<br>masinyane, immediately.<br>manje, just now.<br>kangaki, how often.<br>yenza kahle, wait a moment.<br>kona manje, at once.<br>nonyaka, this year.<br>kudala, of old time.<br>ngalesisikati, at that time.<br>kuzekubepakade, for ever and ever.<br>kade, long.<br>kwazakwabapakade, very long ago.<br>pakade, long ago.<br>ebusuku, in the night.<br>chuska, in the winter.<br>uma, when.<br>kunjalonjalo, continually so.<br>enyakenye, last year.<br>pezolo, last night.<br>kucangi, day before yesterday.<br>emini, at noon.<br>emimbama, in the afternoon.<br>ngonhlomunye, day after to-morrow.<br>sokuswelele, it is now dark. | lupa, here.<br>lapo, there.<br>lapaya, under.<br>eduze, near.<br>kude, far.<br>pandhle, out-side.<br>pakati, within.<br>koma, behind.<br>konalapa, just here.<br>ngasekumene, on right.<br>ngasekohl, on left.<br>ngantsho, on this side.<br>ngapentsheya, on the other side.<br>pansi, beneath.<br>pezulu, high above.<br>pambili, before.<br>ehlalungotini, at the side.<br>malungana na, opposite to.<br>le, far off.<br>ogwini, by the river's side. | ngase e, secretly.<br>ngesita, privately.<br>kahle, well.<br>kanye, together.<br>ngqiniso, truly.<br>ngokutya, newly.<br>ngokumangalisayo, wonderfully.<br>ngokwesabekayo, fearfully.<br>ngamabonni, witfully.<br>tatanzayo, quietly.<br>tyetya, make haste.<br>ngenyewe, moderately.<br>calmly.<br>ngamandhla, energetically.<br>ndawonye, together, one place.<br>ujalo, so, in this way. | kuningi, abundantly.<br>kancinyane, a little.<br>kakuthi, greatly.<br>kangaka, so great.<br>futhi, again.<br>pos uku, nearly.<br>kuningi, enough. | kanye, once.<br>kabili, twice.<br>katatu, thrice.<br>kane, four times.<br>kahlanu, five times.<br>kasitupa, six times.<br>kasikombisa, seven times.<br>kasishiyangalombili, eight times.<br>kasishiyangalolunye, nine times.<br>kayishumi, ten times.<br>kama-humi, tens of times.<br>kayikulu, hundred times. | yebo, yes.<br>ca, calbo, no.<br>atyi, no (emphatic).<br>ananga, not so.<br>yebotina, yes truly.<br>alaketina, nothing particular. |

TABLE OF CONJUNCTIONS AND INTERJECTIONS.

| 12.<br>CONJUNCTIONS.  | 13.<br>INTERJECTIONS.  |
|---|--|
| kanti, whereas.<br>kodwa, but.<br>ngoba, or gokuba, because.<br>ngako, therefore.<br>nakuba, although.<br>uma, if.<br>ukuba, that.<br>kepa ke, furthermore.<br>kanti noko, but notwithstanding.<br>lokupela, forasmuch as.<br>njengokuba, like as.<br>kupela, that's all.<br>ingati, inasmuch as.<br>kungeso, except. | an ! wonder, disapprobation.<br>cupe ! threatening.<br>ehe ! assent.<br>mame ! astonishment.<br>mamo ! astonishment.<br>maye ! grief.<br>pepa ! never mind !<br>wau ! wonder.<br>wo ! anger, admiration.<br>x ! anger.<br>iya ! away !<br>yeka ! dear me !<br>halala ! hail ! welcome !<br>we ! behold !<br>yeye ! derision. |

## 14.

TABLE OF CARDINAL AND ORDINAL NUMBERS.

| Number. | Prefix. | Root.  | Prefix of ordinal. |
|---------|---------|--|--------------------|
| 1       | isi     | nye  | uku (qala)         |
| 2       | isi     | bili   | ubu, or isi        |
| 3       | isi     | tatu   | ubu, or isi        |
| 4       | isi     | ne   | ubu, or isi        |
| 5       | isi     | hlann  | ubu, or isi        |
| 6       | isi     | tupa   |                    |
| 7       | isi     | kombisa  |                    |
| 8       | isi     | shiyangalombili                                |                    |
| 9       | isi     | shiyangalolunye                                |                    |
| 10      | i       | shumi  |                    |
| 11      | i       | shumi nanye                                    |                    |
| 12      | i       | shumi nambili                                  |                    |
| 13      | i       | shumi nantatu                                  |                    |
| 14      | i       | shumi nane                                     |                    |
| 15      | i       | shumi nesihlanu                                |                    |
| 16      | i       | shumi nesitupa                                 |                    |
| 17      | i       | shumi nesikombisa                              |                    |
| 18      | i       | shumi nesishiyangalombili                      |                    |
| 19      | i       | shumi nesishiyangalolunye                      |                    |
| 20      | ama     | shumi amabili                                  |                    |
| 21      | ama     | shumi amabili nanye                            |                    |
| 22      | ama     | shumi amabili nambili                          |                    |
| 30      | ama     | shumi amatatu                                  |                    |
| 40      | ama     | shumi amane                                    |                    |
| 50      | ama     | shumi ayisihlanu                               |                    |
| 80      | ama     | shumi ayisishiyangalombili                     |                    |
| 99      | ama     | shumi ayisishiyangalolunye nesishiyangalolunye |                    |

## 14. (Continued).

TABLE OF CARDINAL AND ORDINAL NUMBERS.

| Number. | Prefix. | Root.                                    | Prefix of ordinal. |
|---------|---------|--|--------------------|
| 100     | i       | kulu                                     |                    |
| 105     | i       | kulu nesihlanu                           |                    |
| 150     | i       | kulu namashumi amahlanu                  |                    |
| 200     | ama     | kulu amabili                             |                    |
| 500     | ama     | kulu amahlanu                            |                    |
| 1,000   | in      | kulungwane                               |                    |
| 1,800   | in      | kulungwane namakulu ayisishiyangalombili |                    |
| 2,000   | izin    | kulungwane ezibili                       |                    |

## 13.

TABLE OF INDICATIVE MOOD, ACTIVE VOICE.

| Root.   | 1. P.         | 2. P.        | 3. P.       | 3. P.       | 3. P.       | 3. P.        | 3. P.        | 3. P.      | 3. P.            |
|---|---------------|--------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|------------|------------------|
| Past participle. I loving, &c.                    |               |              |             |             |             |              |              |            |                  |
| tanda<br>tanda                                    | ngi<br>si     | u<br>ni      | e<br>be     | li<br>e     | i<br>zi     | si<br>zi     | in<br>zi     | u<br>i     | bu<br>no plur.   |
| Past tense (simple). I love.                      |               |              |             |             |             |              |              |            |                  |
| tanda<br>tanda                                    | ngi<br>si     | u<br>ni      | u<br>ba     | li<br>a     | i<br>zi     | si<br>zi     | lu<br>zi     | u<br>i     | ku<br>no plur.   |
| Present tense (emphatic). I do love or am loving. |               |              |             |             |             |              |              |            |                  |
| tanda<br>tanda                                    | ngiya<br>siya | uya<br>niya  | uya<br>baya | liya<br>aya | iya<br>ziya | siya<br>ziya | liya<br>ziya | uya<br>iya | kuya<br>no plur. |
| Past tense. I loved.                              |               |              |             |             |             |              |              |            |                  |
| tanda<br>tanda                                    | uga<br>sa     | wa<br>na     | wa<br>ba    | la<br>a     | ya<br>za    | sa<br>za     | lwa<br>za    | wa<br>ya   | kwa<br>no plur.  |
| Past-progressive (late). I was loving.            |               |              |             |             |             |              |              |            |                  |
| tanda<br>tanda                                    | bengi<br>best | ubon<br>boni | ube<br>bebe | beli<br>abe | ibi<br>bezi | bosi<br>bezi | belu<br>bezi | ubu<br>ibi | beku<br>no plur. |

## 15. Continued.

## TABLE OF INDICATIVE MOOD, ACTIVE VOICE.

| Root.                                    | 1. P.                   | 2. P.                 | 3. P.                 | 3. P.                 | 3. P.                 | 3. P.                  | 3. P.                  | 3. P.                 | 3. P.                 |
|--|-------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| Past-progressive (remote). I was loving. |                         |                       |                       |                       |                       |                        |                        |                       |                       |
| tand<br>tandile<br>or<br>tande           | ngang'i<br>sasi         | wau<br>uani           | waye<br>babe          | hali<br>aye           | yai<br>zazi           | sasi<br>zazi           | lwala<br>zazi          | wau<br>yai            | baku<br>no plur.      |
|  |                         |                       |                       |                       |                       |                        |                        |                       | kwaku<br>no plur.     |
| Perfect tense (variety 1). I have loved. |                         |                       |                       |                       |                       |                        |                        |                       |                       |
| tandile<br>or<br>tande                   | ngi<br>si               | u<br>ni               | u<br>ba               | li<br>a               | i<br>i                | si<br>zi               | lu<br>zi               | u<br>i                | ku<br>no plur.        |
| Perfect tense (variety 2).               |                         |                       |                       |                       |                       |                        |                        |                       |                       |
| tanda<br>tanda                           | ngaye (ku)<br>siye (ku) | uye (ku)<br>niye (ku) | aye (ku)<br>baye (ku) | liye (ku)<br>aye (ku) | iyi (ku)<br>ziye (ku) | siye (ku)<br>ziye (ku) | laye (ku)<br>ziye (ku) | niye (ku)<br>iye (ku) | kuyo (ku)<br>no plur. |
| Perfect tense (variety 2, contr.)        |                         |                       |                       |                       |                       |                        |                        |                       |                       |
| tanda<br>tanda                           | ngiyo<br>siyo           | niyo<br>niyo          | niyo<br>bayo          | liyo<br>ayo           | iyiyo<br>ziyo         | siyo<br>ziyo           | layo<br>ziyo           | niyo<br>iyo           | kuyo<br>no plur.      |
| Pluperfect tense. had loved.             |                         |                       |                       |                       |                       |                        |                        |                       |                       |
| tandile<br>tandile                       | hengi<br>besi           | niha<br>hani          | nihe<br>bebe          | hengi<br>abe          | ihini<br>bezi         | besi<br>bezi           | hengi<br>bezi          | niha<br>ihini         | hengi<br>no plur.     |

## 15. (Continued).

TABLE OF INDICATIVE MOOD, ACTIVE VOICE.

| Root.   | 1. P.                  | 2. P.               | 3. P.               | 3. P.               | 3. P.               | 3. P.                | 3. P.                | 3. P.              | 3. P.                |
|---|------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|----------------------|----------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| First-future tense. I shall love.                   |                        |                     |                     |                     |                     |                      |                      |                    |                      |
| tanda<br>tanda                                      | ngiyaku<br>siyaku      | uyaku<br>niyaku     | uyaku<br>bayaku     | liyaku<br>ayaku     | iyaku<br>ziyaku     | siyaku<br>ziyaku     | liyaku<br>ziyaku     | uyaku<br>iyaku     | buyaku<br>no plur.   |
| First-future tense, progressive. I shall be loving. |                        |                     |                     |                     |                     |                      |                      |                    |                      |
| tanda<br>tanda                                      | ngiyakuba<br>siyakuba  | uyakuba<br>niyakuba | uyakuba<br>bayakuba | liyakuba<br>ayakuba | iyakuba<br>ziyakuba | siyakuba<br>ziyakuba | liyakuba<br>ziyakuba | uyakuba<br>iyakuba | buyakuba<br>no plur. |
| First-future tense, promissive. I will love.        |                        |                     |                     |                     |                     |                      |                      |                    |                      |
| tanda<br>tanda                                      | ngo<br>so              | wo<br>bo            | wo<br>bo            | lo<br>o             | yo<br>zo            | so<br>zo             | lwo<br>zo            | wo<br>yo           | kwo<br>no plur.      |
| Second-future tense. I shall have loved.            |                        |                     |                     |                     |                     |                      |                      |                    |                      |
| tanda<br>tanda                                      | ngiyakuba<br>siyakuba  | uyakuba<br>niyakuba | uyakuba<br>bayakuba | liyakuba<br>ayakuba | iyakuba<br>ziyakuba | siyakuba<br>ziyakuba | liyakuba<br>ziyakuba | uyakuba<br>iyakuba | buyakuba<br>no plur. |
| Infective tense. I should or would love.            |                        |                     |                     |                     |                     |                      |                      |                    |                      |
| tanda<br>tanda                                      | hengiyaku<br>bestiyaku | ubuyaku<br>beyaku   | ubeyaku<br>bebeyaku | beliyaku<br>abeyaku | ibiyaku<br>beziyaku | besiyaku<br>beziyaku | beliyaku<br>beziyaku | ubuyaku<br>ibiyaku | beluyaku<br>no plur. |

15. (Continued).  
VARIETIES OF THE ROOT OF THE PASSIVE VOICE.

| Verb.  | Present tense.  | Past tense.   | Perfect tense.  | Imperfect tense.  | First fut. tnc.   | Second future.  | Ineffective.  |
|--|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| tandla<br>tabola<br>bamla<br>hlupa<br>tuna<br>bubisa | tandwa<br>tatyatwa<br>banwa<br>hlutywa<br>tunywa<br>bujiswa | tandwa<br>tatyatwa<br>banwa<br>hlutywa<br>tunywa<br>bujiswa | tandiwe<br>tatyatiwe<br>banjiwe<br>hlutywe<br>tunywe<br>bujiswe | tandiwe<br>tatyatiwe<br>banjiwe<br>hlutywe<br>tunywe<br>bujiswe | tandwa<br>tatyatwa<br>banwa<br>hlutywa<br>tunywa<br>bujiswa | tandiwe<br>tatyatiwe<br>banjiwe<br>hlutywe<br>tunywe<br>bujiswe | tandwa<br>tatyatwa<br>banwa<br>hlutywa<br>tunywa<br>bujiswa |

16. (Continued).  
TABLE OF THE INDICATIVE MOOD, (NEGATIVE).

| Root.                             | 1. P.           | 2. P.         | 3. P.         | 3. P.                   | 3. P.         | 3. P.          | 3. P.          | 3. P.           | 3. P.             |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------|---------------|---------------|-------------------------|---------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| Present participle. I not loving. |                 |               |               |                         |               |                |                |                 |                   |
| tandi<br>tandi                    | nginga<br>singa | unga<br>tinga | enga<br>benga | linga<br>cinga          | inga<br>zinga | singa<br>zinga | lunga<br>zinga | unga<br>inga    | kunga<br>no plur. |
| Present tense. I do not love.     |                 |               |               |                         |               |                |                |                 |                   |
| tandi<br>tandi                    | angi<br>asi     | au<br>ani     | aka<br>aba    | ali<br>aka<br>or<br>awa | ai<br>azi     | asi<br>azi     | alu<br>azi     | au<br>ai        | aku<br>no plur.   |
| Past tense. I did not love.       |                 |               |               |                         |               |                |                |                 |                   |
| tanda<br>tanda                    | anga<br>a-a     | akwa<br>ana   | aka<br>aba    | ala<br>aka              | aya<br>aza    | asa<br>aza     | awa<br>aza     | aba<br>no plur. | akwa<br>no plur.  |

## 16. (Continued).

TABLE OF INDICATIVE MOOD, (NEGATIVE).

| Root.                                      | 1. P.                | 2. P.              | 3. P.                  | 3. P.                  | 3. P.               | 3. P.                 | 3. P.                | 3. P.                 | 3. P.                 |
|--|----------------------|--------------------|------------------------|------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| Past-progressive. I was not loving.        |                      |                    |                        |                        |                     |                       |                      |                       |                       |
| tandi<br>tandi                             | benginga<br>benginga | ubunga<br>benginga | ubunga<br>bebenga      | belinga<br>abenga      | ibinga<br>bezinga   | belinga<br>bezinga    | ubunga<br>ibinga     | belinga<br>bezinga    | bebunga<br>no plur.   |
| Perfect tense. I have not loved.           |                      |                    |                        |                        |                     |                       |                      |                       |                       |
| tandile<br>or<br>tandle                    | angi<br>asi          | au<br>ani          | aka<br>aba             | ali<br>awa             | ai<br>azi           | asi<br>azi            | au<br>ai             | abu<br>no plur.       | aku<br>no plur.       |
| * Perfect tense (contr.) I have not loved. |                      |                    |                        |                        |                     |                       |                      |                       |                       |
| tanda<br>tanda                             | angiyo<br>asiyo      | auyo<br>aniyo      | akayo<br>abayo         | aliyo<br>awayo         | aiyo<br>aziyo       | asiyo<br>aziyo        | auyo<br>aiyo         | abuyo<br>no plur.     | akuyo<br>no plur.     |
| Pluperfect tense. I had not loved.         |                      |                    |                        |                        |                     |                       |                      |                       |                       |
| tandile<br>tandle                          | benginga<br>benginga | ubunga<br>benginga | ubunga<br>bebenga      | belinga<br>abenga      | ibinga<br>bezinga   | belinga<br>bezinga    | ubunga<br>ibinga     | belinga<br>bezinga    | bebunga<br>no plur.   |
| First-future tense. I shall not love.      |                      |                    |                        |                        |                     |                       |                      |                       |                       |
| tanda<br>tandi                             | anayikulu<br>asiyiku | auyiku<br>aniyiku  | akayikulu<br>abayikulu | aliyikulu<br>awayikulu | ayikulu<br>azyikulu | asiyikulu<br>azyikulu | auyikulu<br>azyikulu | abuyikulu<br>no plur. | akuyikulu<br>no plur. |

\* This form is frequently used for - Let me, us, &amp;c., go and love.

## 16. (Continued).

## TABLE OF INDICATIVE MOOD, (NEGATIVE).

| Root.  | 1. P.                             | 2. P.                     | 3. P.                        | 3. P.                       | 3. P.                     | 3. P.                       | 3. P.                       | 3. P.                    | 3. P.                    |
|--|-----------------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| Second-future tense. I shall not have loved.   |                                   |                           |                              |                             |                           |                             |                             |                          |                          |
| tandile<br>tandile                             | an-yi-yi-tuba ngi<br>asiyikuba si | anyikuba u<br>anyikuba ni | akayi-tuba e<br>abayikuba be | aliyikuba li<br>awayikuba e | aiyikuba i<br>azyikuba zi | a-zyikuba si<br>azyikuba zi | aluyikuba lu<br>azyikuba zi | auyikuba u<br>auyikuba i | abuyikuba bu<br>no plur. |
| Ineffective tense. I should or would not love. |                                   |                           |                              |                             |                           |                             |                             |                          |                          |
| tanda<br>tanda                                 | bengingayiku<br>besingayiku       | ubungayiku<br>beningayiku | ubengayiku<br>bebengayiku    | belingayiku<br>abengayiku   | ibingayiku<br>bezingayiku | besingayiku<br>bezingayiku  | belungayiku<br>bezingayiku  | ubungayiku<br>ibingayiku | bebungayiku<br>no plur.  |
|  |                                   |                           |                              |                             |                           |                             |                             |                          | lekungayiku<br>no plur.  |

## 17.

## TABLE OF POTENTIAL MOOD, (AFFIRMATIVE).

| Root.  | 1. P.           | 2. P.         | 3. P.         | 3. P.         | 3. P.         | 3. P.          | 3. P.          | 3. P.        | 3. P.             |
|--|-----------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|----------------|--------------|-------------------|
| Present tense. 1. I may, can, &c., love.     |                 |               |               |               |               |                |                |              |                   |
| tanda<br>tanda                               | nginga<br>singa | unga<br>nunga | anga<br>banga | linga<br>anga | inga<br>zunga | singa<br>zinga | lunga<br>zinga | unga<br>inga | bunga<br>no plur. |
| Present tense. 2. I should, ought (to) love. |                 |               |               |               |               |                |                |              |                   |
| tanda<br>tanda                               | ngangi<br>ngasi | ngau<br>ngani | ngae<br>ugae  | ngali<br>ngae | ngzi<br>ngavi | ngasi<br>ngazi | ngalu<br>ngazi | ngau<br>ngai | ngaku<br>no plur. |

17. (Continued).  
TABLE OF POTENTIAL MOOD, (AFFIRMATIVE).

| Root.  | 1. P.                 | 2. P.               | 3. P.               | 3. P.               | 3. P.               | 3. P.                | 3. P.                | 3. P.              | 3. P.                |
|--|-----------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|----------------------|----------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| Past tense. I might, could, &c., love.                 |                       |                     |                     |                     |                     |                      |                      |                    |                      |
| tanda<br>tanda   | bebinga<br>besinga    | ubunga<br>beninga   | abenga<br>bebenga   | belinga<br>abenga   | ibinga<br>bezinga   | besinga<br>bezinga   | belunga<br>bezinga   | ubunga<br>ibinga   | bekunga<br>no plur.  |
| TABLE OF POTENTIAL MOOD, (NEGATIVE).                   |                       |                     |                     |                     |                     |                      |                      |                    |                      |
| Present tense. 1. (a.) I may, can, &c., not love.      |                       |                     |                     |                     |                     |                      |                      |                    |                      |
| tande<br>tande   | anginge<br>asinge     | aunge<br>aunge      | akange<br>abange    | alinge<br>awange    | ainge<br>awinge     | asinge<br>azinge     | alunge<br>azinge     | aunge<br>ainge     | akunge<br>no plur.   |
| Present tense. 1. (b.) I may, can, &c., not love.      |                       |                     |                     |                     |                     |                      |                      |                    |                      |
| tande<br>tande   | nginge<br>singe       | unge<br>ninge       | ange<br>bange       | linge<br>ange       | inge<br>zinge       | singe<br>zinge       | hunge<br>zinge       | unge<br>inge       | kunge<br>no plur.    |
| Present tense. 2. I should, ought, &c., not (to) love. |                       |                     |                     |                     |                     |                      |                      |                    |                      |
| tandi<br>tandi   | nganginga<br>nga-inga | ngaunga<br>nganunga | ngaanga<br>ngabanga | ngalinga<br>ngaanga | ngainga<br>ngazinga | ngasinga<br>ngazinga | ngalunga<br>ngazinga | ngaunga<br>ngaanga | ngakunga<br>no plur. |
| Past tense. I might, could, &c., not love.             |                       |                     |                     |                     |                     |                      |                      |                    |                      |
| tande<br>tande   | becinge<br>besinge    | ubunge<br>benunge   | abenge<br>bebenge   | belinge<br>abenge   | ibinge<br>beninge   | besinge<br>beninge   | belunge<br>beninge   | ubunge<br>ibunge   | bekunge<br>no plur.  |



## 21.

## INFINITIVE MOGD.

Ukutanda, to love.

## 22.

1. Causative verbs are formed by inserting *is* before the final *a*.

(a.) Verbs ending in *la* make their causatives by changing *la* into *za*.

(b.) And some in *ka* by changing *ka* into *sa*.

2. Objective verbs are formed by inserting *el* before the final *a* of the simple form.

3. Reflective verbs are formed by placing *zi* immediately before the root.

4. Reciprocal verbs are formed by inserting *uu* before the final *a* of the simple form.

5. For the formation of the passive voice of the above verbs consult the preceding tables.

---



# ENGLISH-ZULU DICTIONARY.

## A.

Abandon, *v.* lahla.  
 Abide, *v.* sala.  
 Abode, *n.* indhlu, ikaya.  
 Above, (higher in place) *adv.* enhla.  
 „ (high up) pezulu.  
 Abridge, *v.* finyeza.  
 Abstemious person, *n.* inneculu.  
 Abound in, *v.* vama.  
 About, *adv.* nga.  
 Abstain, *v.* (from food) zila.  
 „ (desist) yeka.  
 Abundance, *n.* insudu.  
 Abundant, *adj.* ningi.  
 Abundantly, *adv.* kaningi.  
 Accompany, *v.t.* pelekezela.  
 Acid, *adj.* munen.  
 Act, *v.* enza.  
 „ (devoutly) temeleza.  
 „ (as one ashamed) nyoboza.  
 Act foolishly, *v.* puknza.  
 Act wickedly, *v.* shinga.  
 „ (with reticence) ziba.  
 Action, *n.* isenzo.  
 Actually, *adv.* ingatinjalo.  
 Address, *v.* (superior by P.name) gazula.  
 Adhere, *v.* namatela.  
 Admire, *v.* tanda.  
 Admiration, *n.* ntando.  
 Admiration, *int.* wo!  
 Admonish, *v.* yala.  
 Admonisher, *n.* umyali.  
 Adorn, *v.* vunula.  
 Adulator, *n.* umabazi.  
 Adultery, (to commit) *v.* pinga.  
 Adviser, *n.* umluleki.  
 Affair, *n.* indaba.  
 „ (difficult) ingongolo.

Affirm, *v.* tyo.  
 Afflict, *v.* hlupa.  
 After, *adv.* (of place) emuva.  
 „ (of time) ekudhluleni kwa.  
 Afternoon (in, &c.), entamlama.  
 Again, *adv.* futi.  
 Agitate, (as water), *v.* dunga.  
 Ague, *n.* ufehlane.  
 Alas! *int.* maye!  
 All, *a.* onke.  
 Alligator, *n.* ingwenya.  
 Allot, *v.* aba.  
 Allow, *v.* vuma.  
 Also, *conj.* na.  
 Although, *conj.* nakuba, ingati.  
 Altogether, *adv.* (in one place) ndawonye.  
 „ (simultaneously) kanye-  
 kanye.  
 Uncle, *n.* iqakala.  
 And, *conj.* na.  
 Angry, *v.* tukutela.  
 Angry person, *n.* isififane.  
 Animal, *n.* isilo.  
 Annoy, *v.* kataza, hlukumeza.  
 Anoint, *v.* geoba.  
 Another, one, *adj.* nye.  
 Ants, *n.* (white) umuhlwa.  
 „ (black) izipompolo.  
 Appear, *v.* bonakala.  
 „ (as an eruption) qamuka.  
 Approach, *v.* sondela.  
 Arise, *v.* vuka.  
 Arm, *n.* ingalo.  
 Arm pit, *n.* ikwapa.  
 Arrive, *v.* fika.  
 Army, *n.* impi.  
 As, *conj.* njenga.  
 Arrow, *n.* umcibityelo.

Ask, *v.* (interrogate) buza.  
 „ (demand) biza.  
 „ (request) cela.  
 „ (beg) nqiba.  
 Ascend, *v.* enyuka, kupuka.  
 Ashes, *n.* (wood) umlota.  
 „ (to collect), *v.* wola.  
 Assassin, *n.* inswelaboya.  
 Assemble, *v.* hlangana.  
 Assuaged (to be), *v.* (as pain) lalalisa.  
 At-noon, *adv.* emmini.  
 At-once, *adv.* konamanje.  
 At-the-side, *adv.* eluhlangotini.  
 At-that-time, *adv.* ngalesosikati.  
 At-the-entrance, *adv.* emnyango.  
 Attack, *v.* sukela.  
 Attack, (in friendly disguise) *v.* bubuya.  
 Attend to, *v.* qapela.  
 Aunt, *n.* (maternal) umamekazi.  
 Awaken, *v.* vusa.  
 Away, *v.* (take) susa.  
 „ (get) suka.  
 „ (go) emuka.  
 Away! *int.* iya!  
 Awl, *n.* usungulo.

## B.

Bachelor, *n.* isoka.  
 „ (rejected by girls) isizeke.  
 Back, *n.* umhlana.  
 Backbone, *n.* umhloza.  
 Bad, *adj.* bi.  
 Badly (to play), *v.* (as organ) gumbuza.  
 Badly, *adv.* kubi, kabi.  
 Bale, *n.* (as of goods) munfuto.  
 Ball, *n.* indilinga.  
 Bark, *n.* (of a tree) ixolo.  
 Bark, *v.* (like a dog) konkota.  
 Base person, *n.* ishinga.  
 Bashfulness, *n.* izinhloni.  
 Basin, *n.* isitya.  
 Bask, *v.* (in the sun) etamela.  
 Basket, *n.* (large) isihulu.  
 „ (small) imbenge.  
 „ (by which mealies are sold) iqoma.  
 Bat, *n.* (an animal) isihlwitandhlebe.  
 Bay, *n.* iteku.  
 Be, *aux. v.* ba.  
 Be accustomed to, *v.* jwayela.

Beach, *n.* usebe.  
 Beads, *n.* ubuhlalu.  
 „ (red) umgazi.  
 „ (black) isitimani.  
 „ (dark green) ibuma.  
 „ (pink) imfibinga.  
 „ (white) itambo.  
 „ (yellow) incombó.  
 Beam, *n.* umjanjato.  
 Be anxious, *v.* piseka.  
 Beard, *n.* isilevu.  
 Beat, *v.* (as the pulse) gquma.  
 Beat, *v.* tyaya.  
 Beautiful, *adj.* hle.  
 Be bitter, *v.* laba.  
 Be astringent, *v.* tywaqa.  
 Because, *conj.* ngoba, ngokuba.  
 Be clever, *v.* hlakanipha.  
 Be conscious of, *v.* i. zinyeza.  
 Become, *v.* ba.  
 Become cool, *v.* pola.  
 Be contented, *v.* enama.  
 Be dreadful, *v.* esabeka.  
 Bee, *n.* inyosi.  
 Beer, *n.* (Kafir) utywala.  
 Be economical, *v.* onga.  
 Be ended, *v.* (ukuti) bobo.  
 Be firm, *v.* qina.  
 Before, *adv.* pambili.  
 „ (of time) singekafiki.  
 Beg, *v.* nqiba.  
 „ (coax) ncenga.  
 Begin, *v.* qala.  
 Be glad, *v.* jabula.  
 Begrimed (to be), *v.* nycpa.  
 Behave impudently, *v.* ganga.  
 Behave modestly, *v.* hlaniqa.  
 Be heartbroken, *v.* dabuka.  
 Behind, *adv.* kamuya.  
 Be hungry, *v.* lamba.  
 Be imperfectly cooked, *v.* gangubala.  
 Be indolent, *v.* vilapa, enqena.  
 Be in a difficulty, *v.* xabeka.  
 Be in earnest about a work, *v.* copela.  
 Be industrious, *v.* kutala.  
 Be ironical, *v.* qanga.  
 Be insane, *v.* hlanya.  
 Believe, *v.* kolwa.  
 Be low in spirits, *v.* yeta.

Belch, *v.* bohla.  
 Be low, (as setting sun) *v.* (ukuti) te, te, te.  
 Yellow, *v.* konya.  
 Below, *adv.* pantsi, enzansi.  
 Belly, *n.* isisu.  
 Be mouldy, *v.* kunta.  
 Be needy, *v.* dinga.  
 Bend, *v.* gobisa.  
 Be perfectly still, *v.* (ukuti) ewaka.  
 Be possessed of live-stock, *v.* fuya.  
 Be quiet, *v.* tula.  
 Be red, (as the sky) *v.* beja.  
 Be recovered from sickness, *v.* puluka.  
 Be sick, *v.* gula, fa.  
 Bewitch, *v.* takata.  
 Bile, *n.* inuyongo.  
 Biltong, *n.* umqamba.  
 Bind, *v.* bopa.  
 Bird, *n.* inyoni.  
 Birlline, *n.* innevu.  
 Blab, *v.* pazuka.  
 Black, *adj.* mnyama.  
 Blackberry, *n.* ijingijolo.  
 Bladder, *n.* isinye.  
 Blame, *v.* jezisa, sola.  
 Blanket, *n.* ingubo.  
 Blessing, *n.* inhlamla.  
 Blindness, *n.* ubumpumpute.  
 Blind person, *n.* impumpute.  
 Blind (to make), *v.* mpumputekisa.  
 Blood, *n.* igazi.  
 Bloom, (as flower) *v.* kahlela.  
 Blow the nose, *v.* finya.  
 „ fire, *v.* vutela.  
 „ (as the wind) pepeta.  
 Blue, *adj.* lublaza.  
 Blunt, *adj.* butuntu.  
 Bluff at D'Urban, *n.* isibubulungu.  
 Body, *n.* umzimba.  
 Bog, *n.* nbityi.  
 Boil, *v.* bila.  
 „ (over) pupuma.  
 Boil, *n.* itumba.  
 Bone, *n.* itambo.  
 Book, *n.* innewadi.  
 Born (the first), *n.* izibulo.  
 Bosom, *n.* isifuba.  
 Bother, *v.* hlusa.  
 Bottle, *n.* igaba.

Bottom, *n.* (as of a vessel) isiqu.  
 Boundary, *n.* umkaulo.  
 Bow, *v.* toba.  
 Bowel, *n.* umbilini.  
 Bowl, *n.* isitya.  
 Box, *n.* umpongolo.  
 Boy, *n.* umfana.  
 Braggart, *n.* iintwesi.  
 Brain, *n.* ubucopo.  
 Branch, *n.* (of a tree) ingaba.  
 „ (of a stream) imbaxa.  
 Brave (to be), *v.* kalipa.  
 Brave man, *n.* iqawe.  
 Bread, *n.* isinkwa.  
 Break, *v.* (as a fog) damuka.  
 „ (as the fast) (ukuti) mpuya.  
 „ (off, as bread) hlepula.  
 „ (wind) suza.  
 „ (as a plate) apula.  
 „ (as new ground) qita.  
 „ (be broken) apuka.  
 „ (down in work) botoza.  
 „ (in pieces) pahlaza.  
 „ (loose) gulugudela.  
 „ (through, as fence) fohla.  
 „ (out into a cry) dazuluka.  
 Breast, *n.* isifuba, ibele.  
 Breathe, *v.* pefanula.  
 Bride, *n.* umakoti.  
 Bridegroom, *n.* umyeni.  
 Bridle, *n.* itome.  
 Brother, *n.* umzalwane.  
 Brown, *adj.* mpofa.  
 Bruise, *n.* isixwazi.  
 Buffalo-river, *n.* u Mzinyati.  
 Build, *v.* aka.  
 Bull, *n.* inkunzi.  
 „ (spine of) isixanti.  
 Bully, *v.* vubula.  
 Burn, *v.* tyisa.  
 „ (grass around hut) labola.  
 Burst, *v.* (into laughter) qamuka.  
 Business, *n.* imiriba.  
 But, *conj.* kodwa, kanti.  
 Butcher's shop, *n.* isihara.  
 But notwithstanding, *conj.* kanti noko.  
 Buttermilk, *n.* umbobe.  
 Button, *v.* (as a coat) rilela.  
 „ *n.* inkinopo.

Buy, *v.* tenga.

By the river, *adv.* ogwini.

Buzz, as a bee, *v.* buza.

## C.

Cable, *n.* umgungquluza, umgongqolozi.

Calf, *n.* inkonyane.

Calico (blue), *n.* utyodo.

Call, *v.* biza.

Calm, *v.* (to be) tula.

Calmly, *adv.* ngenyewe.

Camp, *n.* ingunji.

Candle, *n.* isibane.

„ (to light) *v.* oka.

Cannibal, *n.* izimu.

Captain, *n.* inkosi.

Careful (to be), *v.* cotomezela.

Careless person, *n.* isideleli.

Cargo, *n.* intuto.

Carry, *v.* (as a burden) twala.

„ (in the hand) pata.

Cart, *n.* ingqumbana, ingqumbana.

Carver, *n.* umqobi.

Case, *n.* (criminal, &c.) icala.

Cast away, *v.* lahla.

„ „ *n.* imbuqa.

Catch, *v.* (fish) loba.

• Catch, *v.* (as a ball) enqaka.

Cattle, *n.* izinkomo.

Cattle-fold, *n.* isibaya.

Cattle-track, *n.* umzila.

Cause, *v.* banga.

Cause to rest, *v.* pumusa.

Cause to drink, *v.* puzisa.

Cave, *n.* umpandu.

Cease, *v.* peza, yeka.

Centre, *n.* ipakati.

Certain, *adj.* tile.

Certain kind of grass, *n.* ubabe.

Chaff, *n.* amakoba.

Change, *v.* (as money) tyentyisa.

Chapter, *n.* isahluko.

Cheek, *n.* isihlati.

Chew, *v.* hlafuna.

„ (the end) etyisa.

Chief, *n.* inkosi.

Chief man at kraal, *n.* ummuduzana.

Chignon (native), *n.* isicolo.

Child, *n.* umntwana.

Chip of wood, *n.* ibazelo.

Choke, *v.* gwaliza.

Choose, *v.* keta.

Churn, *v.* pehla.

Circle, *v.* (to make) yingiliza.

„ *n.* isiyinge.

Circuitous path, *n.* izombe.

Circumcise, *v.* soka.

Claw, *n.* uzipo.

Clay, *n.* ibumba.

Clean, *v.* geza, sula.

Clean the teeth, *v.* londonya.

Clear, *v.* (the ground of grass) centa.

Clever person, *n.* indwelemane.

Climb, *v.* kwela.

Close, (as a door) *v.* vala.

Clot of blood, *n.* ihlule.

Cloud, *n.* ilifu.

Cloudy (to be), *v.* sitibala.

Coat, *n.* ibantyi.

Cockroach, *n.* ipela.

Cold, *n.* (sickness) umkuhlane.

„ (weather) amakaza.

Collect, *v.* buta.

Collection, *n.* (money) munikelo.

Comb, *n.* ikama.

Come, *v.* za, eza.

„ (down) ehla.

„ (away from) shiya.

„ (back) buya.

„ (in) ugena.

„ (from) vela.

„ (near) sondela.

„ (out, as a nail) kumuka.

„ (together) hlanguka.

„ (to an end) pela.

„ (on business) babala.

Comfortable (to be), *v.* newaba, onwaba.

Commands, *n.* imiyalo.

Company, *n.* (of men) ibandhla.

Compassionate, *v.* raukela.

Complain, *v.* sola.

Complete, *v.* feza, qeda.

Compliments (to send), *v.* konzela.

Compress lips firmly, *v.* euta.

Compress, *v.* (as elastic thing) kacoza.

Conceal, *v.* fihla.

Condemn, *v.* jezisa.

Conduct, *v.* kapa.

Conductor, *n.* umkapi.  
 Confide, *v.* temba.  
 Confuse in reckoning, *v.* didakalisa.  
 Congella, *n.* u Kongela.  
 Conquer, *v.* ngqoba.  
 Conqueror, *n.* umnqobi.  
 Conscience, *n.* unembeza.  
 Consent, *v.* vuma.  
 Conspiracy, *n.* isigungu.  
 Contend, *v.* pika.  
 Continually so, *adv.* kunjalonjalo.  
 Contradictory person, *n.* isipikeleli.  
 Convey, *v.* tuta.  
 Cook, *v.* peka.  
 Cool, *v.* (to be) pola.  
 Corner, *n.* igumbi, ingosi.  
 Cough, *v.* kohlela.  
 Count, *v.* bala.  
 Cousin, *n.* umzala.  
 Covenant, *n.* uvumelano.  
 Cover, *v.* sibekela.  
 Cover, *n.* isisibekelo.  
 Cow, *n.* inkomo.  
 „ (without horns) insizwakazi.  
 „ (milked without calf) isigudo.  
 Coward, *n.* igwala.  
 Cow-dung, *n.* (fresh) ubulongwe.  
 „ (dry) ilongwe.  
 „ (trodden down) umquba.  
 Crab, *n.* inkalakale.  
 Crack, *v.* (as a whip) pwiqila.  
 Crafty person, *n.* iqili.  
 Cram, *v.* xutya.  
 Cramp, *n.* inkwashu.  
 Crane, *n.* unohemn, indwa.  
 Crawl, *v.* (as a child) kasu.  
 „ (as an insect) nabuzela.  
 Cream, *n.* ulaza.  
 Create, *v.* dabula, dala.  
 Cross, (as a ford) *v.* wela.  
 Crouch upon the hams, *v.* qotyama.  
 Crow, *n.* igwababa.  
 Crumble, *v.* i. butuka.  
 Crush, *v.* fihliza, fohloza.  
 Cry, *v.* kala.  
 „ (a long time) gweneneza.  
 Current, *n.* umsinga.  
 Custom, *n.* umkuba.  
 Cut, *v.* sika.

Cut, *v.* (off) nquma.  
 „ (as firewood) teza.  
 „ (as hail) vikiza.  
 „ (as the skin) zaula.  
 Cutaneous eruption, *n.* ukwekwe.  
 Cutaneous sores, *n.* utwai.  
 Cuttle-fish, *n.* inngwane.

## D.

Daily, *adv.* ngemibla.  
 Dance, *v.* sina.  
 Dangle, *v.* jika.  
 Daughter, *n.* indodakazi.  
 Dawn, *v.* sa, esa.  
 Day, *n.* ilanga.  
 „ (twenty-four hours) usuku.  
 Day-time, *n.* (morning) kusasa.  
 „ (early) ekuseni.  
 „ (noon) immini.  
 Day before yesterday, *adv.* kutangi.  
 Dayafterto-morrow, *adv.* ngomhlomunye.  
 Deaf person, *n.* isitulu.  
 Dear me! *int.* mame!  
 Death, *n.* ukufa.  
 Debt, *n.* icala, isikweleti.  
 Decline to comply, *v.* landula.  
 Defect (a), *n.* insiyana.  
 Deficiency, *n.* isikope.  
 Delay, *v.* libala.  
 Denude, *v.* (body, publicly) dalazela.  
 Depart, *v.* emuka.  
 Destroy, *v.* tyabalalisa.  
 Detain, *v.* bambezela.  
 Device, *n.* icebo.  
 Dew, *n.* amazolo.  
 Dewlap, *n.* ubiŀo.  
 Dilatory person, *n.* isilibazi.  
 Dilute, *v.* hlambulula.  
 Dig, *v.* mba.  
 Dip water, *v.* ka.  
 Dirt inside the nails, *n.* isiqumbu.  
 Disabled (to be), *v.* jielwa.  
 Discharge, (as a wound) *v.* cica.  
 Dismount, *v.* ehlika.  
 Dissembler, *n.* umzenzisi.  
 Disperse, *v.* hlakaza.  
 Distract, *v.* tikimeza.  
 Ditch, *n.* unsele.  
 Dive, (as in water) *v.* cwila.

Do, *v.* enza.  
 „ (an unprofitable work) gunguluza.  
 Do not, *v.* musa.  
 Do, *v.* (over again) buyekeza.  
 „ (nothing but) anela.  
 „ (wrong) ona.  
 „ (one's best) gabavuleka.  
 Doctor, *n.* umclapi, imnyanga.  
 Dog, *n.*inja.  
 „ (wild) inkentyana.  
 Doll, *n.* isitombe.  
 Door, *n.* isicapa, isivalo.  
 Doormat, *n.* isidhlalandhlanzinyawo.  
 Doorway, *n.* umnyango.  
 Dough, *n.* indhlama.  
 Dove, *n.* ijuba.  
 Doze, *v.* ozela.  
 Drain off, *v.* fika.  
 Draw, (as a line) *v.* dweba.  
 Draw along the ground, *v.* rudula.  
 Drawl, *v.* nekenda.  
 Dream, *v.* pupa.  
 Dream, *n.* ipupo.  
 Drink, *v.* puza.  
 Drink, *n.* (made from mealies) igwele.  
 Drive away, *v.* xotya.  
 Drive away fowls, *v.* kwibiza.  
 Drive stakes in the ground, *v.* buxela.  
 Drone, *n.* uvongwe.  
 Drop, *n.* itosi.  
 Drown, *v.* minzisa.  
 Drum, *n.* isigubu.  
 Drunkard, *n.* isidakwa.  
 Dry, *v.* omisa.  
 Dry, *v.* (as pottery) kangula.  
 Dry fog, *n.* ufasimba.  
 Dry scarf, *n.* amakoko.  
 Dry up, (as cow) *v.* pusa.  
 Duck, *n.* idada.  
 Dumb person, *n.* isimungulu.  
 Dun for money, *v.* belesela.  
 Dung, *n.* (cattle) ubulongwe.  
 Dust, *v.* sula.  
 Dust, *n.* utuli.  
 Dutch boer, *n.* ibunu.  
 Dwarf, *n.* imbutyelana.  
 Dysentery, *n.* imbo.

## F.

Ear, *n.* indhlebe.  
 Early, *adv.* ekuseni.  
 Earnestly desire, *v.* fisa.  
 Earth, *n.* umhlaba.  
 East, *n.* impumalanga.  
 Eat, *v.* dlula.  
 „ (fast) mumuta.  
 „ (nice food) putuza.  
 Eating-mat, *n.* isitebe.  
 Echo, *v.* enanela.  
 Eel, *n.* umbokane.  
 Egg, *n.* iqanda.  
 Eggshell, *n.* igobongo.  
 Elbow, *n.* indololwane.  
 Elephant, *n.* indhlovu.  
 „ (to spout as), *v.* einsa.  
 Elephant's trunk, *n.* umboko.  
 Embrace, *v.* anga.  
 Emetic, *n.* umhlanziso.  
 Empty, *v.* tulula.  
 Enclose, *v.* (fence in) biyela.  
 Enclosure, *n.* (for mealies on the cob) ingobo.  
 End, *v.* qeda, pelisa.  
 Endeavour, *v.* linga.  
 Enemy, *n.* isita.  
 Englishman, *n.* ingisi.  
 Enlarge, *v.* (as a house) anula.  
 Enmity, *n.* inzondo.  
 Enough, *v.* (to be) anela.  
 Enquire, *v.* buza.  
 Enrage, *v.* tukutela.  
 Enter, *v.* ugena.  
 Entice, *v.* yenga.  
 Entrails, *n.* amatumbu.  
 Entrance, *n.* (of house) umnyango.  
 „ (of cattle-fold) isango.  
 Entrap, *v.* tiya.  
 Entreat, *v.* ncenga.  
 Envy, *n.* umona.  
 Envious, *adj.* nomona.  
 Epileptic fit, *n.* isitutwane.  
 Equal, *v.* linganisa.  
 Err, *v.* (mistake) posisa, pambeka.  
 „ (wander) duka.  
 Error, *n.* isiposiso.  
 Escape, *v.* (danger, &c.) sinda.  
 „ (hide) baca.  
 Evade, *v.* pepa.

Even, *v.* (to make) *linganisa*.  
 Evening, *n.* *ukuhlwa*.  
 „ (is beginning) *kuswelele*.  
 „ (is evening) *kuhlwile*.  
 Evening-star, *n.* *ucwazibe*, *isicelankobe*.  
 Evil, *v.* (to do) *ona*, *onakala*.  
 Evil, *n.* *ububi*.  
 Evil, *adj.* *bi*.  
 Evil-doer, *n.* *umoni*.  
 Evil-speaker, *n.* *umhlebi*.  
 Examine, *v.* (investigate) *buza*.  
 „ (inspect) *bekisisa*.  
 Example, *n.* *isilinganiso*.  
 Excavate, *v.* *mba*.  
 Exceed, *v.* *dblula*.  
 Excel, *v.* *ahlula*.  
 Except, *adv.* *kungeso*.  
 Exchange, *v.* *enana*.  
 Exhort, *v.* *yala*.  
 Exhortation, *n.* *isiyalo*.  
 Exist, *v.* (live) *pila*.  
 „ (as a mortal man) *hamba*.  
 Expand, *v.* (spread out) *eneka*.  
 „ (enlarge) *kulisa*.  
 Expire, *v.* (die) *fa*.  
 „ (come to an end) *pela*.  
 „ (breathe out) *pefumula*.  
 Explain, *v.* *tyela*, *azisa*.  
 Explain clearly, *v.* *hlambulula*.  
 Extinguish, *v.* *cima*.  
 Extol, *v.* *babaza*.  
 Eye, *n.* *iliso*.  
 Eyebrow, *n.* *isihiyi*.  
 Eyelash, *n.* *ukope*.  
 Eye, *n.* (of a needle) *intunja*.

## F.

Fable, *n.* *ingwanekwana*.  
 Face, *n.* *ubuso*.  
 Fade, *v.* (with) *buna*.  
 „ (lose colour) *fipala*.  
 Faeces, *n.* (hard) *umgama*.  
 Faint, *v.* *quleka*.  
 Faith, *n.* (belief) *ukukolwa*.  
 „ (trust) *itemba*.  
 Fall, *v.* *wa*.  
 Fall, *v.* (as snow) *kitika*.  
 „ (with a crash) *wolokohleka*.  
 „ (into a hole) *keleketela*.

Fall, *v.* (as water from cascade) *haza*.  
 „ (as fruit or leaves) *vutuluka*.  
 „ (short) *puta*.  
 Fall down, *v.* (as a wall) *dilika*.  
 Fall back, *v.* (as a horse) *genuka*.  
 Fallow-ground, *n.* *ifusi*.  
 Falsehood, *n.* *amanga*.  
 Family-quarrel, *n.* *umbango*.  
 Fancy (not to take), *v.* *tentesa*.  
 Far off, *adv.* *kude*, *le*.  
 Farm, *n.* *iplaze*.  
 Fat man, *n.* *isisekeseke*.  
 Fat, *n.* *amafuta*.  
 Fat, *v.* *kulupala*, *nona*.  
 Father, *n.* (my) *ubaba*.  
 „ (thy) *nyihlo*.  
 „ (his) *uyise*.  
 Fault, *n.* *icala*.  
 Fear, *v.* *esaba*.  
 Fear, *n.* *uvalo*, *ukwesaba*.  
 Fearfully, *adv.* *ngokwesabekayo*.  
 Feather, *n.* *upape*.  
 Feed, *v.* (as a child) *funza*.  
 Fence, *n.* *utango*.  
 Fence, *n.* (stone) *umtangala*.  
 Fence, *v.* (as a garden) *biya*.  
 Fence, *v.* (parry) *vika*.  
 Fencer, *n.* *imviki*.  
 Fern, *n.* (a kind of) *inhlinzafuku*.  
 Fertile (to be), *v.* *vunda*.  
 Fetch, *v.* *leta*.  
 Few, *adj.* *ngcozana*.  
 Fidgets, *n.* *amatezano*.  
 Fig, *n.* *ikiwane*.  
 Fig-tree, *n.* *umkiwane*.  
 Fight, *v.* *lwa*.  
 Fill, *v.* *gowalisa*.  
 „ (as a hole) *gqiba*.  
 Filter, *v.* *vova*.  
 Filth, *n.* *insila*.  
 Filthy, *adj.* *nensila*, *ngcolile*.  
 Filthy person, *n.* *inuka*.  
 Find, *v.* *fumana*.  
 Fine, *v.* (for a fault) *hlaulisa*.  
 „ (as the weather) *sa*, *cweba*.  
 „ (as flour) *coleka*.  
 Fine, *adj.* (as a person) *hle*.  
 „ (as the weather) *sile*.  
 „ (as meal) *colekile*.

Finger, *n.* umvuwe.  
 Finish, *v.* feza, qeda.  
 Fire, *n.* umlilo.  
 Fire, *v.* (as a gun) dubula.  
 „ (burn) tyisa.  
 „ (grass around hut) habela.  
 „ (obtain by friction) pehla.  
 Firefly, *n.* inkanyezi.  
 Fireplace, *n.* iziko.  
 Firestick, *n.* isikuni.  
 Firewood, *n.* izinkuni.  
 Firstfruits (to eat), *etywana*.  
 Fish, *v.* loba.  
 Fish, *n.* inhlanzi.  
 „ (scale of) inkwetu.  
 Fish-hook, *n.* udobo.  
 Fit, *adj.* fanele.  
 Five, *n.* isihlanu.  
 Five times, *adv.* kahlanu.  
 Fix, *v.* qinisa.  
 Fizz, *v.* (as fat) raraza.  
 Flame, *v.* vuta.  
 „ (as burning grass) bebeteka.  
 Flame, *n.* ilangabi.  
 Flap, *v.* (as the wings) wabazela.  
 Flash with anger, *v.* paiza.  
 Flash, *v.* (as lightning) baneka.  
 Flat, *n.* (level country) itafa.  
 „ (simpleton) isipukupuku.  
 Flatter, *v.* toboza.  
 Flea, *n.* izenze.  
 Flee, *v.* (run away) baleka.  
 Flesh, *n.* inyama.  
 Fling, *v.* ponsa.  
 Float, *v.* ntanta.  
 Flow over, *v.* cicima.  
 Fly, *v.* (as sparks) qantya.  
 „ (as a bird) ndiza.  
 „ (off, as splinters) jwiba.  
 Fly, *n.* impukane.  
 Foam, *v.* kihliza.  
 Foam, *n.* igwebu.  
 Fog, *n.* inkungu.  
 Fold, *v.* (as clothes) songa.  
 „ (as paper) peca.  
 Fold, *n.* (for cattle) isibaya.  
 Follow, *v.* landela.  
 „ (in age) elama.  
 Forasmuch as *adv.* lokupela.

Ford, *v.* wela.  
 Ford, *n.* izibuko.  
 Forearm, *n.* umkono.  
 Forehead, *n.* ibunzi.  
 For-ever-and-ever, *adv.* kuzekubepakade.  
 Foreskin, *n.* ijwabu.  
 Forest, *n.* ihlati.  
 Forget, *v.* kohlwa.  
 Forgive, *v.* tetelela, yekela.  
 Forsake, *v.* lahla.  
 Foundation, *n.* isisekelo.  
 Fountain, *n.* umtombo.  
 Four times, *adv.* kane.  
 Fowl, *n.* inkuku.  
 „ (basket) umono.  
 Fowl-lice, *n.* umknye.  
 Fowl-house, *n.* ifuku.  
 Friend, *n.* umhlobo.  
 Fright, *n.* uvalo.  
 Frog, *n.* iselesele.  
 Fruit, *n.* izitelo.  
 „ (unripe) igwanyana.  
 „ (of Natal plum) itungulu.  
 Full, *adj.* (as a vessel) ngeweke.  
 „ (as a person) suti.  
 Fur, *n.* uboya.  
 Furniture, *n.* impahla.  
 Furrow, *n.* umsele.  
 Furthermore, *adv.* kepa ke.

## G.

Gain, *v.* zuza.  
 Gain, *n.* inzuzo.  
 Gall, *n.* innuyongo.  
 Gall-bladder, *n.* innuyongo.  
 Game, *n.* (animals) inyamezana.  
 Gape, *v.* zumula.  
 Garden, *n.* insimu.  
 Garment, *n.* ingubo.  
 „ (very old) inikiniki.  
 Gate, *n.* isango.  
 Gather, *v.* (collect) buta.  
 „ (together) butana.  
 „ (crops) vuna.  
 „ (as the sky for a storm) hloma.  
 „ (fruit) ka.  
 „ (vegetables) fula.  
 Gaze at, *v.* buka.  
 Gaze earnestly at, *v.* qolozela.

- Generate, *v.* zala.  
 Generation, *n.* isizukulwana.  
 Gentle (to be), *v.* tamba.  
 Gentle, *adj.* tambile.  
 Germinate, *v.* mila.  
 Get, *v.* (obtain) zuza.  
 „ (down) hlika.  
 „ (up) vuka.  
 „ (away) suka.  
 „ (broken) qabuka.  
 „ (as a plate) apuka.  
 „ (chafed) putuka.  
 „ (out of the light) suduka.  
 „ (slipped out of grasp) punyuka.  
 „ (on a horse, climb a tree) kwela.  
 „ (to a place) fika.  
 „ (ready) lungisa.  
 „ (well, as a sore) pola.  
 „ (well after sickness) lulama, sinda.  
 „ (upon high ground) dundubala.  
 Giant, *n.* umdondoshiya.  
 Giddiness, *n.* isিয়েzi.  
 Gift, *n.* isipo.  
 Giraffe, *n.* indhlulamati.  
 Gird, *v.* binca.  
 Girl, *n.* (marriageable) intombi.  
 „ (little) intombazana.  
 „ (betrothed) ingoduso.  
 Give, *v.* pa, nika.  
 „ (as additional information) tasisela.  
 „ (more) engeza.  
 „ (very little) ncitya.  
 „ (attention) qapela.  
 „ (cattle for a girl) lobola.  
 „ (a charge) yaleza.  
 „ (profusely) hlalaza.  
 Gizzard, *n.* ingila.  
 Glad (to be), *v.* jabula.  
 „ (very) etaba.  
 Glad, *adj.* jabulayo.  
 Glare at, *v.* golozele.  
 Glass, *n.* (mirror) isibuko.  
 Glean, *v.* kotoza.  
 Glue, *n.* inhlaka.  
 Glutton, *n.* isiminzi.  
 Gnat, *n.* insensane.  
 Gnaw, *v.* gedhla.  
 Go, *v.* ya, hamba.  
 „ (away) emuka.  
 Go, *v.* (quickly) tyetya.  
 „ (to meet another) hlangabeza.  
 „ (up) enyuka, kupuka.  
 „ (near) sondela.  
 „ (home) goduka.  
 „ (in) ngena.  
 „ (on one leg) keleza.  
 „ (out) puma.  
 „ (out, as cattle) aluka.  
 „ (to a place of worship) sonta.  
 „ (aside) deda.  
 „ (with) pelekezela.  
 „ (into detail) ningiliza.  
 „ (smoothly, as a train) tantalaza.  
 „ (stealthily) nyelela.  
 „ (visit) tekela.  
 „ (astray) lahleka.  
 „ (on all fours) kasa.  
 „ (out, as a candle) cimeka.  
 „ (through a river) wele.  
 „ (leaning on a staff) simelela.  
 „ (in pursuit of) landa.  
 „ (follow) landela.  
 „ (back) bnya.  
 „ (very slowly) totoba.  
 „ (out to war) hlasela.  
 Goal, *n.* (for runner) umgomo.  
 Goat, *n.* imbuzi.  
 God, *n.* u Tixo.  
 Godhead, *n.* ubu Tixo.  
 Gold, *n.* imalibomvu.  
 Good (to be), *n.* lunga.  
 Good, *adj.* (sincere) qoto.  
 „ (morally) lungileyo.  
 „ (proper) faneleyo.  
 „ (kind) nomusa.  
 Good-fortune, *n.* inhlanhla.  
 Good-fellow, *n.* wetu.  
 Goose, *n.* ilowe.  
 Gooseberry, *n.* uqumquma.  
 Govern, *v.* busa.  
 Governor, *n.* umbusi.  
 Grain, *n.* inkhuny.  
 „ (as of wood) izinyama.  
 Grandchild, *n.* umzukulwana.  
 Grandfather, *n.* (my) ububakulu.  
 Grandmother, *n.* (his) ummakulu.  
 Grant, *v.* (consent) yuma.  
 Grass, *n.* utyani.

Grass, *n.* (old and dry) isikota.  
 „ (recently burnt) ihlungu.  
 „ (thatching) isiqunga, unitala.  
 „ (guinea) ubabe.  
 Grave, *n.* ituna.  
 Gravel, *n.* isihlabati.  
 Gravy, *n.* umhluzi.  
 Grease, *n.* anafuta.  
 Green, *adj.* luhlaza.  
 Greet, *v.* (salute) bingelela.  
 „ (send compliments) konzela.  
 Greytown, *n.* um Gungundhlovana.  
 Grey, *adj.* ngwevu.  
 Grey hairs, *n.* izimvi.  
 Grief, *n.* ubuhlungu, usizi, isikomololo.  
 Grieve, *v.* (weep) lila  
 „ (sob) lingoza.  
 „ (heart-broken) dabuka.  
 „ (noisily) kala.  
 „ (interjection) maye!  
 Grin, *v.* sineka.  
 Grind, *v.* (corn) gaya.  
 „ (coarsely) qazula.  
 „ (finely) colisa.  
 „ (boiled-corn) potula.  
 „ (as a tool) lola.  
 „ (as the teeth) gugnda.  
 Grindstone, *n.* umloiwazi.  
 Gristle, *n.* inhlali.  
 Groin, *n.* imbilapo.  
 Groove, *n.* inkoto.  
 Grow, *v.* (as plants) hluma, mhi.  
 „ (as people) kula.  
 „ (tall) depa.  
 „ (old) guga.  
 „ (fat) kulupala.  
 „ (lean) zaca.  
 „ (light) sa.  
 „ (dark) swelela.  
 Growl, *v.* (as a dog) gwavuma.  
 Grumble, *v.* kononda.  
 „ (in a low voice) vungunyeka.  
 Guardian of children, *n.* umondhli.  
 Guide, *v.* kapa.  
 Guide, *n.* mukapi.  
 Guilt, *n.* icala.  
 Gum, *n.* inhiaka.  
 Gum of the plants, *n.* insini.

Gun, *n.* isibamu.  
 Gunpowder, *n.* umsizi.

## H.

Habit (to become), *v.* hlonzala.  
 Habit *n.* (custom) umkuba.  
 Habitation, *n.* indhlu.  
 Haft, *n.* umpini.  
 Haft, *v.* pisela.  
 Hail, *n.* isiqoto.  
 Hair, *n.* (human) unwele.  
 „ (grey) izimvi.  
 „ (animal) uboya.  
 „ (in twisted strings) umyeko.  
 „ (parting of the) umgedhla.  
 Hair (to cut), *v.* gunda.  
 „ (to dress), *v.* cwala.  
 „ (to perfume), *v.* qola.  
 „ (to shave), *v.* paca.  
 Half-cooked (to be), *v.* gungubala.  
 Half-fill, *v.* gamatisa.  
 Halt (to be), *v.* xuka.  
 Hammer, *v.* (as a nail), betela.  
 „ (as a smith) kanda.  
 Hand, *n.* isandhla.  
 Handle, *v.* (carelessly) bilikisa.  
 Handstone, *n.* (for grinding) imbekondo.  
 Handkerchief, *n.* iduku.  
 Hang, *v.* (up) panyeka.  
 „ (over) enguma.  
 „ (down) lenga.  
 Hanker after, *v.* languzelela.  
 Happiness, *n.* intokozo.  
 Harass, *v.* (weary) kataza, hlukumeza.  
 „ (tease) fundekela.  
 Hard, *adj.* lukuni.  
 „ (oppressive) hlupayo.  
 Hare, *n.* unogwaja.  
 Harlot, *n.* isiropo, isifebe.  
 Harn, *v.* (bodily) limaza.  
 Harrow in seed, *v.* buqa.  
 Hasten, *v.* tyetya, nonoka.  
 Hastiness, *n.* amawala.  
 Hat, *n.* isigqoko.  
 Hatch, *v.* (as chickens) camusela.  
 Hatchet, *n.* izembe.  
 Hate, *v.* zonda.  
 Hatred, *n.* inzondo.  
 Have a fancy for, *v.* joka.

- Hawk, *n.* uhloile.  
 Head, *n.* ikanda.  
 Headstall, *n.* mukada.  
 Heading, *n.* isicoco.  
 Heal, *v.* (a disease) pilisa.  
 „ (a wound) polisa.  
 Heap, *v.* fumba.  
 Heap, *n.* (of rubbish) amafukufuku, *or* ibibi.  
 Hear, *v.* zwa, lalala.  
 Heart, *n.* inhliziyu.  
 Hearth, *n.* iseko.  
 Heat, *n.* (of the sun) isunvu.  
 „ (of fire) ukutyisa.  
 Heaven, *n.* izulu.  
 Heaviness, *n.* ubunzima.  
 Heavy (to be), *v.* nzima, sinda.  
 Heavy, *adj.* nzima, sindayo.  
 Hedge, *n.* ntango.  
 Heed, *v.* naka, qapela.  
 Heel, *n.* isitende.  
 Heifer, *n.* isitole.  
 Height, *n.* ubude.  
 Heir, *n.* indhlalifa.  
 Hell, *n.* isihogo.  
 Help, *v.* siza.  
 Helper, *n.* umsizi.  
 Hem, *v.* peta.  
 Hemp, *n.* insango.  
 Hen, *n.* inkukukazi.  
 Herd, *v.* alusa.  
 Herd, *n.* umhlambi.  
 Here, *adv.* lapa, konalapa.  
 Hesitate in speaking, *v.* pataneka.  
 Hiccough, *n.* itwabi.  
 Hide, *v.* fihla, bacala.  
 Hide, *n.* isikumba.  
 High, *adj.* de.  
 High up, *adv.* pezulu.  
 High tableland, *n.* inkangala.  
 Hill, *n.* intaba.  
 „ (a high, near Boston Mills), in-  
 hlosana.  
 Hinder, *v.* bambezela.  
 Hint, *v.* sikisela, gwengula.  
 Hippopotamus, *n.* invubu.  
 His or her mother, unina.  
 His place or people, kubo.  
 Hit, *v.* tyaya.  
 Hoax, *v.* gubuda.  
 Hog, *n.* ingulube.  
 Hold, *v.* lamba.  
 „ (hand, &c., to receive) kongozela.  
 Hole, *n.* umgodi.  
 Hollow, *n.* isigodi.  
 „ (very small) umgovana.  
 „ (in tree or stone) inkolo.  
 „ (of the hand) nwetye.  
 Hollow (to make), *v.* gumbela.  
 Homage (to render), kuleka.  
 Home, *n.* ikaya.  
 Honest (to be), *v.* tembeka.  
 Honey, *n.* izinyosi.  
 Honey-bee, *n.* innyosi.  
 Honey-bear, *n.* insele.  
 Honey-comb, *n.* ikekela.  
 Honour, *v.* dumisa.  
 Honour, *n.* udumo.  
 Hoof-sickness, *n.* amatela.  
 Hoof, *n.* insele.  
 Hook, *v.* gwegwa.  
 Hook, *n.* ingwegwe.  
 „ (fish) udoba.  
 Hop, *v.* (as a person) keleza.  
 „ (as a frog) cocoma.  
 „ (as a bird) neetyeza.  
 Hope, *v.* temba.  
 Hope, *n.* itemba.  
 Horn, *n.* upondo.  
 „ (for smoking) igudu.  
 Hornet, *n.* umnyovu.  
 Horse, *n.* ihashi.  
 Hot (to be), *v.* (as the sun) balala.  
 Hottentot, *n.* ilau.  
 House, *n.* indhlu.  
 „ (room of) ikamelo.  
 How? *adv.* kanjani?  
 How great? *adv.* kangakanani?  
 How many? kangaki?  
 Hubbub (to raise), *v.* xokozela.  
 Hug, *v.* singati, gona.  
 Human-nature, *n.* ubuntu.  
 Humbug, *v.* gubuda.  
 Hump, *n.* (of an ox) ilunda.  
 Hump-back, *n.* isifumbu.  
 Hundred times, *adv.* kayikulu.  
 Hunger, *n.* ipango, indhlala.  
 Hungry (to be), kamba.  
 Hunt, *v.* zingela.

Hunting-party, *n.* imqina.  
 Hasty, *n.* amatata.  
 Hurt, *v.* limaza.  
 „ (as an old wound) tunuka.  
 Husk, *n.* ikasi.  
 Hut, *n.* (boys') ilau.  
 Hyena, *n.* impisi.

## I.

I, *p.pra.* mina.  
 Ice, *n.* ungqongqwane, isitwatwa.  
 Idle (to be), *v.* vilapa.  
 Idle person, *n.* ivila.  
 Idleness, *n.* nbuvila.  
 If, *conj.* uma.  
 Ill (to be), *v.* gula, fa.  
 Imagine, *v.* fanekisa.  
 Immediately, *adv.* masinyane, konamanje.  
 Impale, *v.* joja.  
 Impertinent (to be), *v.* ganga, galazela.  
 Impudent (to be), *v.* eyisa, &c.  
 Inability (to plead), *v.* landula.  
 Inasmuch as, *adv.* ingati.  
 Invite, *v.* vusa.  
 „ (to rudeness) duda.  
 Indeed, *adv.* imbala.  
 Indent, *v.* bocoza.  
 Indentation, *n.* isifaca.  
 Indigo plant, *n.* umpekambedu.  
 Industrious (to be), kutala.  
 Industrious person, *n.* isikutali.  
 Influence, *v.* (by a charm) unga.  
 Infant, *v.* imqane.  
 Inform, *v.* tyela, shumayeza.  
 „ (officially) bika.  
 Inlaid, *v.* futa, kukumalisa.  
 Inheritance, *n.* ilifa.  
 Iniquity, *n.* isono.  
 Inject, *v.* boja.  
 Injure, *v.* (physically) limaza.  
 „ (grieve) dabukisa.  
 „ (slander) hleba.  
 „ (mentally) hlanyisa.  
 Injury, *n.* ingozi.  
 Inquire, *v.* buza.  
 Inspan, *v.* bopela.  
 Instruct, *v.* fundisa.  
 Inter, *v.* mbela.  
 Intercede, *v.* lamula.

Interpret, *v.* kumutya.  
 Interrupt, *amula.*  
 In-the-afternoon, *adv.* emtamlamu.  
 In-the-east, *adv.* empumalanga.  
 In-the-west, *adv.* entyonalanga.  
 In-the-evening, *adv.* kusihlwa.  
 In-the-morning, *adv.* kusasa.  
 In-the-night, *adv.* ebusuku.  
 In-truth, *adv.* nembala, isibili.  
 In-that-direction, *adv.* ngakona.  
 Intoxicate, *v.* dakisa.  
 Intoxicated person, *n.* isidakwa.  
 Introduction, *n.* isisusa.  
 Intrude, *v.* zisisa.  
 Inundate, *v.* kukula.  
 Invade, *v.* hlasela.  
 Invalid, *n.* isiguli.  
 Invent, *v.* qamba.  
 Invert, *v.* gumbuqela.  
 Invite, *v.* mema.  
 Iron, *n.* insimbi.  
 Ironwood, *n.* unsimbithi.  
 Ironical (to be), *v.* qanga.  
 Irritate, *v.* eunula.  
 Island, *n.* isiqingqi.  
 It-is-now-dark, *adv.* sokuswelela.  
 It-may-be, *adv.* ingabe.  
 I wonder, *adv.* umakazi.

## J.

Jabber, *v.* buda.  
 Jackal, *n.* impungutye.  
 Jaw, *n.* (upper) itundu.  
 „ (under) umhlathi.  
 Jealousy, *n.* ubukweli.  
 Jeer, *v.t.* swabuka.  
 Jelly, *n.* ujongujun.  
 Jest, *v.* laula.  
 Join, *v.* jobelela.  
 Joint, *n.* (of body) ilunga.  
 Jolt, *v.* gogoza.  
 Journey, *v.* hamba.  
 „ (a long distance) dandabuzi.  
 „ (as a man weary) divuza.  
 Joy, *n.* injabulo.  
 Judge, *v.* tetamacula.  
 Jump, *v.* eqa.  
 Jungle, *n.* ihlati.  
 Just now, *adv.* konamanje.

Just so, *adv.* ehe.  
Justify, *v.* tetelela.

## K.

Kafir corn, *n.* amabele.  
Key, *n.* isihlutulelo.  
Kick, *v.* kahlela, kaba.  
Kidney, *n.* inso.  
Kill, *v.* bulala.  
Kindle a fire, *v.* penba.  
Kindness, *n.* umusa.  
King, *n.* inkosi.  
Kingdom, *n.* umbuso.  
Kiss, *v.* anga.  
Knead, *v.* xova.  
Knee, *n.* idolo.  
Kneehalter, *v.* guqisa.  
Kneel, *v.* guqa.  
Kneepan, *n.* ivi.  
Knife, *n.* umese.  
Knit, *v.* aluka.  
Knit the brows, *v.* nyakama.  
Knock, *v.* qongqota.  
Knot, *n.* (in thread, &c.) ifindo.  
„ (of wood) ipuzi.  
Know, *v.* azi.  
Knowledge, *n.* ukwazi.  
Kraal, *n.* umuzi.  
„ (for cattle) isibaya.

## L.

Labour, *v.* sebenza.  
Labour-pains, *n.* imimba.  
Lack, *v.* swela, dinga.  
Lad, *n.* umfana.  
Ladder, *n.* isikwelo.  
Ladsmith, *n.* i Mnambiti.  
Ladle, *n.* isixwembe.  
Lamb, *n.* imvana.  
Lame (to be), *v.* xuka.  
Lament, *v.* lila.  
Land, *n.* umhlaba, ilizwe.  
Land-surveyor, *n.* umdabulizwe.  
Language, *n.* ulimi.  
Languid (to be), *v.* dangala.  
Lantern, *n.* isihlanti.  
Lap, *v.* (as a cat) xapa.  
Larceny, *n.* ukuntyontya, ukweba.  
Lard, *n.* amafuta.

Large, *adj.* kuin.  
Large tick, *n.* umkaza.  
Larynx, *n.* igilo.  
Last evening, *adv.* pezolo.  
Last year, *adv.* nyakenye.  
Laugh, *v.* hleka.  
Law, *n.* umteto, umyalelo.  
Lay, or lie flat, *v.* (ukuti) caba.  
Lay, *v.* (place) beka.  
„ (snares) tiya, cupa.  
„ (waste) eita.  
„ (foundation) sekela.  
„ (in courses) bekelela.  
Lazy, *v.* vilapa.  
Lazy person, *n.* ivila.  
Lead, *v.* (astray) edukisa.  
„ (captive) tumba.  
„ (guide) kapa.  
„ (as oxen) rola.  
„ (show the way) kombisa.  
„ (precede) andulela.  
Leaf, *n.* (of a book) ikasi.  
„ (of a tree) iqabunga.  
Leak, *v.* vuza.  
Lean (to be), *v.* zaca.  
Leap, *v.* eqa, gwiya.  
Learn, *v.* funda.  
Learner, *n.* umfundi.  
Leave, *v.* shiya.  
„ (depart) emuka.  
Leaven, *n.* imbiliso, invulebe.  
Leech, *n.* umnyundu.  
Left, *adv.* ngasekohlo.  
Left-handed person, *n.* inxole.  
Leg, *n.* umlenzi.  
Lend, *v.* tyeleka.  
Length, *n.* ubude.  
Leopard, *n.* ingwe.  
Lessen, *v.* neipisa.  
Letter, *n.* innewadi.  
„ (of the alphabet) igama.  
Level, *v.* linganisa.  
Liar, *n.* ixoki.  
Liberate, *v.* kulula.  
Liberator, *n.* umkululi.  
Lice (to catch), *v.* hlanhlata.  
Lick, *v.* kota.  
Lid, *n.* isisibekelo.  
Lie, *v.* (falsehood) qambamanga.

Lie, *v.* (in wait for) lalela.  
 „ (down) lalela.  
 „ (sprawling) badalala.  
 „ (accouchement) beleta.  
 „ (in wait, as a cat) qapa.  
 „ (stark-naked) dindiliza.  
 Lies, *n.* amanga.  
 Life, *n.* ubomi.  
 Light, *n.* (of sun) ukukanya.  
 „ (of moon) unyezi.  
 Light, *adj.* lula.  
 Lightning, *n.* unyazi.  
 Like (to be), *v.* fana, fuza.  
 Like, *adv.* njenga.  
 Like-as, *adv.* njengokuba.  
 Like what? njani?  
 Likeness, *n.* insobi, ufuzo.  
 Likewise, *adv.* njalo.  
 Lily, *n.* ibade.  
 Limb, *n.* isito.  
 Line, *n.* umcako.  
 Limit, *n.* umkaulo.  
 Limp (as a cripple), *v.* nyongaza.  
 Line drawn, *n.* umudwa.  
 Lire, *n.* (of men) isiceme.  
 Lion, *n.* ingonyama, ibubesi.  
 Listen, *v.* lalela.  
 Lip, *n.* udebe.  
 Little of, (to have) *n.* hlonga.  
 Little, *adj.* ncinyane.  
 Live, *v.* pila.  
 „ (comfortably) cemezeka.  
 Liver, *n.* isibindi.  
 Lizard, *n.* isibankwa.  
 Load, *v.* twesa.  
 Load, *n.* intuto, umtvalo.  
 Load (to lighten), *v.* pungula.  
 Loaf, *n.* isinkwa.  
 Lock, *v.* hlutulela.  
 Locust, *n.* (red) inkumbi.  
 Log, *n.* (of wood) isibuku.  
 Loin, *n.* ukalo.  
 Long, *adj.* de.  
 Long time, *adv.* kade.  
 Long ago, *adv.* pakade.  
 Look, *v.* (see) bona.  
 „ (morose) hlunama.  
 „ (sternly) jama.  
 „ (like a thief) bakaza.

Loneliness, *n.* isizungu.  
 Loosen, *n.* kumula.  
 Lose, *v.* (as thread of discourse) pazama.  
 Lost (to be), *v.* lahleka.  
 Lot, *n.* inkato.  
 Louse, *n.* intwala.  
 Love, *v.* tanda.  
 Lover, *n.* umtandi.  
 Lower, *v.* (cause to descend) ehlisa.  
 „ (humble) tobisa.  
 Lump, *n.* isigaxa.  
 Lung, *n.* ipapu.  
 „ (a gathering in) ixwala.  
 Lungsickness, *n.* (of cattle) umpapu.  
 Lust, *v.* kanuka.  
 Lustful, *adj.* kanukayo.  
 Lusty, *adj.* kulupele.

## M.

Mad (to be), *v.* hlanya.  
 Maggot, *n.* impetu.  
 Magistrate, *n.* umtetiwamacala.  
 Magnify, *v.* (make great) kulisa.  
 Maiden, *n.* intombi.  
 Maize, *n.* umbila.  
 Majority, *n.* imvama.  
 Make, *v.* enza.  
 „ (blunt) qunda.  
 „ (blots on paper) capazela.  
 „ (a fire) pemba.  
 „ (compose) qamba.  
 „ (fence) biya.  
 „ (firm) qinisa.  
 „ (ridiculous) tuna.  
 „ (a girl marry) endisa.  
 „ (haste) tyetya.  
 „ (grimaces) bebezela.  
 „ (a hole in wood) bobozela.  
 „ (known) azisa.  
 „ (into a ball) dilinga.  
 „ (a noise) banga umsiundo.  
 „ (pay a fine) hlaulisa.  
 „ (peace) lamula.  
 „ (a floor) ganda.  
 „ (war) hlalala.  
 „ (x click) nxapa.  
 „ (a summerset) gologogqa.  
 Maker, *n.* umenzi.  
 Male, *n.* (of animals) induna.

Male, *n.* (of birds) iqude.  
 Malevolence, *n.* inzondo.  
 Malt, *n.* imitombo.  
 Man, *n.* (human being) umuntu.  
 „ (young) insizwa.  
 „ (married) indoda.  
 „ (old) ixeku.  
 „ (brave) iqawe.  
 „ (coward) igwala.  
 Mane, *n.* umhlwenga.  
 Marrow, *n.* (spinal) umnqonqo.  
 Marrow, *n.* umongo.  
 Marriage, *n.* ukuzeka.  
 „ (cow) umgango.  
 Marsh, *n.* ixapozi.  
 Marvel, *v.* mangala.  
 Mash, *v.* xova.  
 Master, *n.* inkosi.  
 Masticate, *v.* hlafuna.  
 Mat, *n.* (sleeping) ukuko.  
 „ (door) isihlandhla.  
 „ (table) isitobe.  
 Matter, *n.* (affair) indaba.  
 „ (pus) ubovu.  
 Maze, *n.* ingunji.  
 Me, *p.pro.* ngi, mina.  
 Meal, *n.* (flour) impupu.  
 Mealies, *n.* umbila.  
 „ (loose) umuru.  
 Mean, *v.* ti.  
 Measles, *n.* isimungumungwane.  
 Measure, *v.* linganisa.  
 Measure, *n.* isilinganiso.  
 Meat, *n.* inyama.  
 „ (cold) ikutu.  
 Medicine, *n.* umuti.  
 Medicine (to administer), *v.* elapa.  
 Meditate, *v.* cabanga.  
 Medlar-tree, *n.* umtulwa.  
 Meet, *v.* hlanguana.  
 „ (go to) hlanguabeza.  
 Meet, *adj.* fanele.  
 Meeting, *n.* umhlangano.  
 Mellow (to be), *v.* twanyayeka.  
 Melt, *v.* neibilikisa.  
 Memory, *n.* inkumbulo.  
 Menstruate, *v.* potela.  
 Mercy, *n.* umusa.  
 Message, *n.* ilizwi.

Messenger, *n.* isigijimi.  
 Metal, *n.* insimbi.  
 Mica-stone, *n.* insengetye.  
 Mid-day, *n.* imini.  
 Might, *n.* amandhla.  
 Militiaman, *n.* Ikangedhlekla.  
 Milk, *v.* senga.  
 „ (a cow without calf) guda.  
 „ (get plenty from a cow) rubuza.  
 Milk, *n.* ubisi.  
 „ (obtained after a calf has sucked twice) umpehlu.  
 „ (third supply) umncinza.  
 Milker, *n.* umsengi.  
 Milk-pail, *n.* itunga.  
 Milk porridge, *n.* isitubi.  
 Milt, *n.* ubende.  
 Mimic, *v.* lingisa.  
 Mince, *v.* qobisisa.  
 Mingle, *v.* xubanisa.  
 Minister, *v.* konza.  
 Minister, *n.* umkonzi.  
 Miracle, *n.* ummangalisio.  
 Mirror, *n.* isibuko.  
 Misbehave, *v.* pubuka.  
 Miscarry, *v.* (as a woman) pupuma, &c.  
 Mislead, *v.* dukisa.  
 Miss, *v.* (as a mark) mpengisa.  
 „ (the right path) lahleka, duka.  
 Misplace, *v.* (as a letter) tefula.  
 Mist, *n.* inkungu.  
 Mistake, *v.* posisa.  
 Mistake, *n.* isiposiso.  
 Misty (to be), *v.* fuma.  
 Mix, *v.* (amasi and mealies) ruba.  
 „ (as goats and sheep) xubanisa.  
 „ (with one another) vanganisa.  
 „ (as dough) xova.  
 Moan, *v.* bubula.  
 Mob, *n.* umbonda.  
 Mock, *v.* hleka.  
 „ (mimic) lingisa.  
 Moderately, *adv.* ngenyewe.  
 Modest (to be), *v.* hlonipa.  
 Modest, *adj.* nezinhloni.  
 Modesty, *n.* ukuhlonipa.  
 Moistens, *v.* swakamisa.  
 Mole, *n.* (animal) inyukuzane.  
 „ (on the skin) umkangu.

Monday, *n.* nm Sombuluko.  
 Money, *n.* imali.  
 Monkey, *n.* inkau.  
 Monkey-rope, *n.* umtwazi.  
 Moon, *n.* inyanga.  
 Moonlight, *n.* unyezi.  
 Month, *n.* innyanga.  
 Morning, *n.* kusasa.  
 „ (early) ekuseni.  
 Morning-star, *n.* ikwezi.  
 Mortar, *n.* udaka.  
 Mosquito, *n.* umiyane.  
 Moth, *n.* innyundu.  
 Mother, *n.* (my) umame.  
 „ (thy) unyoko.  
 „ (his) ubina.  
 Mouldy, *adj.* kutileyo.  
 Mountain, *n.* intaba.  
 Mouse, *n.* impuku.  
 Mouth, *n.* umlomo.  
 Move, *v.i.* (as trees) shukuma.  
 „ (as an elephant) sisiteka.  
 Much, *adj.* ningi.  
 Mucus, *n.* (from the nose) amatinyila.  
 Mud, *n.* udaka.  
 Mule, *n.* imbongolo.  
 Multiply, *v.* andisa.  
 Multitude, *n.* isixuku.  
 Mumps, *n.* uzagiga.  
 Munch, *v.* mungunya.  
 Murmur, *n.* vungazela.  
 Mushroom, *n.* ikowe.  
 Must not, *v.* musa.  
 Mute (to be) *v.* tula.  
 Mute, *n.* isituli.  
 Mutiny, *v.* hlubuka.  
 Mutter, *v.* gedleza.  
 „ (in sleep) budazela.  
 Muzzle, *n.* isifonyo.  
 Mystery, *n.* imfihlakalo.  
 „ (secret) infihlo.  
 My good fellow, wetu.  
 My place or people, kiti.

## N.

Nail, *n.* isipikili.  
 Name, *n.* igama, ibizo.  
 Namely, *adv.* ukuti.  
 Nap, *n.* (of blanket) umswendo.

Natal plum tree, *n.* umtungulu.  
 Native pick, *n.* igeja.  
 Native torch, *n.* ubaqa, isihlanti.  
 Navel, *n.* inkaba.  
 Near, *prep.* eduze.  
 Nearly, *adv.* pos' ukuti.  
 Neat person, *n.* inono.  
 Neck, *n.* intamo.  
 „ (nape of) izunguzungu.  
 Need, *v.* swela, dinga.  
 Needle, *n.* inalide.  
 Neighbour, *n.* umakelwane.  
 Nervous twitchings, *v.* (to have) hlasimula.  
 Nest, *n.* isihleke.  
 Never-mind, *adv.* pepa.  
 Newly, *adv.* ngokutya.  
 News, *n.* izindaba.  
 Nice, *adj.* mnandi, intoti.  
 Nicely, *adv.* ngesinwe, kahle.  
 Nicety, *n.* (in work) isinwe.  
 Night, *n.* ubusuku.  
 Nine, *n.* isishiyangalombili.  
 Nip, *v.* neinza.  
 Nipple, *n.* (human) ingono.  
 Nit, *n.* umnoi.  
 No, *adv.* qa, ca, cabo, hai, atyi.  
 Nod, *v.* lekusa.  
 Noise, *n.* umsindo.  
 „ (to make), xokozela.  
 Noon, *n.* immini.  
 Nose, *n.* impumulo.  
 Notch, *v.* qopa.  
 Not so, *adv.* amanga.  
 Not so fast, *adv.* kahle.  
 Nothing, *n.* ize.  
 Nothing particular, *adv.* aike tina.  
 Nourish, *v.* ondhlala.  
 Number, *n.* bala.  
 Nurse, *n.* (of children) umnyanya.

## O.

Oar *n.* ipini.  
 Oath, *n.* isifungo.  
 Oblige, *v.* siza.  
 Obliterate, *v.* ziba.  
 Obscure (to be), *v.* fipala.  
 Obstacle, *n.* (a slight) umzikilili.  
 Occiput, *n.* isipundu.  
 Ocean, *n.* ulwandle.

Odium, *n.* inzondo.  
 Odour, *n.* (pleasant) nsi.  
 „ (bad) ipungu.  
 Offering, *n.* unuikelo.  
 Office, *n.* ikantolo.  
 Officer, *n.* induna.  
 Of old time, *adv.* kudala.  
 Oh ! *int.* au !  
 Oil, *n.* amafuta.  
 Old, *adj.* dala.  
 Old grass, *n.* isikota.  
 Old man, *n.* ixegu.  
 Old woman, *n.* isalukazi.  
 Olive-tree, *n.* umgwenya.  
 Omen, *n.* umhlola.  
 On, *prep.* pezu.  
 Once, *adv.* ke, kanye.  
 One, *adj.* nye.  
 One-eyed person, *n.* icile.  
 On Monday, *adv.* ngo Msombuluko.  
 „ Tuesday, *adv.* ngo Lwesibili.  
 „ Wednesday, *adv.* ngo Lwesitatu.  
 „ Thursday, *adv.* ngo Lwesine.  
 „ Friday, *adv.* ngo Lwesihlanu.  
 „ Saturday, *adv.* ngo Mgqibelo.  
 „ Sunday, *adv.* nge Sonto.  
 „ this side, *adv.* nganeno.  
 „ that side, *adv.* ngapesheya.  
 Open, *v.* (as a book) penya.  
 „ (as a door) vula.  
 „ (the mouth) kamisa.  
 „ (as a roll) sombulula.  
 „ (a corn hole) mbulula.  
 „ (a boil) camusa.  
 „ (a box) zibukula.  
 „ (as a fog) damuka.  
 „ (split) qekeza.  
 Opening, *n.* isikala, isituba.  
 Opposite, *adv.* malungana.  
 Oppress, *v.* hlupa, kahla.  
 Orange-river, *n.* i Gwa.  
 Order, *n.* (absence of) umbixi.  
 Organ, *n.* ugubu.  
 Origin, *n.* indabuko, isisusa.  
 Orphan, *n.* inkedama.  
 Ostrich, *n.* intye.  
 Otter, *n.* umtini.  
 Our people or place, *kiti*.  
 Outcry, *n.* umkosi.

Outside, *adv.* pandhile, ngapandhile.  
 Outspan, *v.* kumula.  
 Overflow, *v.* cicima.  
 Overplus, *n.* insalo.  
 Overpower, *v.* ahlula.  
 Overtake, *v.* fumana.  
 Overthrow, *v.* cita.  
 Overturn, *v.* gumbuqela.  
 Owl, *n.* isikova.  
 Owner, *n.* umnini.  
 Ox, *n.* inkabi.  
 „ (hump of) ilunda.  
 Oyster, *n.* imbata.

## P.

Pad, *n.* inkata.  
 Paddle, *v.* gwedhla.  
 Pain, *n.* ubuhlungu.  
 „ (in the side) umqulo.  
 Paint, *v.* beca.  
 Palate, *n.* ulwanga.  
 Pan, *n.* (large), isigodhloho.  
 Pancake, *n.* isicaba.  
 Panther, *n.* ingwe.  
 Paper, *n.* ikasi.  
 Parallel (to be) *v.* bekelana.  
 Parch, *v.* (as corn) gazinga.  
 Pardon, *v.* yekela, tetelela.  
 Pare, *v.* (as bark) hluba.  
 „ (as potatoes) ewecwa.  
 Parrot, *n.* isikwenene.  
 Partiality, *n.* ikubo.  
 Partridge, *n.* itendele.  
 Pass, *v.* dhlula.  
 Pass, *n.* (mountain) insungubezi.  
 Pasture, *n.* idhlelo.  
 Partly fill with water, *v.* gamatisa.  
 Passionate person, *n.* isijaka.  
 Paste, *n.* innovu.  
 Pat, *v.* (as a dog) bambata.  
 Patter, *v.* gigizela.  
 Patch, *n.* isiziba.  
 Paternal uncle, *n.* ubabekazi.  
 Path, *n.* indhlela.  
 Patience, *n.* innyewe.  
 Patient (to be), *v.* bekele, bekezel.  
 Paunch, *n.* ufu.  
 Paw, *v.* (as a horse) shudula.  
 Pay, *v.* koka.

Pay (rattle for a wife) lobola.  
 Peace (to make), *v.* lamula.  
 Peace, *n.* uxolo, ukutula.  
 Peacemaker, *n.* umlamuli.  
 Peel, *v.* hluba, eweewa.  
 Peep, *v.* lunguza.  
 Peevish (to be), *v.* tetema.  
 Peg, *n.* isikonkwane.  
 Penny, *n.* indibilitye.  
 Perforate, *v.* boboza.  
 Perfume, *v.* qola.  
 Perfumery, *n.* amaka.  
 Perhaps, *adv.* mblaubumbe.  
 Perish, *v.* huba.  
 Perjury (to commit) twapa.  
 Persist, *v.* (in asking) konga.  
 Person, *n.* umuntu.  
 „ (uncouth) umfunda.  
 „ (gentle) isinamba.  
 „ (bald) impandhla.  
 Perspire, *v.* juluka.  
 Pet, *v.* totosa.  
 Petticoat, *n.* isikaka.  
 Petty theft (to commit), *v.* ntyontya.  
 Pick, *v.* (select) keta.  
 „ (the teeth) vungula.  
 Picture, *n.* umfanekiso.  
 Piece, *n.* (as of calico) isiqepu.  
 „ (of ground) indima.  
 Piece, *v.* hlaba.  
 Pietermaritzburg, *n.* um Gungundhlovu.  
 Pig, *n.* ingulube.  
 Pigeon, *n.* ijuba.  
 Pillow, *n.* isicamelo.  
 Pin, *n.* isipeledi.  
 Pincers, *n.* ndhlau.  
 Pinch, *v.* neinza.  
 Pinna, *n.* (of the ear) igwagwa.  
 Pipe, *n.* igudu, ipipi.  
 Pistol, *n.* isilanyana.  
 Pit, *n.* umgobi.  
 „ (for trapping game) iveku.  
 Pity, *n.* umrau.  
 Place, *v.* beka.  
 Place, *n.* indawo.  
 „ (office) isikundhla.  
 Placenta, *n.* (of beasts) umhlapo.  
 „ (human) umezanyana.  
 Plain, *n.* itafa.

Plain, *adv.* obala.  
 Plant, *v.* tyala.  
 Plant (the sensitive) *n.* intezezi.  
 „ (used for polishing head rings) ilotzana.  
 Plant (an edible) igabi.  
 „ (the leaves of which are used for snuff) isifulani.  
 Plant (name of a) ulimilwenkomo.  
 Plaster, *v.* gudula, nameka.  
 Plat, *v.* aluka.  
 Plate, *n.* isitya.  
 Play, *v.* dhlala.  
 „ (tricks) gila.  
 Please, *v.* (satisfy) kolisa.  
 „ (gratify) jabulisa.  
 Plough, *v.* lima.  
 Plough-up, *v.* (as a chained wagon wheel) tyityiliza.  
 Plug, *v.* (as fruit) ka.  
 „ (as a fowl) hluta.  
 „ (out) kipa.  
 „ (up by the roots) sipula.  
 „ (out, as hair) hlutula.  
 Plug, *n.* isivimbo.  
 Plum, *n.* (Natal) itungulu.  
 Plunder, *v.* panga.  
 Plunderer, *n.* umpangi.  
 Poison, *n.* ubuti.  
 Point (dot), *n.* icatyana.  
 Polygamy, *n.* isitembu.  
 Pond, *n.* icibi.  
 Ponder, *v.* zindhla.  
 Poor person, *n.* umpofu.  
 Poreupine, *n.* innunga.  
 Porridge, *n.* (thin) iyambazi.  
 „ (with pumpkin) isijieg.  
 „ (burnt) intyela.  
 Post, *n.* insika.  
 Pot, *n.* (large, for beer) imbiza.  
 „ (cooking) ikanzi.  
 Potatoe, *n.* (common) izambane.  
 „ (sweet) umhlaza.  
 Potter, *n.* umbumbi.  
 Poultrie, *n.* isitobo.  
 Pound, *n.* (money) umpondo.  
 Pour, *v.* (in) tela.  
 „ (out) tulula.  
 „ (between the thumbs) eta.

Pour, *v.* (leaving sediment) ewenga.  
 Poverty, *n.* ubumpofu.  
 Practise polygamy, *v.* tembuza.  
 Praise, *v.* babaza, bong'a.  
 Pray, *v.* tandaza.  
 Preach, *v.* shumayela.  
 Preacher, *n.* umshumayeli.  
 Precipitous hill, *n.* ummango.  
 Prepare for war, *v.* hloma.  
 Present, *adv.* kona.  
 Present, *n.* isipo.  
 Presentiment (to have), *v.* ndwemela.  
 Press, *v.* cindezela, kama.  
 „ (as a peach) tanyaza.  
 Pretend, *v.* zenzisa.  
 „ (not to hear) ziba.  
 Pretence, *n.* izaba.  
 Prevaricate, *v.* fitiza.  
 Print, *v.* cindezela.  
 Privately, *adv.* ngasese, ngesita.  
 Produce, *v.* vezo.  
 Profit, *v.* inzuzo, ubisi.  
 Progeny, *n.* inzalo.  
 Promise, *v.* tembisa.  
 Promontory, *n.* inhlonhle.  
 Prop, *v.* sekela, kasa.  
 Proper, *adv.* fanele.  
 Propel, *v.* quba.  
 Prosper, *v.* busisa.  
 Prostitute, *n.* isifebe.  
 Protrude (the chest), *v.* bema.  
 Prove, *v.* qinisa.  
 Prune, *v.* kwebula.  
 Pry, *v.* hlola.  
 Pucker, *v.* fingqa.  
 Puddle, *n.* icibi.  
 Pull, *v.* donsa.  
 „ (tightly) nsa'a.  
 „ (down) diliza.  
 „ (up by the roots) sipula.  
 „ (out, as the hair) neotula.  
 Pulp, *n.* (as of fruit) ubutumbu.  
 Pumpkin, *n.* itanga.  
 Purchase, *v.* tenga.  
 Purge, *v.* rudisa.  
 Purr, *v.i.* (as a cat) ndonca.  
 Pus, *n.* nbovu.  
 Push, *v.* (drive) quba.  
 „ (forward) sunduza.

Push, *v.* (with horns) gweba.  
 „ (down) wisa.  
 Put, *v.* (place) beka.  
 „ (reim on horns) gaxa.  
 „ (on, as blanket) embata.  
 „ (close together) kandanisa.  
 „ (on or into) faka.  
 „ (out of joint) enyela.  
 „ (by, to keep) kweza.  
 „ (on, as more oxen) xumelela.  
 Puzzle, *v.* dipizisa.

Q

Quail, *n.* inswempe.  
 Quake, *v.* zamazama.  
 Quarrel, *v.* xabana.  
 Quarrelsome person, *n.* umbaxi.  
 Queen, *n.* inkosikazi.  
 Quibble, *n.* isibando.  
 Quickly, *adv.* tatazinyawo.  
 Question, *n.* umbuzo.  
 Quiet, *v.* tulisa.  
 „ (as a child) duduzo.  
 Quiver, *v.i.* bikizela.

R.

Raft, *n.* isihlenga.  
 Rain, *v.* na.  
 Rain, *n.* imvula.  
 „ (small) umkizo.  
 „ (continuous) umvimbi.  
 Rainbow, *n.* umnyama.  
 Raise, *v.* (lift) pakamisa.  
 „ (an alarm) hlaba umkosi.  
 „ (dust with the feet) buquza.  
 Rake, *v.* kukula.  
 Ram, *n.* inqama.  
 Ram in, *v.* hlohla.  
 Ramble, *v.* ndinda.  
 Rasp, *n.* isigudhlo, isihlabo.  
 Raspberry, *n.* usomlotyana.  
 Rat, *n.* (field) ibuzi.  
 Ratan, *n.* ngonoti.  
 Rag, *n.* umsebe.  
 Razor, *n.* impuco.  
 Reap, *v.* vuna.  
 Real truth, *adv.* isibili.  
 Rebel, *v.* hhubuka.  
 Rebound, *v.* kwebuka.

Recede, *v.* hlehlala.  
 Receive, *v.* amukela.  
 Reckon, *v.* lala.  
 Recline, *v.* cambalala.  
 Recover, *v.* (from sickness) puluka, pila.  
 Rectum, *n.* umdidi.  
 Red (to be), *v.* (as at dawn) beja.  
 Reim, *n.* intando.  
 Refuse, *n.* ngaba, ala.  
 Rejoice, *v.* jabula, tokoza.  
 Relate, *v.* landisa.  
 „ (as a dream) lauzela.  
 Release, *v.* kulula.  
 Rely, *v.* temba.  
 Remain, *v.* sala.  
 Remember, *v.* kumbala.  
 Remove, *v.* (go away) muka.  
 „ (out of the light) suduka.  
 „ (take away) susa.  
 „ (go away) suka.  
 Remunerate, *v.* (reward) vuza.  
 „ (pay for service) kokela.  
 Rend, *v.* dabula.  
 Repair, *v.* lungisa.  
 Repeat, *v.* pinda.  
 Repent, *v.* penduka.  
 Reply, *v.* pendula.  
 Report, *v.* (give account of) landisa.  
 „ (officially) bika.  
 Report, *n.* (of a gun) umbongo.  
 Reporter, *n.* umbiki.  
 Repose, *v.* pumula, lala.  
 Reprove, *v.* tetisa.  
 Reptile, *n.* isilwane.  
 Request, *v.* cela.  
 Rescue, *v.* sindisa.  
 Resemble, *v.* fana.  
 „ (in face) fuza.  
 Resemblance, *n.* insobi.  
 Resent, *v.* pindisa.  
 Reside, *v.* hlala, aka.  
 Resist, *v.* (by force) gunya.  
 „ (successfully) vutubula.  
 „ (by words) pika.  
 Respire, *v.* pefumula.  
 Rest, *v.* pumula.  
 Restore, *v.* buyisa.  
 Retain, *v.* bamba.  
 Retard, *v.* libalisa.

Return, *v.* buya.  
 Reveal, *v.* bonakalisa.  
 Reverberate, *v.* (akuti) co.  
 Revive, *v.* pilisa.  
 Revolt, *v.* hlubuka.  
 Revolve, *v.* zungeza.  
 Reward, *v.* vuza.  
 Reward, *n.* umvuzo.  
 Rhinoceros, *n.* upejane.  
 Rib, *n.* ubambo.  
 Rich (to be), *v.* nota, fuya.  
 Riddle, *n.* imfumbe.  
 Ridge, *n.* (of a mountain) ukado.  
 Ride, *v.* kwela.  
 Right, *adj.* (good) lungile.  
 „ (true, correct) qinisile.  
 Rind, *n.* (of fruit) ihlubo.  
 Ring, *v.* (as a bell) tyaya.  
 Ring, *n.* indandato.  
 Ringworm, *n.* umbandamu.  
 Rip open, *v.* qaga.  
 Ripe (to be), *v.* vutwa.  
 Ripe, *adj.* vutiwe.  
 Ripple, *v.* kopoza.  
 Rise, *v.* vuka.  
 „ (stand up) sukuma.  
 „ (as the sun) puma.  
 „ (in rebellion) hlubuka.  
 „ (as a river) gewala.  
 „ (as yeast) bila.  
 „ (as dough) kukumala.  
 „ (to the eyes, as tears) hlengozela.  
 River, *n.* umfula.  
 Road, *n.* (wagon) umgwaqo.  
 Roam, *v.* ndinda, zula.  
 Roar, *v.* (as a lion) bodhla.  
 „ (as a cannon or river) duma.  
 Roast, *v.* osa.  
 Rob, *v.* panga.  
 Robber, *n.* umpangi.  
 Rock-rabbit, *n.* imbila.  
 Rod, *n.* uti, uswazi.  
 Roll, *v.* gingqa.  
 Root, *n.* impande.  
 Rope, *n.* intambo, igoda.  
 Rot, *v.* bola.  
 Roughness, *n.* amaratye.  
 Row, *v.* gwedhla.  
 Rub, *v.* (as the eye) cikica.

Run, *v.* *gijima*.  
 „ (off line, as a train), *hlanhlata*.  
 Rupture, *n.* *isibono*.  
 Rusty (to be), *v.* *gwala*.  
 Rustle, *v.* (as a tree) *rwatyaza*.

S.

Sabbath, *n.* *isonto*.  
 Sack, *n.* *isaka*.  
 Sad (to be), *v.* *dabuka*.  
 Sad, *adj.* *dabukileyo*.  
 Saddle, *n.* *isihlalo*.  
 Saddle, *v.* (a horse) *kungela' sihlalo*.  
 Sailor, *n.* *itelosi*.  
 Salamander, *n.* *intulwa*.  
 Saliva, *n.* *amate*.  
 Salutation, *n.* *isibingelelo*.  
 Sand, *n.* *isihlabati*.  
 Sandstone, *n.* *icoba*.  
 Sap, *n.* *inkovu*.  
 Sarcastic (to be), *v.* *qanga*.  
 Satiated, *v.* *sutisa*.  
 Satisfy, *v.* *kolisa*.  
 Sausy, *v.* *eyisa, ganga*.  
 Save, *v.* *sindisa*.  
 Saviour, *n.* *umsindisi*.  
 Say, *v.* *ti, tyo*.  
 „ (farewell) *valelisa*.  
 Scab, *n.* *ukoko*.  
 Scandal, *n.* *isihlamba*.  
 Sear, *n.* *ubavu*.  
 Scarce (to be), *v.* *dingeka, sweleka*.  
 Scarlet, *adj.* *bomvu*.  
 Scatter, *v.* *sakaza*.  
 Scent, *n.* (pleasant) *usi*.  
 „ (bad) *ipunga*.  
 Scent, *v.* *qola*.  
 Scholar, *n.* *umfundisi*.  
 School, *n.* *isikole*.  
 Scold, *v.* *tetisa*.  
 „ (very much) *sauzela*.  
 „ (furiously) *languaiala*.  
 Scorch, *v.* *ramula*.  
 Scorn, *v.* *usulu*.  
 Scorpion, *n.* *ufezela*.  
 Scour, *v.* *pucuzi*.  
 Scrag, *n.* *isiquanti*.  
 Scrape, *v.* (as a skin) *pala*.  
 „ (off, as soft mud) *gulula*.

Scrape, *v.* (with the feet) *shudula*.  
 Scratch, *v.* *enwaya*.  
 „ (as a dog) *panda*.  
 Scream, *v.* *kala*.  
 Screen, *v.* *sita, vika*.  
 Scribe, *n.* *umlobi*.  
 Scrub, *v.* *kuhluzi*.  
 Scum, *n.* *igwebu*.  
 Scurf, *n.* (of the hair) *intuwa*.  
 Seam, *n.* *umtungo*.  
 Search, *v.* *funa*.  
 Sea, *n.* *ulwandhle*.  
 Seat, *n.* *isihlalo*.  
 Secret, *n.* *imihlo*.  
 Secretary-bird, *n.* *intungunono*.  
 Secretly, *adv.* *ngasese*.  
 Sediment, *n.* *izibidi*.  
 See, *v.* *bona*.  
 Seed, *n.* *imbeu*.  
 Seek, *v.* *funa*.  
 Seize, *v.* *bamba*.  
 Select, *v.* *keta*.  
 Self, *n.* *isiqu*.  
 Self-denial, *n.* *ukuzincitya*.  
 Selfish (to be), *v.* *zitanda*.  
 Sell, *v.* *tengisa*.  
 „ (by auction) *dalisa*.  
 Send, *v.* *tuma*.  
 „ (back) *buyisa*.  
 „ (away) *emukisa*.  
 Separate, *v.* *ahlukanisa*.  
 „ (as cattle) *qembula*.  
 Seraglio, *n.* *isigodhlo*.  
 Serpent, *n.* *inyoka*.  
 Servant, *n.* *innceku*.  
 Serve, *v.* *konza*.  
 Service, *n.* *inkonzo*.  
 Set, *v.* *beka*.  
 „ (as the sun) *tyona*.  
 Seven-times, *adv.* *kasikombisa*.  
 Sew, *v.* *tunga*.  
 Shadow, *n.* *isitunzi*.  
 Shake, *v.* (as the head) *nikina*.  
 Sham, *v.* *zenzisa*.  
 Shame, *v.* (disgrace) *hlazisa*.  
 Shame, *n.* *izihloni*.  
 Share, *n.* *isabelo*.  
 Sharpen, *v.* (as an axe) *lola*.  
 „ (as a stick) *geija*.

Shave, *v.* puca, pucula.  
 Sheep, *n.* imvu.  
 Shelf, *n.* itala.  
 Shell, *n.* (sea) inkwindi.  
 Shepherd, *n.* umahusi.  
 Shew, *v.* bonisa.  
 Shield, *n.* isihlangu.  
 Shine, *v.* kanya.  
 Ship, *n.* isikepe.  
 Shiver, *v.* qaqazela.  
 Shoe, *n.* isicatulo.  
 Shoot, *v.* dubula.  
 „ (germinate) hluma.  
 Shop, *n.* ivingili.  
 Short, *adj.* futyane.  
 Shot, *n.* (small) uhlwai.  
 Shoulder, *n.* ihlombe.  
 Shoulder-blade, *n.* isipanga.  
 Shout, *v.* memeza.  
 Shovel, *n.* ifotyolo.  
 Shrink, *v.* shwabana.  
 Shut, *v.* (as a door) vala.  
 „ (as a box) vimba.  
 „ (as the mouth) cuta.  
 „ (as a knife) gobisa.  
 Shy (to be), *v.* (beware) xwaya.  
 „ (bashful) coyacoya.  
 Sick (to be), *v.* fa, gula.  
 Side, *n.* uhlangoti.  
 Side, *adv.* (on this) nganeno.  
 „ (on that) ngapetsheya.  
 Sieve, *n.* isihlungula.  
 Sift, *v.* hlunga.  
 Silent (to be), *v.* tula.  
 Silence, *v.t.* (with the hand) punga.  
 Sin, *v.* ona.  
 Sin, *n.* isono.  
 Sincere, *adj.* qoto.  
 Sinew, *n.* musipa.  
 Sing, *v.* hlabelela.  
 Single, *v.* ramula.  
 Sink, *v.* tyona.  
 „ (as the top of a hut) fola.  
 Sip, *v.* rabula.  
 Sister, *n.* udade.  
 Sit, *v.* hlala.  
 „ (as a bold rider) qياما.  
 „ (up, as a dog) qojema.  
 Site, *n.* (of a house) isiza.

Six-times, *adv.* kayisitupa.  
 Skeleton, *n.* (of an animal) ugaga.  
 Skim, *v.* engula.  
 Skin, *v.* hlinza.  
 Skin, *n.* isikumba.  
 „ (of snake) ulwebu.  
 Skin-petticoat, *n.* ibaru.  
 Skip, *v.* tyekula.  
 Skull, *n.* ukakayi.  
 Sky, *n.* izulu.  
 Slack (to be), *v.* xeka.  
 Slacken, *v.t.* (as a rope) yelezisa.  
 Slander, *v.* hleba.  
 Slanderer, *n.* umhlebi.  
 Slap, *v.* mpasa.  
 „ (on the face) mukula.  
 Slave, *n.* ikoboka.  
 Sleep, *v.* lala.  
 Sleep, *n.* ubutongo.  
 Sleet, *n.* iungele.  
 Slice, *v.t.* (as meat) bengula.  
 Slope, *v.i.* tambeka.  
 Sloven, *n.* ivamba.  
 Slug, *n.* umnenkhe.  
 Slumber, *v.* (sleep) lala.  
 „ (doze) ozela.  
 Slut, *n.* ivamba.  
 Sly (to be), *v.* nyenya.  
 Small, *adj.* neinyane.  
 Small (to be), *v.* (for age) batya.  
 Small tick, *n.* ikizane.  
 Smash, *v.* pahlaza.  
 Smear, *v.* (the body) kata.  
 „ (a floor) sinda.  
 „ (udder of a cow) sileka.  
 „ (body with clay) gqaba.  
 „ (a skin) capa.  
 Smell, *v.* nuka.  
 Smile, *v.* mwamwateka.  
 Smith, *n.* mukandi.  
 Smithy, *n.* isitando.  
 Smoke, *v.* (as tobacco) bema.  
 „ (deposit saliva) tyuma.  
 „ (as a fire) tunqa.  
 „ (over a fire) fusa.  
 Smoother, *n.* intutu.  
 Smooth, *adj.* butyelezi.  
 Snout, *n.* isimbaba.  
 Snail, *n.* umnenkhe.

Snake, *n.* inyoka.  
 Snatch, *v.* hlwita.  
 Sneeze, *v.* timula.  
 Sniff, *v.* sezela.  
 Snore, *v.* rona.  
 Snow, *v.* iliqwa.  
 Snow, *v.* kitika.  
 Snuff, *v.* (to take) bema.  
 „ (to give) shiyela.  
 Snuff-case, *n.* ityungu.  
 Snuff-spoon, *n.* intyengula.  
 So, *adv.* njalo.  
 Soap, *n.* insipo.  
 Soak, *v.* netisa.  
 Sob, *v.* lingoza.  
 Sod, *n.* isisinde.  
 Sodden (to be), *v.* titibala.  
 Soft (to be), *v.* tamba.  
 So great, *adv.* kangaka.  
 Soil, *n.* (soft) imvunduvundu.  
 So large, *adv.* ngaka.  
 Soldier, *n.* ibuto.  
 Something, *n.* uto.  
 Son, *n.* unyana, indodana.  
 Soon, *adv.* masinya.  
 Soot, *n.* umule.  
 Soothe, *v.* duduza.  
 Sorrel, *n.* (for cleaning teeth) imfenkaka.  
 „ (a kind of, or *Rumex*) imunyane.  
 Sore, *n.* isilonda.  
 Sort, *n.* uhlobo.  
 Sound, *v.* hlokoma.  
 „ (as a bell) kala.  
 Sound, *v.t.* (as a person) titinya.  
 Sound, *adj.* qinileyo.  
 Sour milk, *n.* amasi.  
 Sow, *v.* hlwanyela.  
 Space, *n.* umkati, isibakabaka.  
 „ (distance) ibanga.  
 Spade, *n.* ifotyolo.  
 Span-in, *v.* bopela.  
 Span-out, *v.* kumula.  
 Spark, *n.* inhlansi.  
 Speak, *v.* kuluma.  
 „ (in an excited way) pakazela.  
 „ (evil of) hleba.  
 „ (indistinctly) kwitiza.  
 „ (roughly) raya.  
 „ (with nose stopped up) nkankaza.

Speak, *v.* (fluently) qapuzo.  
 „ (in earnest) kutaza.  
 Speaker, *n.* (chief) isilomo.  
 Spear, *n.* unkonto.  
 Speckled, *adj.* zibadu.  
 Speed, *n.* ubelo, ijubane.  
 Spider, *n.* nlembu.  
 Spill, *v.* palaza.  
 Spinal-marrow, *n.* umngqongo.  
 Spine, *n.* umhlouzo.  
 Spit, *v.* fela.  
 Spite, *v.* guza.  
 Split (as wood), *v.* banda.  
 Sponge, *n.* ikepekepe, ihla.  
 Sprain, *v.* (as a joint) pinyaza.  
 Spread, *v.* (as a mat) endhlala.  
 „ (as a garment to dry) eneka.  
 Sprout, *n.* isitombo.  
 Sputter, *v.* (as water) xapazela.  
 Spy, *v.* hlola.  
 Spy, *n.* inhloli.  
 Sprinkle, *v.* fafaza, (ukuti) fata.  
 Squander, *v.* sapaza.  
 Squeeze, *v.* (press) cindezela.  
 „ (out filth) biciza.  
 „ (as a sponge) ficinga.  
 „ (as clothes) kama.  
 Squinting person, *n.* insanga.  
 Stab, *v.* gwaza, hlaba.  
 Staff, *n.* isisimelelo.  
 Stagger, *v.* (as a drunkard) badlazela.  
 Stain, *v.* ninda.  
 Stake, *n.* isibonda.  
 Stalk, *n.* (green) izele.  
 Stand, *v.* ma, ema.  
 „ (stand firm) simama.  
 „ (as a man stationary) phila.  
 „ (as a sick ox) enia.  
 Star, *n.* inkanyezi.  
 „ (morning) ikwezi.  
 „ (evening) ucwazoe.  
 Steal, *v.* eba.  
 Steam, *n.* umusi.  
 Stench, *n.* ufta.  
 Stem, *n.* (of native pipe) isitukulu.  
 Step, *v.* nyatela.  
 Stick, *v.* namatela.  
 Stick, *n.* uti.  
 Still (to be) *v.* tula.

- Sting, *v.* suzela.  
 Sting, *n.* udosi.  
 Stingy person, *n.* isinecityani.  
 Stink, *v.* nuka.  
 Stint, *v.* neitya.  
 Stir, *v.* (as water) dunga.  
     ,, (as a fire) hlokoza.  
     ,, (as porridge) bonda.  
     ,, (excite) xokozela.  
     ,, (alarm) hlaba unkosi.  
 Stomach, *n.* isisu.  
 Stone, *n.* ilitye.  
 Stoop, *v.* toba.  
     ,, (in walking) tyotya.  
     ,, (in sitting) kotama.  
     ,, (as one writing) gomfa.  
 Stop, *v.* peza, yeka.  
     ,, (put an end to) pelisa.  
     ,, (as a bottle) vimba.  
 Stopper, *n.* isivimbo.  
 Strain, *v.* (as the body), kanula.  
 Stranger, *n.* umfokazi.  
 Strangle, *v.* futanisa.  
 Stray, *v.* duka.  
 Strength, *n.* amandhla.  
 Stretch, *v.* ehula.  
     ,, (forward to see) lunguza.  
 Strife, *n.* inkani.  
 Strike, *v.* tyaya.  
     ,, (in the eye) xopa.  
     ,, (as a smith) kanda.  
     ,, (as nails) betela.  
     ,, (the body) mpasa.  
     ,, (the face) makula.  
     ,, (on the head) (nkuti) nqu.  
     ,, (pretend to) gema.  
     ,, (with a stone) swica.  
     ,, (with umkonto) juqa.  
     ,, (with a stick) dansula.  
     ,, (and miss the mark) geja.  
     ,, (violently) pohloza.  
 String, *n.* intambo.  
     ,, (to hang things on) umgibe.  
 Strip, *n.* (as of cloth) umsweswe.  
 Stripe, *n.* (as a red, &c.) untende.  
 Striped, *adj.* nkone.  
 Strive, *v.* zama.  
     ,, (contend) pika.  
 Stroke, *v.* pulula.
- Strong man, *n.* ijara.  
 Struggle (to get free), *v.* xuxuma.  
 Stuff, *v.* (as a bolster) gxutya.  
 Suck, *v.* munca.  
     ,, (as an infant) neela, anya.  
     ,, (as a peach) kukuza.  
 Suet, *n.* unwali.  
 Suffice, *v.* anela.  
 Sugar, *n.* ushukela.  
 Sugar-cane, *n.* umoba.  
 Sulk, *v.* qumba.  
 Sun, *n.* ilanga.  
 Summer, *n.* ihlobo.  
 Summon, *v.* biza.  
 Sunday, *n.* i Sonto.  
 Support, *v.* (words of another) cizelela.  
     ,, sekela.  
 Surmise, *v.* camanga.  
 Surname, *n.* isibongo.  
 Surpass, *v.* ahlula.  
 Surprise, *v.* zuma.  
 Surround, *v.* pahla, raqa.  
 Survey, *v.* buka.  
     ,, (as land) dabula.  
 Suspense (to be in state of), *v.* hoba.  
 Suspend, *v.* panyeka.  
 Swallow, *n.* inkonjane.  
 Sway, *v.* (as trees) nyakaza.  
 Swear, *v.* funga.  
 Sweat, *v.* juluka.  
 Sweep, *v.* tyanela.  
 Sweet, *adj.* mmandi.  
 Sweetheart, *n.* isixebe.  
 Sweet potatoe, *n.* umhlaza.  
 Sweet-reed, *n.* imfe.  
 Swerve, *v.* pambuka.  
 Swim, *v.* hlamba.  
 Swing, *v.* lenga.  
 Switch, *n.* uswazi.  
 Sword, *n.* isinkemba.  
 Syringe, *v.* boja.

## T.

- Table, *n.* itafula.  
 Tail, *n.* (of an animal) umsila.  
     ,, (of a bird) isisila.  
     ,, (feather of a fowl) ugombo.  
 Take, *v.* tata, tabata.  
     ,, (receive) amukela.

Take, *v.* (as food) dhla.  
 „ (as a pill) gwinya.  
 „ (care of) hlenga, londoloza.  
 „ (off, as a blanket) ambula.  
 „ (out, as a tooth) kipa.  
 „ (out a little with the hand),  
 capuna.  
 Take, *v.* (captive) tumba.  
 „ (away) susa.  
 „ (a husband) gana.  
 „ (snuff) bema.  
 „ (off, as a pot) etula.  
 „ (by force) amuka.  
 „ (by surprise) zuma.  
 „ (home) godusa.  
 „ (all) tyaga.  
 Talk, *n.* (bragging) iwawa.  
 Talk, *v.* kuluma.  
 „ (at random) potyoza.  
 „ (chatter) (ukuti) potololo.  
 „ (twist words) tywila.  
 „ (much) boboza.  
 „ (mutter) gedeza.  
 „ (in sleep) budazela.  
 „ (kitchen-kafir) ciciyela.  
 „ (windy stuff) bamuza.  
 „ (fluently) qapuzza.  
 Tallow, *n.* isinqumela.  
 Tame (to be), *v.* tamba.  
 Tambootie-grass, *n.* isiqunga.  
 Taste, *v.* zwa, nambita.  
 „ (hot) kauzela.  
 Tattle, *v.* neeteza.  
 Teach, *v.* fundisa.  
 Teacher, *n.* umfundisi.  
 Tear, *n.* inyembezi.  
 Tear, *v.* dabula.  
 Tease, *v.* fundekela.  
 Tell, *v.* tyela.  
 „ (a man his secret sin) daluza.  
 „ (make known) azisa.  
 „ (report) bika.  
 „ (tales) neeteza.  
 „ (without being heeded) dulela.  
 Temper (bad), *n.* ulaka.  
 Temple, *n.* (of the head) ihlonhlo.  
 Tempt, *v.* yenga.  
 Terrify, *v.* munusa.  
 Thank, *v.* bouga.

That's the whole of it, kubekupela.  
 That, *conj.* ukuba, ukuti.  
 That's all, kupela.  
 Thatch, *n.* fulela.  
 „ (old) inkuna.  
 There, *adv.* lapo, kona.  
 Therefore, *conj.* ngako.  
 These, *dem. pro.* laba, lezi, &c.  
 They, *pron.* bona, &c.  
 Thick cord, *n.* igoda.  
 Thicken, *v.* (as porridge) jiyisa.  
 Thief, *n.* isela.  
 Thieve, *v.* eba.  
 Thigh, *n.* itanga.  
 Thin, *v.* (as mealie-plants) pungula.  
 Thing, *n.* (a worthless thing), undindi.  
 Think, *v.* ti, cabanga.  
 Thirst, *v.* oma.  
 This, *dem. pro.* lo, le.  
 This year, *adv.* nonyaka.  
 Thornville, *n.* Emputyini.  
 Those, *dem. pro.* labo, lezo.  
 Thrash, *v.* (flog) tyaya.  
 „ (as corn) bula.  
 Thread, *n.* izintambo, urala.  
 Thread, *v.* (as a needle) rubela.  
 Throat, *n.* umpimbo.  
 Throb, *v.* qaqamba, nkenketa.  
 Throw, *v.* ponsa.  
 „ (up, as soil) jula.  
 „ (down, as a load) tinsila.  
 „ (away) lahlela.  
 Thrush, *n.* (a disease) amalovula.  
 Thunder, *v.* duma.  
 Thump, *v.* (as a calf) tubula.  
 Thus, *adv.* njalo.  
 Thy people or place, kini.  
 Tick, *n.* (large) umkaza.  
 „ (small) ikazane.  
 Tickle, *v.* eumbacumba, tikatika.  
 Tidy person, *n.* iunono.  
 Till, *v.* lima.  
 Time, *n.* isikati.  
 To, *prep.* ku, uku.  
 Tobacco, *n.* ngwai.  
 To-day, *adv.* namuhla.  
 Toddle, *v.* tupaza.  
 Toe, *n.* izwane.  
 To-gather, *adv.* kanye

Together, *adv.* (in one place) ndawonye.  
 To-morrow, *adv.* ngomuso.  
 Tonsil, *n.* ilaka.  
 Tooth, *n.* izinyo.  
 Torch, *n.* isihlanti.  
 Tortoise, *n.* ufudu.  
 Toss, *v.* jila.  
 „ (up, as a child) jujubeza.  
 Touch, *v.* pata, tinta.  
 „ (indecently) putaza.  
 Trample, *v.* nyatela.  
 Transgress, *v.* eqa.  
 Translate, *v.* kumusha.  
 Trip, *v.* tiya.  
 Tread, *v.* nyatela.  
 Treat, *v.* (as a doctor) elapa.  
 „ (unbecomingly) hembesela.  
 „ (kindly) bonelela.  
 Tree, *n.* umuti.  
 Trekton, *n.* umgongqolozì.  
 Tremble, *v.* tutumela.  
 Trial, *n.* isilingo.  
 Tribe, *n.* isizwe.  
 Tripe, *n.* umhlwehlwe.  
 Trot, *v.* (as a horse) quqa.  
 Trouble, *v.* kataza.  
 Trousers, *n.* ibulukwe.  
 Trumpet, *n.* itilongo.  
 Trunk, *n.* (of elephant) umboko.  
 Trust, *v.* temba.  
 Truth, *n.* iqiniso, isiminya.  
 Try, *v.* linga.  
 Tub, *n.* umpongolo.  
 Tune, *n.* ivumo.  
 Turbulent-person, *n.* umxokozeli.  
 Turf, *n.* isisinde.  
 Turn, *v.* penduka.  
 „ (cause to) pendula.  
 „ (back) buya.  
 „ (back, as oxen) kalima.  
 „ (down, as a leaf) peca.  
 „ (out to) pambukela.  
 „ (up soft soil) vukuza.  
 „ (the back on one) lulatela.  
 „ (out of the way) cezuka.  
 Twice, *adv.* kabili.  
 Twin, *n.* iwele.  
 Twine, *v.* (as a string) qokota.  
 Twine, *n.* intambo.

Twist, *v.* (as thread) pota.  
 „ (as an ancle) sonta.  
 Two, *adj.* bili.

## U.

Udder, *n.* ibele.  
 Ulcer, *n.* isilonda.  
 Umhlali, *n.* Umhlali.  
 Unbind, *v.* tukuhula.  
 Uncork, *v.* vumbulula.  
 Uncover, *v.* sibukula.  
 Under, *prep.* pansì.  
 Understand, *v.* qonda.  
 Undervalue, *v.* kesa.  
 Unfold, *v.* sombulula.  
 Unload, *v.* etula.  
 Unloose, *v.* kumula.  
 Unripe fruit, *n.* (as figs) umpobo.  
 Untie, *v.* tukuhula.  
 Until, *adv.* ze.  
 Untruth, *n.* amanga.  
 Unwind, *v.t.* tandulula.  
 Uphraid, *v.* jakada.  
 Uphold, *v.* sekela, pasa.  
 Upon, *prep.* pezu.  
 Upright, *adj.* qoto, lungileyo.  
 Us, *pro.* tina.  
 Usage, *n.* imvelo, indabuko.  
 Use, *v.* (many words) zenga.

## V.

Vaccinate, *v.* gcaba.  
 Vain (to be), *v.* zidlula.  
 „ (strut) qenya.  
 Valuable thing, *n.* igugu.  
 Vanish, *v.* nyamalala.  
 Vegetate, *v.* mila.  
 Vein, *n.* umtambo.  
 Vend, *v.* tengisa.  
 Verify, *v.* qinisa.  
 Vertigo, *n.* isizunguzane.  
 Verulam, *n.* um Dhloti.  
 Very great, *adv.* kulu kakulu.  
 Very-long-ago, *adv.* kwazakwabapakade.  
 Vex, *v.* kataza, hlupa.  
 Vibrate, *v.* dikizela.

Vice, *n.* isibambo.  
 View, *v.* bona, buka.  
 Vigour, *n.* amandhla.  
 Vile, *adj.* bi.  
 Vine, *n.* isinwazi.  
 Vilely (to act), *v.* shinga.  
 Vindicate, *v.* pikela.  
 Violate, *v.* ona.  
 Virgin, *n.* intombi.  
 Vivify, *v.* pilisa.  
 Voice, *n.* ilizwi.  
 Vomit, *v.* hlanza.  
 „ (violently) giligiga.  
 Voracious (to be), *v.* rara.  
 Voracious person, *n.* isiminzi.  
 Vortex, *n.* (as a whirlpool) isiyaluyalu  
 (but whirlwind, isikwityikwityi).  
 Vulture, *n.* inqe.

W.

Waddle, *v.* (as a duck) balazela.  
 Wade, *v.* wela.  
 Wages, *n.* inkokelo, umvuzo.  
 Wagon, *v.* inqola.  
 Wagon-road, *n.* umgwaqo.  
 Wagoner, *n.* umtyayeli.  
 Wail, *v.* lila.  
 Wailing, *n.* isikomololo.  
 Wait, *v.* hlala.  
 Waken, *v.* vusa, papamisa.  
 Walk, *v.* hamba.  
 „ (through mud and rain) baxazela.  
 „ (for exercise) vagatya.  
 „ (with a staff) sinelela.  
 „ (lamely) xuka.  
 „ (in the dark) dukuza.  
 „ (behind) landela.  
 „ (a long distance) dandabuza.  
 „ (slowly) totoba.  
 „ (fast) kabuzela.  
 „ (elegantly) ntenteleza.  
 „ (as a drunkard) badazela.  
 „ (as a man weary) divaza.  
 „ (like a duck) bwacazela.  
 Wall, *n.* udonga.  
 Wander, *v.* ndinda, duka.  
 Wanderer, *n.* umhambuma.

Wane, *v.* (as the moon) sinya.  
 Want, *v.* dinga, swela.  
 War, *n.* ukulwa.  
 War, *v.* (go out to) hlasela.  
 War-shield, *n.* isihlangu.  
 Ward off, *v.* vikela.  
 Warrior, *n.* ibuto, iqawe.  
 Warm (to be), *v.* fudumala.  
 Warm (one's self), *v.* ota.  
 Warn, *v.* yala.  
 Wart, *n.* insumpa.  
 Wash, *v.* geza.  
 „ (the mouth) hlukulula.  
 Wasp, *n.* umnyovu.  
 Waste, *v.* cita.  
 Watch, *v.* lunda.  
 „ (as a spy) hlola.  
 „ (as a cat) qapa.  
 Watch-hut, *n.* ixiba.  
 Water, *n.* amanzi.  
 „ (lukewarm) isivivi.  
 Waterboem, *n.* (a tree) umdoni.  
 Waterfall, *n.* impopomo.  
 Waterpool, *n.* idangu.  
 Water-snake, *n.* ivuzamanzi.  
 Wattle, *v.t.* pica.  
 Wave, *v.* (as trees) tenga.  
 Waves, *n.* amaza.  
 Wax, *n.* (bees') isikupa.  
 „ (ear) isigonogono.  
 Way, *n.* (path) indhlela.  
 „ (custom) unukuba.  
 We, *pron.* tina.  
 Weak, *adj.* butakataka.  
 Wean, *v.* lumula.  
 Weapon, *n.* isikali.  
 Wear, *v.* (blanket) ambata.  
 „ (clothes) gqoka.  
 „ (ornaments) vumula.  
 „ (by friction) gudhla.  
 Weary, *adj.* katele, diniwe.  
 Weasel, *n.* icakide.  
 Weather, *n.* (cold) amakaza.  
 „ (sultry) isigudumezi.  
 Weave, *v.* aluka.  
 Wedding-party, *n.* umtimba.  
 Weed, *v.* hlakula.  
 Weeds, *n.* ukula.  
 Weep, *v.* lila.

Weevil, *n.* imbovane.  
 Weight, *n.* isisindo.  
 Welcome, *v.t.* (as a friend) takazela.  
 Well, *adv.* kahle.  
 Well-to-be-sure ! *int.* yeka !  
 West, *n.* intyonalanga.  
 Wet, *v.* netisa.  
 Wet, *adj.* manzi, netile.  
 Wether, *n.* umtondolo.  
 Whale, *n.* umkomo.  
 Wheel, *n.* isondo.  
 When, *adv.* mzukwana.  
 Whereas, *adv.* ingati.  
 Whisker, *n.* irwanqa.  
 White, *adj.* mhllope.  
 White man, *n.* umlungu.  
 White nation, *n.* isilungu.  
 Whitewash, *n.* umcako.  
 Whore, *n.* isiropo.  
 Wicked (to be), *v.* onakala.  
 Wide, *adj.* banzi.  
 Widow, *n.* umflokazi.  
 Wife, *n.* umfazi, umka.  
 „ (my wife) umkami.  
 „ (thy wife) umkako.  
 „ (his wife) umkake.  
 „ (the chief's) inkosikazi.  
 „ (a son's) umalokazana.  
 Wild banana, *n.* isidabane.  
 Wilderness, *n.* ihlane.  
 Will, *n.* intando.  
 Willow-tree, *n.* umyezane.  
 Wind, *n.* umoya.  
 „ (to rumble a) *v.* xuxuzela.  
 Wind, *v.* tandela.  
 „ (as a watch) suluza.  
 Windpipe, *n.* uqoqoqo.  
 Wing, *n.* ipiko.  
 „ (to flap) *v.* wabazela.  
 Wink, *v.* pazima.  
 „ (make a sign) qweba.  
 Winnow, *v.* ela.  
 Winter, *n.* ubusika.  
 Wipe, *v.* sula.  
 „ (the nose) finya.  
 Wither, *v.* buua.  
 Within, *prep.* pukati.  
 Witness, *v.* takaza.  
 Witness, *n.* ufakazi.

Wizard, *n.* umtakati.  
 Woman, *n.* umfazi.  
 „ (young) intombi.  
 „ (old) isalukazi.  
 „ (barren) innnyumba.  
 „ (tidy) inono.  
 „ (lazy) ivila.  
 Womankind, *n.* isifazana.  
 Wonder, *v.* mangala.  
 Woo, *v.* xoxa.  
 Wool, *n.* uboya.  
 Word, *n.* ilizwi.  
 Work, *v.* sebenza.  
 „ (in wood) baza.  
 „ (in clay) bumba.  
 „ (iron) kanda.  
 Worm, *n.* umsundu.  
 Worms, *n.* (intestinal) izilo.  
 Worm, *n.* (of an auger) insonge.  
 Wormwood, *n.* umhlonyane.  
 Worry, *v.* (for money) belesela.  
 Wound, *v.* limaza.  
 Wound, *n.* inxeba.  
 „ (large) isibakulu.  
 Wrench off, *v.* hlusula.  
 Wrestle, *v.* bambana.  
 Wring, *v.* kama.  
 „ (as head of a fowl) hlusula.  
 Wrinkle, *n.* umabimbi, inhlouze.  
 Wrist, *n.* isihlakala.  
 Write, *v.* loba, bala.  
 Writhe, *v.* binya, yayateka.  
 Wrong, *adj.* bi.  
 Wrong (to do), *v.* ona.

## Y.

Yawn, *v.* zamula.  
 Ye, *pro.* nina.  
 Yea, *adv.* ewe, yebo.  
 Year, *n.* umyaka.  
 Yeast, *n.* imbiliso.  
 Yellow-wood, *n.* umkoba.  
 „ (real) umsoniti.  
 Yes, *adv.* ewe, yebo.  
 Yesterday, *adv.* izolo.  
 Yoke, *v.* bopela.  
 Yonder, *adv.* lapaya.

You, *pro.* wena.

Young, *adj.* tya.

Young lady, *n.* inkosazana.

Young man, *n.* (muscular) ijara.

Young man, *n.* insizwa.

Young dog, *n.* iundhlu.

Your, *pro.* ako.

Your people or place, kiti.

Youth, *n.* umfana.

Youth, *abs. n.* ubutya.

## Z.

Zebra, *n.* idube.

Zone, *n.* isibopo, isibamba.

Zwartkop, *n.* imi Babu.



# ZULU-ENGLISH DICTIONARY

## OF SELECTED WORDS.

For the formation of Causative, Objective, Reflective, and Reciprocal verbs, as also of the Passive voice, the Student will consult the tables.

### A.

Aba, *v.t.* apportion, allot.  
Abela, *v.t.* apportion, or allot to.  
Abelo (Is), *n.* a share.  
Ahlukana, *v.t.* separate.  
Ahlukanisa, *v.* cause to separate.  
Ahluko (Is), *n.* chapter.  
Ahlula, *v.t.* conquer, surpass.  
Ahluleka, *v.* be conquered, &c.  
Ai ke, nothing of importance.  
Aka, *v.t.* build.  
Akelwane (Um), *n.* neighbour.  
Ala, *v.i.* refuse.  
Aluka, *v.* go out, as cattle ; weave.  
Alukazi (Is), *n.* an old woman.  
Alusa *v.t.* herd cattle.  
Amanga, *adv.* not so.  
Ambata, *v.* put on, as a blanket.  
Ambula, *v.* take off, as a blanket.  
Amuka, *v.* take by force.  
Amukela, *v.t.* receive.  
Amula, *v.t.* interrupt.  
Amvu (Is), *n.* summer heat of the sun.  
Andhla (Is), *n.* hand.  
Andhle (Ulw), *n.* sea.  
Andisa, *v.* cause to multiply.  
Andulela, *v.t.* precede.  
Anela, *v.* suffice.  
Anga, *v.t.* kiss.  
Anga (Ulw), *n.* palate.

Anula, *v.t.* enlarge, as a house.  
Anya, *v.t.* suck the breast.  
Apuka, *v.i.* be broken.  
Apula, *v.t.* break, as a plate.  
Au ! *int.* indignation, admiration.  
Azi, *v.t.* know.  
Azisa, *v.* cause to know.

### B.

Ba, *v.i.* be.  
Baba, *v.i.* be bitter.  
Baba (U), *n.* my father.  
Babakulu (U), *n.* my grandfather.  
Babala, *v.* come or go on business.  
Babaza, *v.t.* extol.  
Babazi (Um), *n.* adulator.  
Babe (U for Ulu), *n.* guinea-grass.  
Babekazi (U), *n.* paternal uncle.  
Babela, *v.i.* burn grass around a kraal.  
Baea, *v.i.* hide one's self.  
Badalala, *v.i.* lie sprawling.  
Badazela, *v.i.* waddle, walk as a drunken man.  
Bade (I), *n.* Natal lily.  
Bakabaka (Isi), *n.* empty space.  
Bakabu (Isi), *n.* a large wound.  
Bakaza *v.i.* look like a thief.  
Bala, *v.t.* count.  
Bala (O), *adv.* plainly.  
Bala (I), *n.* spot.  
Balasi (Im), *n.* flowers.

Baleka, *v.i.* run away.  
 Balela, *v.* be fine, as the weather.  
 Bamba, *v.t.* hold.  
 Bambana, *v.* wrestle.  
 Bambata, *v.t.* pat, as a dog.  
 Bambezela, *v.t.* detain.  
 Bambo (Isi), *n.* vice.  
 Bambo (U for Ulu), *n.* rib.  
 Bamu (Isi), *n.* gun.  
 Bamuza, *v.i.* talk windy stuff.  
 Banda, *v.t.* split wood.  
 Bandamu (Um), *n.* ring-worm.  
 Bandhla (I), *n.* a company of men.  
 Baneka, *v.* flash, as lightning.  
 Banga, *v.* cause.  
 Banga (I), *n.* a distance.  
 Bangalala, *v.* be furiously angry.  
 Bango (Um), *n.* family quarrel.  
 Bane (Isi), *n.* candle.  
 Bankwa (Isi), *n.* lizard.  
 Bansa, *v.t.* slap with the hand.  
 Bantyi (I), *n.* a coat.  
 Banyana (Isi), *n.* pistol.  
 Banzi, *adj.* wide.  
 Baqa (U for Ulu), *n.* Native torch.  
 Baru (I), *n.* skin petticoat.  
 Basa, *v.t.* kindle, as a fire.  
 Bata (Im), *n.* oyster.  
 Batyelana (Im), *n.* a dwarf.  
 Bavu (U for Ulu), *n.* scar.  
 Baxa (Im), *n.* branch of a stream.  
 Baxazela, *v.i.* walk through mud and rain.  
 Baya (Isi), *n.* cattle-fold.  
 Baza, *v.t.* work in wood.  
 Bazelo (I), *n.* chip of wood.  
 Bebeteka, *v.i.* flame and spread rapidly,  
     as a grass fire.  
 Bebezela, *v.t.* make grimaces at.  
 Beca, *v.t.* paint.  
 Beja, *v.* be red, as the sky.  
 Beka, *v.t.* place, put.  
 Beka, *v.t.* look at, see.  
 Bekabeka, *v.i.* glance round from fear.  
 B-kela, *v.i.* be patient.  
 Bekelana, *v.* be parallel.  
 Bekelela, *v.t.* arrange one over another,  
     as bricks.  
 Bekezela, *v.i.* be patient.  
 Bele (I), *n.* female-breast.

Belesela, *v.t.* dun for money.  
 Beleta, *v.* give birth to a child.  
 Belo (U), *n.* speed.  
 Bema, *v.t.* smoke, take snuff.  
 Bembesela, *v.t.* treat unbecomingly.  
 Bena, *v.i.* protrude the chest.  
 Bende (U for Ulu), *n.* milt.  
 Benga, *v.t.* slice meat.  
 Benge (Im), *n.* a small basket.  
 Bensa, *v.i.* be saucy.  
 Betela, *v.t.* hammer in, as nails.  
 Beu (Im), *n.* seed.  
 Bi, *adj.* bad.  
 Bi (Isi), *n.* sweepings of a room.  
 Bibi (I), *n.* a heap of rubbish.  
 Biciza, *v.i.* squeeze out, as filth.  
 Bidi (Izi), *n.* sediment.  
 Bika, *v.* report.  
 Biki (Um), *n.* reporter.  
 Bikibiki (Izi), *n.* dainties.  
 Bila, *v.* boil.  
 Bila (Im), *n.* rock-rabbit.  
 Bila (Um), *n.* mealies.  
 Bilapo (Im), *n.* the groin.  
 Bili, *adj.* two.  
 Bili (Isi), *n.* real truth.  
 Bilini (Um), *n.* bowel.  
 Biliso (Im), *n.* yeast.  
 Bilo (U for Ulu), *n.* dewlap.  
 Bingelelo (Isi), *n.* salutation.  
 Binya, *v.i.* writhe.  
 Bipa, *v.* look, as about to cry.  
 Bisi (U for Ulu), *n.* sweet milk.  
 Biya, *v.t.* fence.  
 Biza, *v.t.* call.  
 Biza (Im), *n.* a large beer-pot.  
 Bizo (I), *n.* rame.  
 Bo (Im), *n.* dysentery.  
 Bobo (Im), *n.* a hole, as in wood.  
 Boboza, *v.* perforate, talk much.  
 Bobozi (Um), *n.* a garrulous person.  
 Bocoza, *v.t.* indent, or press in.  
 Bohla, *v.i.* belch.  
 Boja, *v.* syringe.  
 Boko (Um), *n.* elephant's trunk.  
 Bokondo (Im), *n.* stone for grinding or  
     making a floor.  
 Bola, *v.i.* rot.  
 Boleka, *v.t.* lend, borrow.

Bomi (U for Ulu), *n.* life, meat that is full of life.

Bomvu, *adj.* red.

Bona, *v.t.* see.

Bonakala, *v.i.* appear.

Bonakalisa, *v.t.* cause to appear.

Bonda, *v.t.* stir, as porridge.

Bonda (Isi), *n.* a pole.

Bonda (Um), *n.* a mob, &c.

Bonelela, *v.* treat kindly.

Bonga, *v.t.* thank, praise.

Bongo (Isi), *n.* surname.

Bongo (Um), *n.* report of a gun.

Bongolo (Im), *n.* mule.

Bongoza, *v.t.* spoil, as a child.

Bono (Isi), *v.* rupture of the navel.

Bopa, *v.t.* bind.

Bopela, *v.t.* inspan.

Bopo (Isi), *n.* band.

Botoza, *v.* break down in work.

Bovane (Im), *n.* weevil.

Bovu (U for Ulu), *n.* pus.

Boxa, *v.t.* knead, as flour.

Boxi (Um), *n.* quarrelsome person.

Boya (U for Ubu), *n.* fur, wool.

Buba, *v.i.* perish.

Bubesi (I), *n.* lion.

Bubu (Im), *n.* Zwartkop.

Bubula, *v.i.* moan.

Bubuya, *v.i.* attack in friendly disguise.

Bubulungu (Isi), *n.* bluff at D'Urban.

Buda, *v.i.* jabber.

Budazela, *v.i.* talk in sleep.

Buka, *v.t.* look at.

Buko (Isi), *n.* mirror.

Buku (Isi), *n.* a log of wood.

Bula, *v.* thrash out, as corn.

Bulala, *v.t.* injure, kill.

Bulukwe (I), *n.* trousers.

Buma (I), *n.* dark-green beads.

Bumba, *v.t.* work in clay.

Bumba (I), *v.* clay.

Buna, *v.i.* fade, wither.

Bunga, *v.i.* flock, as birds.

Bunu (I), *n.* a Boer.

Bunzi (I), *n.* forehead.

Buqa, *v.t.* harrow in seed.

Buqa (Im), *n.* a cast-away.

Buquza, *v.i.* make a dust with the feet.

Busa, *v.t.* govern.

Busisa, *v.* prosper.

Buso (Um), *n.* kingdom.

Buta, *v.t.* gather together.

Buto (I), *n.* soldier.

Butyelezi, *adj.* slippery.

Buxela, *v.t.* drive stakes in the ground.

Buya, *v.i.* return.

Buyela, *v.i.* return to, &c.

Buyisa, *v.t.* restore.

Buza, *v.t.* ask, enquire.

Buzi (I), *n.* field-rat.

Buzi (Im), *n.* goat.

Buzo (Um), *n.* question.

Bwacazela, *v.i.* walk badly, like a duck.

## C.

Ca, *adv.* no.

Caba (ukuti), *v.* lay, or lie flat.

Caba (Isi), *n.* pancake.

Caba (Um), *n.* boiled mealies.

Cabo, *adv.* no.

Cakide (I), *n.* weasel.

Cako (Um), *n.* lime, whitewash.

Cala (I), *n.* fault, guilt.

Camanga, *v.i.* think.

Cambalala, *v.i.* recline.

Camelo (Isi), *n.* pillow.

Camusa, *v.t.* lance, as a boil.

Camusela, *v.* hatch chickens.

Cansi (I), *n.* a mat made of rushes.

Capa, *v.t.* smear.

Capa (Isi), *n.* door.

Capazela, *v.t.* make blots on paper.

Capuna, *v.t.* take out a little.

Catulo (Isi), *n.* shoe.

Catyana (I), *n.* dot, point.

Cebo (I), *n.* device, plan.

Cela, *v.* ask for.

Celankobe (Isi), *n.* evening-star.

Ceme (Isi), *n.* a line of men.

Centa, *v.t.* clear the ground of grass.

Cezuka, *v.i.* turn out of the path.

Cibi (I), *n.* pond.

Cibityelo (Um), *n.* an arrow.

Cica, *v.* discharge, as a wound.

Cicima, *v.i.* overflow, as water.

Ciciyela, *v.i.* speak kitchen-Kafir.

Cide (I), *n.* one-eyed person.

Cikica, *v.t.* rub the eye.  
 Cilo (Um), *n.* reim.  
 Cima, *v.t.* extinguish, shut the eyes.  
 Cindezela, *v.t.* press, print.  
 Cita, *v.t.* waste.  
 Cizelela, *v.i.* support, as a statement.  
 Co (ukuti), *v.* reverberate.  
 Coba (I), *n.* sandstone.  
 Coco (Isi), *n.* headring.  
 Cocoma, *v.i.* hop, as a frog.  
 Coleka, *v.i.* be fine, as flour.  
 Colekile, *adj.* fine.  
 Colisa, *v.t.* grind very fine.  
 Colo (Isi), *n.* native chignon.  
 Combo (In), *n.* yellow beads.  
 Copelela, *v.i.* persevere, be resolute.  
 Copo (Ubu), *n.* brain.  
 Cotomezela, *v.i.* be careful.  
 Coyacoya, *v.i.* be bashful.  
 Cula, *v.i.* stand, as a sick **ox**.  
 Cumbacumba, *v.t.* tickle.  
 Cunula, *v.t.* irritate a person.  
 Cupa, *v.t.* lay a trap for.  
 Cupe, *int.* look out!  
 Cuta, *v.* compress the lips.  
 Cwaka (ukuti), be perfectly still.  
 Cwala, *v.* dress the hair.  
 Cwazibe (U), *n.* evening-star.  
 Cwazimula, *v.i.* glitter.  
 Cweba, *v.i.* be fine, as the sky.  
 Cwecwa, *v.t.* pare, as potatoes.  
 Cwenga, *v.t.* decant, leaving the sediment.  
 Cwila, *v.i.* dive, as in water.

## D.

Daba (In), *n.* news, story.  
 Dabane (Isi), *n.* wild banana.  
 Dabuka, *v.i.* be torn, heart-broken.  
 Dabuko (In), *n.* original custom.  
 Dabula, *v.t.* tear; survey, as land.  
 Dabulizwe (Um), *n.* land-surveyor.  
 Duda (I), *n.* duck.  
 Dade (U), *n.* sister.  
 Daka (U), *n.* mud, mortar.  
 Dakisa, *v.* intoxicate.  
 Dakwa (Isi), *n.* drunkard.  
 Dala, *v.t.* create.  
 Dala, *adj.* old.  
 Dalazela, *v.* denude the body publicly.

Dalisa, *v.* sell by auction.  
 Damuka, *v.i.* open and divide, as a fog.  
 Dandabuza, *v.i.* travel a long distance.  
 Dandato (In), *n.* a ring.  
 Dangala, *v.* be languid.  
 Dangu (I), *n.* a stagnant pool.  
 Dansula, *v.t.* strike with a stick.  
 Dawo (In), *n.* place.  
 Dazuluka, *v.i.* break out into a cry.  
 De, *adj.* long, high.  
 De (Ubu), *n.* height.  
 Deda, *v.i.* move on one side.  
 Dela, *v.t.* relinquish, give up.  
 Deleli (Isi), *n.* a careless person.  
 Denda (U for Ulu), *n.* foam from the mouth.  
 Deni (In), *n.* inside, as of fruit.  
 Depa, *v.i.* grow tall.  
 Dhla, *v.t.* eat.  
 Dhlala, *v.i.* play.  
 Dhlala (In), *n.* famine.  
 Dhlalifa (In), *n.* heir.  
 Dhlau (U for Ulu), *n.* pincers.  
 Dhlebe (In), *n.* ear.  
 Dhlela (In), *n.* path.  
 Dhlelo (I), *n.* pasture.  
 Dhloti (Um), *n.* Verulam.  
 Dhlovu (In), *n.* elephant.  
 Dhlozi (I), *n.* ancestral spirit.  
 Dhlw (In), *n.* house.  
 Dhlula, *v.* pass on.  
 Dhlulamiti (In), *n.* giraffe.  
 Dibilitye (In), *n.* penny.  
 Didakalisa, *v.t.* confuse.  
 Didi (Um), *n.* rectum.  
 Dikizela, *v.i.* vibrate.  
 Dilika, *v.i.* fall down, as a wall.  
 Dilinga, *v.t.* make round.  
 Dilinga (In), *n.* a ball.  
 Diliza, *v.t.* pull down.  
 Dima (In), *n.* piece of ground hoed.  
 Dinda (In), *n.* a worthless thing.  
 Dindi (Isi), *n.* clod.  
 Dindiliza, *v.i.* lie stark-naked.  
 Dinga, *v.t.* be in want of.  
 Dipizisa, *v.t.* puzzle.  
 Divaza, *v.* walk, as a man weary.  
 Dobo (U for Ulu), *n.* fish-hook.  
 Doda (In), *n.* man.  
 Dodana (In), *n.* son.

Dodakazi (In), *n.* daughter.  
 Dolo (I), *n.* knee.  
 Dololwane (In), *n.* elbow.  
 Donda, *v.i.* be unwilling.  
 Dondi (Isi), *n.* an unwilling person.  
 Dondoshiya (Um), *n.* a giant.  
 Donga (U for Ulu), *n.* bank, as of a river.  
 Doni (Um), *n.* waterboem.  
 Donsa, *v.t.* pull.  
 Donsi (U for Ulu), *n.* sting of a bee.  
 Duba, *v.i.* take offence.  
 Dube (I), *n.* zebra.  
 Dubula, *v.t.* shoot, as with a gun.  
 Duda, *v.t.* incite to rudeness.  
 Duduza, *v.* quiet a child.  
 Duka, or eduka, *v.i.* go astray.  
 Dukisa, *v.t.* cause to wander, mislead.  
 Duku (I), *n.* handkerchief.  
 Dukuza, *v.i.* walk in the dark.  
 Dulela, *v.i.* speak without being heeded.  
 Duma, *v.i.* thunder.  
 Dumala, *v.i.* be disappointed, stale, vapid.  
 Dumisa, *v.t.* extol, honour.  
 Dumo (U for Ulu), *n.* fame.  
 Duna (In), *n.* officer under a chief.  
 Dundubala, *v.i.* get upon high ground.  
 Dunga, *v.t.* agitate water.  
 Dungeka, *v.i.* be agitated, as water or  
     the mind.  
 Dwa (In), *n.* a crane.  
 Dwa (Umu), *n.* a line drawn.  
 Dwala (I), *n.* flat rock.  
 Dwangu (In), *n.* a cloth, &c.  
 Dweba, *v.t.* draw, as a line.  
 Dweleman (In), *n.* a clever person.

## E.

Eba, *v.* steal.  
 Ebu (Ulw), *n.* snake's skin.  
 Ebula, *v.t.* peel off.  
 Eduze, *adv.* near.  
 Ehla, *v.* come or go down.  
 Ehliisa, *v.* lower; give, as milk.  
 Ehlika, *v.* dismount.  
 Ehlo (Am), *n.* eyes.  
 Ehlobo, *adv.* in summer.  
 Ela, *v.* winnow.  
 Elama, *v.t.* follow in age.  
 Elapa, *v.t.* treat, as a doctor.

Elapi (Um), *n.* a doctor.  
 Eluhlangotini, *adv.* at, or in the side.  
 Elula, *v.t.* stretch.  
 Embata, *v.t.* put on a blanket.  
 Emmuni, *adv.* at noon.  
 Enuka, *v.* depart.  
 Ennyango, *adv.* at the entrance.  
 Empumalanga, *adv.* in the east.  
 Emtambama, *adv.* in the afternoon.  
 Ensamo, *adv.* at the back of a hut.  
 Enama, *v.i.* be contented.  
 Enana, *v.* exchange.  
 Enanela, *v.* echo.  
 Enanelo (Is), *n.* echo, shout of joy.  
 Endisa, *v.* cause a girl to marry.  
 Eneka, *v.* dry or air, as clothes.  
 Engama, *v.* hang over.  
 Engeza, *v.* give more.  
 Engula, *v.* skim, as cream.  
 Enhla, *adv.* higher.  
 Enhle, *adv.* in the veldt.  
 Enqaka, *v.t.* catch, as a ball.  
 Enqena, *v.i.* be indolent.  
 Enwaya, *v.t.* scratch, as a place which  
     itches.  
 Enyakenye, *adv.* last year.  
 Enyela, *v.i.* be dislocated.  
 Enyuka, *v.i.* go up.  
 Enza, *v.t.* do, make.  
 Enzi (Um), *n.* maker.  
 Enzantsi, *adv.* lower.  
 Epula, *v.t.* take a pot from the fire.  
 Eqa, *v.* jump, transgress.  
 Esaba, *v.t.* fear.  
 Esipundu, *adv.* at the back of the head.  
 Eta, *v.* pour between the thumbs.  
 Etula, *v.t.* take off, as a pot or hat.  
 Etyisa, *v.i.* chew the cud.  
 Euka, *v.t.* go down.  
 Eyama, *v.i.* lean against.  
 Eyisa, *v.i.* be impudent, insolent.  
 Ezwakala, *v.* be perceived, tasted, &c.

## F.

Fa, *v.* be sick; broken; dead, as "ufile,  
     "he is dead."  
 Fa (Ili), *n.* inheritance.  
 Fa (Uku), *n.* sickness, death.  
 Faca (Isi), *n.* dent, as in a pot or cup.

- Fafa (ukuti), sprinkle.  
 Fafaza, *v.t.* sprinkle.  
 Faka, *v.* put on, in, or into.  
 Fakazi (U), *n.* witness.  
 Fakolweni (U), *n.* half-a-crown.  
 Falani (Isi), *n.* a plant, the leaves of which are used as snuff.  
 Fambele (Im), *n.* a cow with only one teat.  
 Fana, *v.i.* resemble, be like.  
 Fana (Um), *n.* a boy.  
 Fanekisa, *v.t.* fancy, imagine.  
 Fanekiso (Um), *n.* picture.  
 Fanela, *v.* fit, proper.  
 Fasimba (U), *n.* a dry fog.  
 Fazana (Isi), *n.* womankind.  
 Fazi (Um), *n.* woman, wife.  
 Fe (Im), *n.* a kind of sweet cane.  
 Febe (Isi), *n.* harlot.  
 Fehlane (U for Ulu), *n.* ague.  
 Feketa, *v.i.* frolic, sport.  
 Fela, *v.t.* die for ; spit.  
 Felokazi (Um), *n.* widow.  
 Fene (Im), *n.* baboon.  
 Fenkala (Im), *n.* sorrel for cleaning the teeth.  
 Feza, *v.t.* complete, perfect.  
 Fezela (U for Ulu), *n.* scorpion.  
 Fibinga (Im), *n.* pink beads.  
 Fica, *v.* drain off.  
 Ficinga, *v.t.* squeeze, as a lemon.  
 Fifane (Isi), *n.* an angry person.  
 Fihla, *v.* hide, conceal.  
 Fihlakalo (Im), *n.* mystery.  
 Fihliza, *v.* crush.  
 Fihlo (Im), *n.* secret.  
 Fika, *v.i.* arrive.  
 Findo (I), *n.* knot, as in thread.  
 Pingqa, *v.* pucker.  
 Finya, *v.i.* blow the nose.  
 Finyela, *v.i.* make room by drawing in the legs.  
 Finyila (Ama), *n.* mucus from the nose.  
 Fipula, *v.i.* lose colour ; be obscure.  
 Fisa, *v.t.* desire earnestly.  
 Fitiza, *v.i.* prevaricate.  
 Fo (Isi), *n.* sickness.  
 Focoza, *v.* compress an elastic thing.  
 Fohla, *v.t.* break through a fence.  
 Fokazi (Um), *n.* stranger.  
 Fola, *v.i.* sink, as the top of a hut.  
 Foloko (Isi), *n.* a fork.  
 Fonyo (Isi), *n.* muzzle for a calf.  
 Fotyolo (I), *n.* spade.  
 Fu (I), *n.* cloud.  
 Fu (U for Ulu), *n.* paunch.  
 Fuba (Isi), *n.* breast.  
 Fudu (U for Ulu), *n.* tortoise.  
 Fudumala, *v.i.* be warm.  
 Fudumeza, *v.t.* make warm.  
 Fuku (I), *n.* fowl-house.  
 Fukufuku (Ama), *n.* a heap of rubbish.  
 Fukula, *v.t.* lift up.  
 Fula, *v.t.* gather vegetables.  
 Fula (Um), *n.* river.  
 Fulatela, *v.t.* turn the back to.  
 Fulela, *v.t.* thatch.  
 Fuma, *v.i.* be misty.  
 Fumana, *v.* find, overtake.  
 Fumba, *v.* heap.  
 Fumbata, *v.t.* grasp with the hand.  
 Fumbe (Im), *n.* riddle.  
 Fumbu (Isi), *n.* a hump back.  
 Fumifuto (Um), *n.* bale.  
 Fuma, *v.t.* seek, want.  
 Funda, *v.i.* read, learn.  
 Funda (Um), *n.* an uncouth person.  
 Fundekela, *v.t.* bother, tease.  
 Fundi (Um), *n.* learner.  
 Fundisi (Um), *n.* teacher.  
 Fundo (Isi), *n.* lesson.  
 Funga, *v.i.* swear.  
 Fungo (Isi), *n.* oath.  
 Funisa, *v.i.* wish to sell (nga).  
 Funza, *v.t.* feed a young child.  
 Fuqulu (Um), *n.* a large bale.  
 Fusa, *v.t.* smoke over a fire.  
 Fusi (I), *n.* fallow ground.  
 Futa, *v.t.* inflate, blow.  
 Futa (Ama), *n.* fat.  
 Futa (U for Ulu), *n.* stench.  
 Futi, *adv.* again.  
 Futo (Um), *n.* bellows.  
 Futyane, *adj.* short.  
 Fuya, *v.t.* keep live-stock.  
 Fuza, *v.t.* resemble ; strip grass off a hut.  
 Fuzo (U for Ulu), *n.* resemblance in habits.

## G.

Gaba (I), *n.* bottle, branch.  
 Gaba (In), *n.* bough, branch.  
 Gabade (I), *n.* a lump of earth.  
 Gabavuleka, *v.i.* strain every nerve; do one's best, as a thief, but fail.  
 Gade (I), *n.* igabade.  
 Gaga (U for Ulu), *n.* skeleton of an animal.  
 Galazela, *v.i.* be saucy.  
 Galo (In), *n.* human arm.  
 Gama (I), *n.* name.  
 Gamatisa, *v.t.* partly fill a vessel.  
 Gana, *v.* take a husband.  
 Ganda, *v.t.* pound, as a floor.  
 Gangga, *v.i.* be impudent.  
 Gango (Um), *n.* the marriage cow.  
 Gazinga, *v.* parch corn.  
 Gaula, *v.t.* cut down.  
 Gaxa, *v.t.* put reim on horns of an ox.  
 Gaxa (Isi), *n.* mass, lump.  
 Gaya, *v.t.* grind, as corn.  
 Gazi (I), *n.* blood.  
 Gazi (Um), *n.* red beads.  
 Gazula, *v.* address a superior by his proper name.  
 Geaba, *v.t.* vaccinate.  
 Geagea, *v.* dance the marriage dance.  
 Geaka, *v.t.* whitewash.  
 Geija, *v.t.* sharpen a stake.  
 Geina, *v.t.* make firm, or fast.  
 Geoba, *v.t.* anoint. [has died].  
 Geuba (In), *n.* flesh of an animal that  
 Gewala, *v.i.* be full, as a river.  
 Gewalisa, *v.t.* fill.  
 Geba, *v.i.* incline.  
 Gedeza, *v.* mutter.  
 Gedhla, *v.* gnaw.  
 Gedhla, *n.* parting of the hair.  
 Gegezela, *v.* trip; amble.  
 Geja, *v.* miss, as a mark.  
 Geja (I), *n.* native pick.  
 Gema, *v.i.* pretend to strike.  
 Gengqa, *v.* roll, as a stone.  
 Genuka, *v.i.* fall back.  
 Geza, *v.t.* wash.  
 Gibe (Um), *n.* string to hang things on.  
 Gigizela, *v.i.* patter.  
 Gijima, *v.i.* run.

Gijimi (Isi), *n.* messenger.  
 Gila, *v.i.* play tricks.  
 Gila (In), *n.* gizzard.  
 Gilo (I), *n.* larynx.  
 Giligiqua, *v.i.* vomit violently.  
 Gingqa, *v.i.* roll, as a horse.  
 Goba, *v.i.* bend.  
 Gobisa, *v.t.* cause to bend.  
 Gobo (In), *n.* wicker-work enclosure for mealies.  
 Gobongo (I), *n.* eggshell.  
 Gobosi (I), *n.* any light, empty thing.  
 Goda (I), *n.* cord, rope.  
 Godhlo (Isi), *n.* a seraglio.  
 Godhlolo (Isi), *n.* large pan.  
 Godi (Isi), *n.* a hollow.  
 Godi (Um), *n.* a hole.  
 Godola, *v.* be cold.  
 Goduka, *v.* go home.  
 Goduso (In), *n.* a betrothed girl.  
 Gogoza, *v.* jolt.  
 Gologoqa, *v.i.* make a sunset.  
 Golozela, *v.* stare, or glare at.  
 Gomba (Um), *n.* tail-feather of a fowl.  
 Gomfa, *v.* stoop, as one writing.  
 Gomo (Um), *n.* a goal, as for runners.  
 Gona, *v.* hug.  
 Gongolo (In), *n.* a difficult affair.  
 Gongolo (U for Ulu), *n.* a large log.  
 Gongqolozi (Um), *n.* trektow, cable.  
 Gono (In), *n.* nipple.  
 Gonogono (Isi), *n.* ear-wax.  
 Gonoti (U for Ulu), *n.* ratan.  
 Gosi (In), *n.* nook, corner.  
 Goxana (Um), *n.* a very small hollow.  
 Gozi (In), *n.* an accident.  
 Gqaba, *v.* smear the body with clay.  
 Gqiba, *v.* fill up a hole with earth.  
 Gqibelo (Um), *n.* Saturday.  
 Gqoba or geoba, *v.* drain a cow's udder.  
 Gqoka, *v.* put on clothes.  
 Gqoko (Isi), *n.* hat.  
 Gqukumbana (In), *n.* cart.  
 Gquma, *v.* beat, as the pulse.  
 Guba, *v.* splash, as waves.  
 Gubo (In), *n.* blanket.  
 Gubu (Isi), *n.* drum.  
 Gubu (U for Ulu), *n.* Native musical instrument; harmonium, &c.

Gubuda, *v.* hoax, humbug.  
 Guda, *v.* milk a cow without a calf.  
 Gudhla, *v.* wear by friction.  
 Gudhlo (Isi), *n.* a file.  
 Gudo (Isi), *n.* a cow milked without a calf.  
 Gudu (I), *n.* horn for smoking.  
 Gudula, *v.t.* plaster a wall.  
 Gudumezi (Isi), *n.* sultry weather.  
 Guga, *v.* become old.  
 Gugu (I), *n.* anything valuable.  
 Guguda, *v.* grate with the teeth.  
 Gugumbaue (In), *n.* a porcupine.  
 Gula, *v.* be sick.  
 Gula (I), *n.* a calabash for amasi.  
 Guli (Isi), *n.* a confirmed invalid.  
 Gulube (In), *n.* a hog.  
 Gulugndela, *v.* break loose, as a prisoner.  
 Gulula, *v.t.* scrape off, as soft mud, &c.  
 Gumba, *v.t.* hollow out.  
 Gumbe (I), *n.* a deep place in water.  
 Gambi (I), *n.* a corner.  
 Gumbugela, *v.t.* invert.  
 Gumbuza, *v.* play badly on organ, &c.  
 Gume (Um), *n.* blunderer, a greedy person.  
 Gunda, *v.* cut hair.  
 Gangquluza (Um), *n.* a cable.  
 Gangqiza, *v.t.* rattle, as plates.  
 Gangu (Isi), *n.* a conspiracy.  
 Gangubala, *v.i.* be imperfectly cooked.  
 Ganguluzo, *v.* do an unprofitable work,  
     as gnawing bones.  
 Gangundhlovu (Um), *n.* Maritzburg.  
 Gangundhlovwana (Um), *n.* Greytown.  
 Gunjini (In), *n.* a military camp; maze.  
 Gunya, *v.* be raw as meat; bitter at heart.  
 Guqa, *v.i.* kneel.  
 Guqisa, *v.t.* knee-halter.  
 Guza, *v.* spite a person.  
 Gwa (I), *n.* Orange River.  
 Gwabala (I), *n.* a crow with a white neck.  
 Gwagwa (I), *n.* pinna of the ear.  
 Gwai (U for Um), *n.* tobacco, &c.  
 Gwala, *v.* be rusty.  
 Gwala (I), *n.* a coward.  
 Gwaliza, *v.* choke.  
 Gwanekana (In), *n.* a fable.  
 Gwanya (I), *n.* muripe fruit.  
 Gwaqo (Um), *n.* wagon-road.  
 Gwavuma, *v.i.* growl.

Gwaza, *v.t.* stab.  
 Gwe (In), *n.* a panther.  
 Gweba, *v.t.* push with the horns.  
 Gwebu (I), *n.* froth.  
 Gweda, *v.t.* hollow out.  
 Gwedhla, *v.* row.  
 Gwegwa, *v.t.* hook.  
 Gwegwe (In), *n.* a hook.  
 Gwele (I), *n.* harmless drink made from  
     mealies.  
 Gwenenaza, *v.i.* cry long.  
 Gwengula, *v.t.* plough on the surface;  
     hint.  
 Gwenya (In), *n.* alligator.  
 Gwenya (Um), *n.* olive-tree.  
 Gwinya, *v.t.* swallow.  
 Gwiya, *v.i.* leap about.  
 Gxila, *v.t.* stand firmly, as a tree.  
 Gxutya, *v.t.* stuff, as a bolster.

## H.

Hamba, *v.* walk.  
 Hambuma (Um), *n.* wanderer.  
 Hamuka, *v.i.* bedried up with wind or heat.  
 Hashi (I), *n.* horse.  
 Haza, *v.* rush below, as water from a  
     cascade.  
 Hla (Umn), *n.* day.  
 Hlaba, *v.* pierce, prick.  
 Hlaba (Um), *n.* earth; aloe plant.  
 Hlabane (Isi), *n.* a second crop.  
 Hlabati (Isi), *n.* sand.  
 Hlabelela, *v.t.* sing.  
 Hlabo (Isi), *n.* file, rasp.  
 Hlafuna, *v.t.* masticate.  
 Hlaka (In), *n.* gum; glue.  
 Hlakala (Isi), *n.* wrist.  
 Hlakanipa, *v.i.* be clever.  
 Hlakaza, *v.t.* disperse.  
 Hlakazeka, *v.i.* be dispersed.  
 Hlakula, *v.t.* weed.  
 Hlala, *v.i.* sit; dwell.  
 Hlali (In), *n.* gristle.  
 Hlalo (Isi), *n.* seat; saddle.  
 Hlalu (Ubu), *n.* beads.  
 Hlana (In), *n.* dough.  
 Hlamba, *v.* swim.  
 Hlaniba (Isi), *n.* scandal.  
 Hlambi (Um), *n.* a flock, herd.

- Hlambulula, *v.t.* dilute, as wine ; words.  
 Hlamvu (U for Ulu), *n.* a single grain,  
     shot, coin.  
 Hlana (Um), *n.* back.  
 Hlandhla (Isi), *n.* a door-mat.  
 Hlandlazinyawo (Isi), *n.* door-mat.  
 Hlane (I), *n.* a wilderness.  
 Hlanczela, *v.* misrepresent a person's  
     words.  
 Hlanga (Um), *n.* a reed.  
 Hlangabeza, *v.* go to meet.  
 Hlangana, *v.i.* assemble.  
 Hlangano (Um), *n.* a meeting.  
 Hlangato (U for Ulu), *n.* side.  
 Hlangu (Isi), *n.* war-shield.  
 Hlanhla (In), *n.* good fortune.  
 Hlanhlata, *v.* catch lice with the teeth ;  
     run off the line, as a railway train.  
 Hlansi (In), *n.* spark of fire.  
 Hlanti (Isi), *v.* a torch.  
 Hlanya, *v.i.* be insane.  
 Hlanza, *v.t.* wash.  
 Hlanze (I), *n.* bushy country.  
 Hlanzi (In), *n.* a fish.  
 Hlapaza, *v.* be lavish in gifts.  
 Hlapo (Um), *n.* placenta of beasts.  
 Hlasimula, *v.* to have nervous twitchings.  
 Hlati (I), *n.* forest, wood.  
 Hlati (Isi), *n.* cheek.  
 Hlati (Um), *n.* under-jaw.  
 Hlaula, *v.t.* pay a fine.  
 Hlaya (Ama), *n.* fun ; a joke.  
 Hlaza (Um), *n.* sweet potato.  
 Hlazisa, *v.t.* disgrace.  
 Hlazo (I), *n.* disgrace  
 Hle, *adj.* fine, beautiful.  
 Hleba, *v.t.* slander.  
 Hlehla, *v.* go backwards.  
 Hleka, *v.* laugh ; laugh at.  
 Hleke (Isi), *n.* a nest.  
 Hlenga, *v.t.* take care of.  
 Hlenga (Isi), *n.* a raft.  
 Hlengzela, *v.* shed tears.  
 Hlepu (Isi), *n.* piece broken off.  
 Hlepula, *v.* break bread.  
 Hleza (I), *n.* stalk of a mealie-cob.  
 Hlifiza, *v.* crush, as with a stone.  
 Hlikihla, *v.* rub.  
 Hlinza, *v.* skin.  
 Hlinzafuku (In), *n.* kind of fern.  
 Hliziyo (In), *n.* heart.  
 Hloba, *v.* put on finery.  
 Hlobo (I), *n.* summer.  
 Hlobo (Isi), *n.* friend.  
 Hlobo (U for Ulu), *n.* kind, sort.  
 Hlofoza, *v.t.* crush, as an egg.  
 Hlohla, *v.* ram, thrust in.  
 Hloile, *n.* a hawk.  
 Hloko (In), *n.* the top, head.  
 Hlokoma, *v.* make a loud noise.  
 Hlokoza, *v.* poke, as a fire.  
 Hlola, *v.* spy ; explore.  
 Hlola (Um), *n.* an omen.  
 Hlooli (In), *n.* a spy.  
 Hloma, *v.* prepare for war.  
 Hlonga, *v.* have very little of.  
 Hlonhlo (I), *n.* temple of the head.  
 Hlonhlo (In), *n.* a promontory.  
 Hloni (Izin), *n.* bashfulness.  
 Hlonipa, *v.* behave modestly.  
 Hlonyane (Um), *n.* wormwood.  
 Hlonzo (Um), *n.* the spine.  
 Hlonza, *v.* become a habit.  
 Hlonze (In), *n.* a wrinkle.  
 Hlonze (U for Ulu), *n.* thickness.  
 Hlosa, *v.* roast an ear of corn.  
 Hlosana (In), *n.* a high hill near Boston  
     Mills.  
 Hloza (Um), *n.* back-bone or spine.  
 Hluba, *v.* peel, strip.  
 Hlubo (I), *n.* rind.  
 Hlubuka, *v.* rebel.  
 Hlubuki (Um), *n.* a rebel.  
 Hlubula, *v.* strip, as cobs off a stalk.  
 Hlukuhla, *v.* rinse the mouth.  
 Hlukumeza, *v.* annoy.  
 Hlule (I), *n.* a clot of blood.  
 Hluma, *v.* sprout.  
 Hlunama, *v.* look morose.  
 Hlunga, *v.* sift.  
 Hlungu (I), *n.* place where the grass has  
     been lately burnt off.  
 Hlungu (Ubu), *n.* pain.  
 Hlungula (Isi), *n.* sieve.  
 Hlupa, *v.* afflict.  
 Hlusa, *v.* bother.  
 Hlusula, *v.* wrench off.  
 Hluta, *v.t.* pluck, as a fowl.

Hlutuka, *v.i.* have hair rubbed off, as an ox.  
 Hlutula, *v.t.* pluck out, as hair.  
 Hlutulela, *v.t.* lock.  
 Hlutulelo (Isi), *n.* key.  
 Hluzi (Um), *n.* soup.  
 Hlwa, *v.* become dark.  
 Hlwa (Umu), *n.* white ants.  
 Hlwai (U for Ulu), *n.* small shot.  
 Hlwanyela, *v.t.* sow.  
 Hlwehlwe (Um), *n.* tripe.  
 Hlwenga (Um), *n.* mane of a horse.  
 Hlwita, *v.t.* snatch.  
 Hlwitandhlebe (Isi), *n.* bat.  
 Hobo or Roba, *v.* be in a state of suspense.  
 Hobo (Ubu), *n.* state of having no cattle.

## I.

Imbala, *adv.* truly.  
 Impela, *adv.* thoroughly, &c.  
 Imi (Ulw), *n.* tongue.  
 Indhla (Uku), *n.* autumn.  
 Ingabe, *adv.* perhaps.  
 Ingati, *adv.* whereas.  
 Isibili, *adv.* in truth.  
 Iya! *int.* away with you!  
 Izolo, *adv.* yesterday.

## J.

Jaba, *v.i.* be ashamed.  
 Jabula, *v.i.* be glad.  
 Jaka (Isi), *n.* a passionate person.  
 Jakada, *v.t.* upbraid.  
 Jama, *v.* look sternly.  
 Janjato (Um), *n.* a rafter.  
 Jara (I), *n.* a muscular young man.  
 Jezisa, *v.t.* blame, condemn.  
 Jielwa, *v.* be disabled.  
 Jika, *v.* dangle, swing.  
 Jila, *v.* toss.  
 Jingi (Isi), *n.* a kind of porridge.  
 Jingijolo (I), *n.* blackberry.  
 Jiyisa, *v.t.* thicken, as porridge.  
 Jobelela, *v.* join on to.  
 Joja, *v.t.* impale.  
 Joka, *v.* have a fancy for.  
 Jonga, *v.* stare at.  
 Juba, *v.* give orders.  
 Juba, *n.* a dove.  
 Jubane (I), *n.* speed

Jujubeza, *v.* toss up a child.  
 Jula, *v.t.* throw up soil with a spade.  
 Juluka, *v.i.* perspire.  
 Junguju (U for Ulu), *n.* a jelly.  
 Juqa, *v.* strike with an unkonto.  
 Jwayela, *v.* be accustomed to.  
 Jwiba, *v.i.* fly off, as splinters.

## K.

Ka, *v.* dip water; gather fruit.  
 Ka (Ama), *n.* perfumery.  
 Ka (Um), *n.* wife.  
 Kaba, *v.t.* kick.  
 Kaba (In), *n.* navel.  
 Kabi, *adv.* badly.  
 Kabili, *adv.* twice.  
 Kabi (In), *n.* an ox.  
 Kabuzela, *v.i.* walk fast.  
 Kade, *adv.* a long while; some time ago.  
 Kafula, *v.* spit out, as tobacco.  
 Kahla (U for Ulu), *n.* hardship.  
 Kahlauba (U for Ulu), *n.* the Draaken-  
 berg.  
 Kahle, *adv.* well; carefully.  
 Kahlela, *v.* strike; bloom.  
 Kaka (Isi), *n.* petticoat.  
 Kakayi (U for Ulu), *n.* skull.  
 Kakulu, *adv.* greatly.  
 Kala, *v.* cry; crow; sound, as a bell.  
 Kala (I), *n.* nostril.  
 Kala (Isi), *n.* opening; opportunity.  
 Kala (Um), *n.* headstall.  
 Kalankale (In), *n.* crab.  
 Kali (Izi), *n.* weapons.  
 Kalima, *v.* turn back, as oxen.  
 Kalipa, *v.i.* be brave.  
 Kalo (U for Ulu), *n.* ridge of a hill; loin.  
 Kama, *v.* squeeze; drain out.  
 Kama (I), *n.* comb.  
 Kamelo (I), *n.* room of house.  
 Kamba (U for Ulu), *n.* a cooking-pot.  
 Kamgedhlela (I), *n.* militiaman, volun-  
 teer.  
 Kamo (I), *n.* comb.  
 Kampokwe (U), *n.* raw cotton.  
 Kancinyane, *adv.* a little.  
 Kanda, *v.t.* pound; forge.  
 Kanda (I), *n.* head.  
 Kandanisa, *v.t.* put close together.

- Kangaka, *adv.* so much, so great.  
 Kangaki ? how many ? often ?  
 Kangala (In), *n.* high table-land.  
 Kangela, *v.t.* look at.  
 Kangu (Um), *n.* a mole on the face.  
 Kangula, *v.* dry, as pottery.  
 Kani (In), *n.* strife.  
 Kanjani ? *adv.* how ?  
 Kansi (I), *n.* cooking-pot.  
 Kanti, *adv.* but, however.  
 Kanti noko, *adv.* but notwithstanding.  
 Kantolo (I), *n.* office.  
 Kantya (Um), *n.* marrow.  
 Kanula, *v.t.* strain the body.  
 Kanya, *v.i.* shine.  
 Kanya (Uku), *n.* light.  
 Kanye, *adv.* once.  
 Kanyekanye, *adv.* all together.  
 Kanyezi (In), *n.* a star ; firefly.  
 Kanyisela, *v.t.* illustrate.  
 Kapa, *v.t.* guide.  
 Kapi (Um), *n.* a guide.  
 Kasa, *v.i.* crawl, as a child.  
 Kasi (I), *n.* leaf of a book, &c.  
 Kasitupa, *adv.* six times.  
 Kata, *v.t.* rub grease on the body, or soap  
 on clothes.  
 Kata (In), *n.* a pad.  
 Kata (Isi), *n.* hair-ball in the stomach.  
 Katala, *v.i.* be weary.  
 Kutaza, *v.t.* weary.  
 Kati (Isi), *n.* time.  
 Kati (Um), *n.* a space.  
 Kato (In), *n.* a lot (as to cast lots).  
 Kau (In), *n.* monkey.  
 Kauka, *v.i.* come to a termination.  
 Kaula, *v.* reach as far as.  
 Kanlo (Um), *n.* boundary.  
 Kauzela, *v.i.* taste hot.  
 Kaya (I), *n.* home.  
 Kayikulu, *adv.* a hundred times.  
 Kaza (Ana), *n.* cold.  
 Kaza (Um), *n.* common tick.  
 Kazane (I), *n.* small tick.  
 Kazimula, *v.i.* glitter.  
 Kedama (In), *n.* an orphan.  
 Kelila (I), *n.* man with head-ring.  
 Kekeba (I), *n.* a honeycomb.  
 Keleketela, *v.i.* tumble into a hole.  
 Keleza, *v.* hop, as a child.  
 Kapa, *adv.* moreover.  
 Kepe (Isi), *n.* a ship.  
 Kepekepe (Isi), *n.* a sponge.  
 Kesa, *v.* undervalue.  
 Keta, *v.t.* select.  
 Kete (U for Ulu), *n.* a kind of building  
 stone.  
 Kezo (U for Ulu), *n.* a wooden spoon.  
 Kihlika, *v.i.* foam at the mouth.  
 Kini, to you ; at your place.  
 Kinopo (In), *n.* a button.  
 Kipa, *v.t.* take out ; extract.  
 Kitika, *v.i.* snow.  
 Kiwane (I), *n.* a fig.  
 Kiwane (Um), *n.* a fig-tree.  
 Kisa, *v.i.* drizzle.  
 Kizane (I), *n.* a tick.  
 Kizo (Um), *n.* small rain.  
 Keba (Ama), *n.* chaff.  
 Koba (Um), *n.* yellow-wood tree.  
 Koboka (I), *n.* a slave.  
 Kodwa, *adv.* but, only.  
 Kohlela, *v.i.* cough.  
 Kohlo (I), *n.* left side.  
 Kohlwa, *v.t.* forget.  
 Koka, *v.t.* pay, as money.  
 Kokelo (In), *n.* wages.  
 Koko (U for Ulu), *n.* ancestor ; scab of a  
 sore.  
 Kokoba, *v.i.* stoop in walking.  
 Kole (Isi), *n.* school.  
 Kolisa, *v.t.* satisfy.  
 Kolwa, *v.* believe.  
 Kolwa (I), *n.* believer.  
 Kolweni (U), *n.* wheat.  
 Kombisa, *v.* point out, as a path.  
 Komo (In), *n.* a cow.  
 Komo (Um), *n.* a whale.  
 Komololo (Isi), *n.* mourning.  
 Kona, *adv.* there.  
 Konamanje, *adv.* at once.  
 Konga, persist in asking.  
 Kongi (Um), *n.* bridegroom's man.  
 Kongozela, *v.* hold hand, &c., to  
 receive.  
 Konkota, *v.* bark.  
 Kono (Um), *n.* forearm.  
 Kononda, *v.i.* be dissatisfied

- Konono (U for Ulu), *n.* dissatisfaction.  
 Kento (Um), *n.* a spear.  
 Konya, *v.t.* bellow.  
 Konyana (In), *n.* a calf.  
 Kouza, *v.* serve.  
 Konzela, *v.* send compliments.  
 Konzo (In), *n.* service.  
 Kope (Isi), *n.* deficiency.  
 Kope (U for Ulu), *n.* eyelash.  
 Kopoza or Koboza, *n.* make a rippling sound.  
 Kosana (In), *n.* a petty chief.  
 Kosazana (In), *n.* a young lady.  
 Kosi (In), *n.* chief.  
 Kosi (Um), *n.* outcry, alarm.  
 Kosikazi (In), *n.* Queen.  
 Kota, *v.t.* lick.  
 Kota (Isi), *n.* old grass.  
 Kotama, *v.t.* stoop.  
 Koto (In), *n.* a groove; small hollow.  
 Kotoza, *v.* glean.  
 Kotyama, *v.t.* sit, as a dog.  
 Kova (Isi), *n.* an owl.  
 Kuba (Um), *n.* custom.  
 Kubo, to them; his or their people.  
 Kubo (I), *n.* partiality.  
 Kude, *adv.* far off.  
 Kudala, *adv.* of old time.  
 Kuhlana (Um), *n.* a cold.  
 Kuhlaza, *v.t.* scrub, scour.  
 Kuko (U for Ulu), *n.* sleeping-mat.  
 Kuku (In), *n.* a fowl.  
 Kukula, *v.* rake.  
 Kukula (Isi), *n.* rush of water.  
 Kukualisa, *v.t.* cause to swell.  
 Kukuza, *v.t.* suck, as a peach.  
 Kula, *v.t.* grow.  
 Kula (U for Ulu), *n.* weeds.  
 Kuleka, *v.* worship.  
 Kulu, *adj.* large, great.  
 Kulula, *v.t.* release.  
 Kuluma, *v.t.* speak.  
 Kulupala, *v.t.* become fat.  
 Kumba (Isi), *n.* a skin.  
 Kumbi (In), *n.* a locust.  
 Kumbula, *v.t.* remember.  
 Kumbulo (In), *n.* memory.  
 Kumbaza, *v.t.* remind.  
 Kumuka, *v.t.* come out, as a nail.  
 Kumula, *v.t.* outspan.  
 Kumutya, *v.* interpret.  
 Kuna (In), *n.* old thatch.  
 Kundhla (Isi), *n.* office, place.  
 Kungela' sikhala, *v.* saddle, as a horse.  
 Kungeso, *adv.* except.  
 Kungu (In), *n.* mist.  
 Kuni (Isi), *n.* firebrand.  
 Kuni (U for Ulu), *n.* firewood.  
 Kunta, *v.t.* be mouldy.  
 Kunzi (In), *n.* a bull.  
 Kupa (Isi), *n.* bees'-wax.  
 Kupe (Um), *n.* fowl-lice.  
 Kupela, *adv.* that's all, finally.  
 Kupuka, *v.t.* ascend.  
 Kusasa, *adv.* in the morning.  
 Kutala, *v.t.* be industrious.  
 Kutali (Isi), *n.* an industrious person.  
 Kutangi, *adv.* day before yesterday.  
 Kutazela, *v.* speak, or act with resolution.  
 Kutu (I), *n.* cold meat.  
 Kuxuzeka, *v.* rattle.  
 Kuza, *v.* express surprise, &c.  
 Kwana (Isi), *n.* a purse.  
 Kwapa (I), *n.* armpit.  
 Kwashu (In), *n.* cramp.  
 Kwe (Um), *n.* wife's father.  
 Kwebu (Isi), *n.* ear of corn.  
 Kweluka, *v.t.* rebound.  
 Kwebula, *v.t.* prune.  
 Kwekazi (Um), *n.* wife's mother.  
 Kwekwe (U for Ulu), *n.* cutaneous eruption.  
 Kwela, *v.* climb.  
 Kwele (Isi), *n.* female jealousy.  
 Kweleti (Isi), *n.* debt.  
 Kwelo (Isi), *n.* ladder.  
 Kwenene (Isi), *n.* parrot.  
 Kwenyana (Um), *n.* son-in-law.  
 Kwetu (In), *n.* a scale, as of fish.  
 Kweza, *v.* put by to keep.  
 Kwezi (I), *n.* the morning-star.  
 Kwibiza, *v.t.* drive away fowls.  
 Kwifa, *v.* spit at.  
 Kwindi (In), *n.* a sea-shell.  
 Kwitiza, *v.* speak indistinctly.  
 Kwityikwityi (Isi), *n.* whirlwind.  
 Kwityiza, *v.* dawdle.

**L**

- Laba, *pro.* these.  
 Labalabela, *v.* long in vain for.  
 Labaya, *pro.* those yonder.  
 Lahla, *v.* forsake.  
 Lahle (I), *n.* wood cinders.  
 Lahlela, *v.* throw away.  
 Laisha, *v.* load, as a wagon.  
 Laka (I), *n.* tonsil.  
 Laka (U for Ulu), *n.* a bad temper.  
 Lala, *v.* lie; be asleep.  
 Lalela, *v.* obey; listen to.  
 Lalelisa, *v.* be assuaged, as pain.  
 Lamba, *v.i.* be hungry.  
 Lamula, *v.* make peace.  
 Landa, *v.t.* go after; pursue.  
 Landela, *v.t.* follow.  
 Landisa, *v.* relate.  
 Landula, *v.* decline to comply.  
 Langa (I), *n.* sun.  
 Langabi (I), *n.* flame.  
 Langazela, *v.t.* hanker after.  
 Lapa, *adv.* here.  
 Lapaya, *adv.* yonder.  
 Lapo, *adv.* there.  
 Lara (Isi), *n.* butcher's shop.  
 Lau (I), *n.* a Hottentot; boy's hut.  
 Laua, *v.* joke.  
 Lauzela, *v.* relate a dream.  
 Laza (U for Ulu), *n.* cream.  
 Laza (Um), *n.* whey.  
 Le, *pro.* this, these.  
 Le, *adv.* far away.  
 Le (Umu), *n.* soot.  
 Lekusa, *v.* nod.  
 Lembu (U for Ulu), *n.* a spider.  
 Lenga, *v.i.* hang down.  
 Lenzi (Um), *n.* leg.  
 Leta, *v.* bring.  
 Levu (Isi), *n.* beard.  
 Lezi, *pro.* these.  
 Libala, *v.i.* loiter.  
 Libalisa, *v.t.* retard.  
 Libazi (Isi), *n.* a dilatory person.  
 Libo (U for Ulu), *n.* the first-fruits.  
 Lila, *v.i.* weep.  
 Lilo (Isi), *n.* a weeping.  
 Lilo (Um), *n.* fire.  
 Lima, *v.* plough, &c., as land.  
 Lima (Isi), *n.* a cripple.  
 Limala, *v.* be hurt.  
 Limaza *v.t.* hurt bodily.  
 Limi (U for Ulu), *n.* tongue.  
 Limilwenkomo (U), *n.* name of a plant.  
 Linda, *v.t.* watch.  
 Lindityoba (I), *n.* an abyss.  
 Linga, *v.* try.  
 Lingana, *v.* be equal, even.  
 Linganisla, *v.* make equal; weigh.  
 Lingisa, *v.t.* mimic.  
 Linga (Um), *n.* a trial, experiment.  
 Lingoza, *v.i.* sob.  
 Lingozzi (Isi), *n.* a sob.  
 Lo, *pro.* this.  
 Lo (Isi), *n.* a wild animal.  
 Lo (Izi), *n.* intestinal worms.  
 Loba, *v.t.* catch fish; write.  
 Lobo, *pro.* that.  
 Lobola, *v.* pay cattle for a wife.  
 Loko, *pro.* that.  
 Loku, *pro.* this.  
 Lokupela, *conj.* inasmuch as.  
 Lola, *v.* sharpen, as an axe.  
 Lolwazi (Um), *n.* a grindstone.  
 Lome (Isi), *n.* a spokesman, speaker of  
     the Legislative Council.  
 Lomo (Um), *n.* a mouth.  
 Londa, *v.* keep.  
 Londa (Isi), *n.* a sore.  
 Londolozla, *v.* take care of.  
 Londonya, *v.* clean the teeth.  
 Longwe (I), *n.* dry cattle-dung.  
 Longwe (Ubu), *n.* fresh cattle-dung.  
 Lota (Um), *n.* wood-ashes.  
 Lotzana (I), *n.* plant used for polishing  
     head-rings.  
 Lovu (U for Ulu), *n.* Richmond.  
 Lovula (Ama), *n.* thrush.  
 Lowo, *pro.* that.  
 Luhlaza, *adj.* green.  
 Lukuni, *adj.* hard.  
 Lula, *adj.* light.  
 Lula (I), *n.* a sponge.  
 Lulama, *v.* be convalescent.  
 Luleka, *v.* straighten by force, counsel.  
 Luma, *v.* bite.  
 Lumeke, *v.* cup.

Lamula, *v.* wean.  
 Landa (I), *n.* hump of an ox.  
 Lunga, *v.* be right ; good.  
 Lungu (Um), *n.* a white man.  
 Lungu (I), *n.* joint  
 Lungu (Isi), *n.* white people.  
 Lunguza, *v.* stretch forward to see.  
 Lwa, *v.* fight.  
 Lwane (Isi), *n.* reptile, &c.

## M.

Ma or ema, *v.* stand.  
 Mahla (ukuti), go to bed fasting.  
 Makoti (U), *n.* a bride.  
 Makula, *v.* slap the face.  
 Mali (Im), *n.* money.  
 Malibomvu (Im), *n.* gold.  
 Malokazana (U), *n.* a son's wife.  
 Malunga, *adv.* (na) opposite to.  
 Mamba (Im), *n.* a deadly snake.  
 Manie ! *int.* astonishment.  
 Mame (U), *n.* my mother.  
 Mamekazi (U), *n.* maternal aunt.  
 Mandulo, *adv.* formerly.  
 Mangala, *v.* wonder.  
 Mangaliso (Um), *n.* wonder.  
 Mangu (Um), *n.* a steep side of a hill.  
 Manje, *adv.* now.  
 Manzi, *adj.* moist, wet.  
 Masinyane, *adv.* immediately.  
 Maye ! *int.* alas !  
 Mba, *v.i.* dig.  
 Mbela, *v.t.* lary.  
 Mela, *v.t.* stand for.  
 Mema, *v.t.* invite.  
 Mema (U for Ulu), *n.* cock's comb.  
 Memeza, *v.* shout.  
 Mese (U), *n.* a knife.  
 Mezala (U), *n.* a husband's father.  
 Mozanyana (U), *n.* human placenta.  
 Mhlaumbe, *adv.* perhaps.  
 Mhlope, *adj.* white.  
 Mila, *v.i.* germinate.  
 Mini (Im), *n.* noon.  
 Minya (Isi), *n.* truth.  
 Minza, *v.t.* swallow gluttonously.  
 Minzisa, *v.* drown.  
 Minzi (Isi), *n.* a glutton.  
 Misa, *v.t.* set up.

Mita, *v.i.* be pregnant.  
 Miyane (U), *n.* a mosquito.  
 Mnambiti (U), *n.* Ladismith.  
 Mnandi, *adj.* sweet, nice.  
 Mnyama, *adj.* black.  
 Mo (Isi), *n.* shape.  
 Moba (U), *n.* sugar-cane.  
 Mona (U), *n.* envy.  
 Mongo (Um), *n.* marrow.  
 Mongozima (U), *n.* blood from the nose.  
 Mono (U), *n.* fowl-basket.  
 Monyula, *v.t.* withdraw, let slip.  
 Moya (U), *n.* air, wind, spirit.  
 Mpafane (Im), *n.* Mooli-river.  
 Mpasa, *v.* slap the body.  
 Mpengisa, *v.* miss, as a mark.  
 Mpofo, *adj.* brown.  
 Mpumpute (I), *n.* a blind man.  
 Mpumpute (Ubu), *n.* blindness.  
 Mpungutye (I), *n.* jackal.  
 Mpuya (ukuti), break the fast.  
 Mtoti, *adj.* sweet, nice.  
 Muka, or emuka, *v.* depart.  
 Mukula, *v.* slap the face.  
 Munuta, *v.i.* eat fast.  
 Munca, *v.t.* suck.  
 Munu, *adj.* acid.  
 Mungulu (Isi), *n.* a dumb person.  
 Mungunya, *v.* munch.  
 Musa, *v.* do not.  
 Munyane (I), *n.* a kind of sorrel, or Rumex.  
 Mwe (ukuti), come out well, as a brick.  
 Mwanwateka, *v.* smile.  
 Mzukwana, *adv.* when.

## N.

Na, *conj.* and, also, with.  
 Na, *v.i.* rain.  
 Nabuzela, *v.i.* crawl, as an insect.  
 Nafuna, *v.i.* be sticky.  
 Naka, *v.* heed, care for.  
 Nakancinyane, *adv.* in the least  
 Nako (Um), *n.* business.  
 Nakuba, *conj.* although.  
 Nalide (I), *n.* needle.  
 Namatela, *v.* adhere to.  
 Namba (Isi), *n.* a slow walker.  
 Nambita, *v.* taste.  
 Nameka, *v.* plaster.

Namuhla, *adv.* to-day.  
 Neekn (In), *n.* a servant.  
 Neela, *v.t.* suck the breast.  
 Neeneeta, *v.i.* tinkle, as metal.  
 Neenga, *v.* beg earnestly for.  
 Neeteza, *v.* tell tales.  
 Neibilika, *v.i.* melt.  
 Neinyane, *adv.* little.  
 Neinza, *v.t.* pinch.  
 Neipaza, *v.* depreciate.  
 Neipisa, *v.t.* diminish.  
 Neitya, *v.t.* stint.  
 Neityane (Um), *n.* a stingy person.  
 Neotula, *v.* pull out hair.  
 Neozana (In), *n.* a little.  
 Neulu (In), *n.* an abstemious person.  
 Neunze (Um), *n.* third milk from cow.  
 Newaba, *v.i.* be comfortable.  
 Newadi (In), *n.* mark ; book.  
 Newele (In), *n.* a wagon.  
 Ndawonye, *adv.* in one place.  
 Ndhla (Ama), *n.* strength.  
 Ndinda, *v.* ramble.  
 Ndiyazisa, *v.t.* puzzle.  
 Ndiza, *v.* fly.  
 Ndonda, *v.* purr, as a cat.  
 Ndwemela, *v.* have a presentiment.  
 Ne (Isi), *n.* four.  
 Nekenda, *v.* drawl.  
 Nembala, *adv.* in truth.  
 Nembeza (U), *n.* the conscience.  
 Nene (Uku), *n.* right (as right hand).  
 Nenga, *v.t.* disgust.  
 Nenke (Um), *n.* slug.  
 Neta, *v.i.* get wet.  
 Netisa, *v.t.* make wet.  
 Nevu (In), *n.* paste ; bird-lime.  
 Nga (Ama), *n.* lies.  
 Ngaka, *adv.* so large.  
 Ngakanani, *adv.* how large.  
 Ngaki, *adv.* how many.  
 Ngakona, *adv.* in that direction.  
 Ngalapa, *adv.* this way.  
 Ngalelosikati, *adv.* at that time.  
 Ngaloko, *adv.* on that account.  
 Ngamabomu, *adv.* wilfully.  
 Ngane (In), *n.* infant.  
 Ngameno, *adv.* on this side.  
 Ngani ? *adv.* why ?

Ngapakati, *adv.* inside.  
 Ngapandhle, *adv.* outside.  
 Ngapane, *adv.* by right.  
 Ngapetsheya, *adv.* on the other side.  
 Ngapezu, *adv.* above.  
 Ngasese, *adv.* privately.  
 Ngatangata, *v.* do an unseemly thing.  
 Ngcinga, *v.* predict evil.  
 Ngcingo (In), *n.* a narrow place.  
 Ngeuba (In), *n.* flesh of an animal that  
     has died of disease.  
 Ngeweke, *adj.* holy.  
 Ngele (In), *n.* sleet.  
 Ngena, *v.* enter.  
 Ngesinwe, *adv.* evenly ; nicely.  
 Ngeze, *adv.* for nothing.  
 Ngingiza, *v.* stammer.  
 Ngisi (I), an Englishman.  
 Ngofoza, *v.* peck, as a fowl.  
 Ngokuba, *adv.* because.  
 Ngomhlomunye, *adv.* day after-to-morrow.  
 Ngomuso, *adv.* to-morrow.  
 Ngonyama (In), *n.* a lion.  
 Ngqabatyiya, *v.* leap with joy.  
 Ngqengqa, *v.* walk on the edge.  
 Ngqumbana (In), *n.* cart.  
 Ngwane (In), *n.* cuttle-fish.  
 Ngwevu, *adj.* grey.  
 Nika, *v.* give.  
 Nikelo (Um), *n.* gift, collection.  
 Nikina, *v.i.* shake, as the head.  
 Nikiniki (I), *n.* a very old garment.  
 Nikiza, *v.t.* worry, as a dog.  
 Nimba (In), *n.* labour-pains.  
 Nina, *pro.* ye.  
 Nina (U), *n.* his, or her mother.  
 Ninda, *v.* stain.  
 Ningi, *adj.* much.  
 Ningiliza, *v.* enter into minute detail.  
 Nini ? *adv.* when ?  
 Nini (Um), *n.* owner.  
 Nja (In), *n.* a dog.  
 Nja (Ubu), *n.* rudeness.  
 Njalo, *adv.* in this manner.  
 Njani ? *adv.* like what ? how ?  
 Nje, *adv.* merely, just so.  
 Njenga, *adv.* like.  
 Njengokuba, *adv.* like as.  
 Nkankaza, *v.* speak with the nose stopped up

- Nkemba (Isi), *n.* a sword.  
 Nkenketa, *v.* throb.  
 Nkentyana (I), *n.* wild dog.  
 Nketeza, *v.i.* echo.  
 Nkone, *adj.* striped.  
 Nkulunkulu (U), *n.* God.  
 Nkwa (Isi), *n.* bread.  
 Nkwe (ukuti), *be* finished.  
 Nogwaja (U), *n.* a hare.  
 Noi (Um), *n.* a nit.  
 Noko, *adv.* notwithstanding.  
 Nomagendane (U), *n.* a mole (animal).  
 Nona, *v.* be in good condition.  
 Nono (I), *n.* a tidy person.  
 Nonopa, *v.i.* hasten.  
 Nonyaka, *adv.* this year.  
 Nota, *v.t.* be wealthy.  
 Nozayizingwenya (U), *n.* a pelican.  
 Nqaba, *v.* refuse.  
 Nqaba (In), *n.* a fortress.  
 Nqala, *v. i.* be fast, as a nail ;  
     difficult.  
 Nqe (I), *n.* a vulture.  
 Nqina (In), *n.* hunting-party.  
 Nqoba, *v.* conquer.  
 Nqobi (Um), *n.* conqueror.  
 Nqonqo (Um), *n.* spinal-marrow.  
 Nqumma, *v.* lop, or cut off.  
 Nqumela (Isi), *n.* tallow.  
 Nqwababa (In), *n.* collar-bone.  
 Nsala, *v.* put on the drag-chain ; pull  
     tightly.  
 Nselo (In), *n.* hoof.  
 Ntanta, *v.i.* float.  
 Ntenteleza, *v.* dance gracefully ; walk  
     elegantly.  
 Ntikilizela, *v.* go stark naked.  
 Ntombazana (In), *n.* a girl.  
 Ntombi (I), *n.* a maiden.  
 Ntu (Umu), *n.* a person.  
 Ntu (Isi), *n.* mankind.  
 Ntu (Ubu), *n.* human-nature.  
 Ntwala (In), *n.* a louse.  
 Ntwana (Um), *n.* a child.  
 Ntwesi (In), *n.* a braggart.  
 Ntye (In), *n.* ostrich.  
 Ntyo...ya, *v.t.* piller.  
 Nuka, *v.* smell.  
 Nuka (I), *n.* a filthy person.  
 Numzana (Um), *n.* chief person at a  
     kraal.  
 Nungu (In), *n.* a porcupine.  
 Nunusa, *v.t.* terrify.  
 Nwaba (U for Ulu), *n.* a chameleon.  
 Nwazi (Isi), *n.* wild vine.  
 Nwe (Isi), *n.* nicety, as in work.  
 Nwe (Umu), *n.* finger.  
 Nwele (U for Ulu), *n.* a human hair.  
 Nxapa, *v.i.* make the x click.  
 Nxeba (I), *n.* a wound.  
 Nxele (I), *n.* a left-handed person.  
 Nxiba, *v.i.* beg.  
 Nxiwa (I), *n.* site of a deserted  
     kraal.  
 Nxusa, *v.t.* ask a favour.  
 Nyaka (Um), *n.* year.  
 Nyakama, *v.* knit the brows.  
 Nyakaza, *v.* sway, as a tree.  
 Nyakenye, *adv.* last year ; next year.  
 Nyama (Izin), *n.* grain of wood.  
 Nyama (Um), *n.* a rainbow.  
 Nyamalala, *v.i.* vanish.  
 Nyanga (In), *n.* moon ; month ; doctor.  
 Nyango (Um), *n.* doorway.  
 Nyatela, *v.* tread.  
 Nyawo (U for Ulu), *n.* foot.  
 Nyazi (U for Ulu), *n.* lightning.  
 Nye, *adj.* one, another.  
 Nye (Isi), *n.* the bladder.  
 Nyelela, *v.* go stealthily.  
 Nyenya, *v.* be sly.  
 Nyenyeza, *v.i.* whisper.  
 Nyepe, *v.i.* be begrimed with dirt.  
 Nyewe (In), *n.* patience.  
 Nyezane (Um), *n.* a willow-tree.  
 Nyezi (U), *n.* moonlight.  
 Nyoboza, *v.* be ashamed.  
 Nyoko (U), *n.* thy, or your mother.  
 Nyonga (U for Ulu), *n.* a cripple.  
 Nyongo (In), *n.* gall.  
 Nyoni (In), *n.* a bird.  
 Nyosi (In), *n.* a bee.  
 Nyoven (Um), *n.* a wasp.  
 Nyumba (In), *n.* a barren person.  
 Nyundu (In), *n.* a moth.  
 Nyundu (Um), *n.* a leech.  
 Nzi (Ama), *n.* water.  
 Nzima, *adj.* heavy.

## O.

O ! *int.* exclamation.  
 Ogwini, *adv.* by the river's side.  
 Oka, *v.t.* light a candle.  
 Okela, *v.* light, as a candle.  
 Omisa, *v.t.* dry.  
 Ona, *v.i.* do wrong.  
 Onakala, *v.i.* be wrong morally.  
 Onda, *v.i.* be lean.  
 Ondhla, *v.t.* nourish, foster.  
 Ondhli (Um), *n.* a guardian of children.  
 Onga, *v.* be economical.  
 Oui (Um), *n.* a sinner.  
 Ono (Isi), *n.* a sin.  
 Onwaba, *v.i.* be comfortable.  
 Opisa, *v.t.* bleed.  
 Osa, *v.t.* roast.  
 Ota, *v.* warm one's-self.  
 Ozela, *v.i.* doze.

## P

Pa, *v.t.* give.  
 Pahl, *v.* surround.  
 Pahl (Im), *n.* goods.  
 Pahl (U for Ulu), *n.* roof.  
 Pahlaza, *v.* smash in pieces.  
 Paiza, *n.* flash with anger.  
 Pakade, *adv.* long ago.  
 Pakamisa, *v.t.* raise.  
 Pakati, *adv.* within.  
 Pakati (I), *n.* centre.  
 Pakazela, *v.* speak in an excited manner.  
 Pala, *v.* scrape.  
 Palaza, *v.* spill, as water.  
 Pamba, *v.* cozen.  
 Pambanisa, *v.t.* put across.  
 Pambano (Isi), *n.* a cross.  
 Pambeka, *v.* blunder.  
 Pambili, *adv.* before.  
 Pambuka, *v.i.* swerve from a path, rule, &c.  
 Pambukela, *v.* turn to, or for.  
 Panda, *v.* scratch up, as a fowl.  
 Pande (Im), *n.* a root.  
 Pandhla (Im), *n.* a bald person.  
 Pandhle, *adv.* outside.  
 Pandu (Um), *n.* a cave.  
 Panga, *v.* plunder.  
 Panga (Isi), *n.* shoulder-blade.

Pangeli (Um), *n.* a plunderer.  
 Pango (I), *n.* ravenous hunger.  
 Pansi, *adv.* below.  
 Panyeka, *v.t.* hang up.  
 Papa, *v.i.* fly.  
 Papamisa, *v.t.* rouse from sleep.  
 Papateka, *v.i.* be nervous.  
 Pape (U for Ulu), *n.* feather.  
 Papu (I), *n.* lung.  
 Papu (Um), *n.* lung-disease.  
 Pasa, *v.* prop up.  
 Pata, *v.* carry.  
 Pataneka, *v.* be at a loss for words.  
 Pau (U for Ulu), *n.* mark ; sign.  
 Pazama, *v.* blunder in speaking.  
 Pazamisa, *v.t.* put out in speaking.  
 Pazima, *v.i.* wink.  
 Pazuka, *v.* blab.  
 Peca, *v.t.* turn down, as a leaf.  
 Pefumula, *v.i.* breathe.  
 Pehla, *v.* churn.  
 Pehlu (Um), *n.* second milk from cow.  
 Pejane (U), *n.* rhinoceros.  
 Peka, *v.* cook.  
 Pekamedu (Um), *n.* Indigo plant.  
 Pela (I), *n.* a cockroach.  
 Peledi (Isi), *n.* a pin.  
 Pelekezela, *v.* accompany.  
 Pelepele (U), *n.* pepper.  
 Pelisa, *v.t.* end.  
 Pemba, *v.t.* make a fire.  
 Penduka, *v.i.* turn.  
 Pendula, *v.t.* turn ; reply.  
 Penuka, *v.i.* walk feebly.  
 Penya, *v.t.* open, as a book.  
 Pepa ! *int.* never mind !  
 Pepa, *v.* invade.  
 Pepeta, *v.* blow, as the wind.  
 Peta, *v.t.* hem, or bind a dress.  
 Petsheya, *adv.* beyond.  
 Petu (Im), *n.* a maggot.  
 Peza, *v.i.* stop, cease.  
 Pezolo, *adv.* last evening.  
 Pezu, *adv.* above.  
 Pezulu, *adv.* high above.  
 Pi, *adv.* where.  
 Pi (Im), *n.* army.  
 Pica, *v.* wattle.  
 Pika, *v.* strive, contend.

Pikelela, *v.* contradict.  
 Pikeleli (Isi), *n.* a contradictory person.  
 Pikili (Isi), *n.* a nail.  
 Piko (I), *n.* wing of a bird.  
 Pila, *v.i.* be well in health.  
 Pilisa, *v.t.* make well.  
 Pinda, *v.* repeat.  
 Pinga, *v.* commit adultery.  
 Pini (I), *n.* an oar.  
 Pipa, *v.* wipe *anum in'antis*.  
 Piseka, *v.* be anxious.  
 Pisela, *v.* put a handle to an axe.  
 Pisi (Im), *n.* hyena.  
 Pitizisa, *v.t.* confuse.  
 Po ! *int. adv.* well ! what of that ? &c.  
 Pobo (Um), *n.* unripe figs.  
 Pohloza, *v.* strike violently.  
 Polisa, *v.t.* cool ; heal.  
 Pompolo (Isi), *n.* a black ant.  
 Pondo (U for Ulu), *n.* a horn.  
 Pongola, *v.* manifest indifference.  
 Pongolo (Um), *n.* cask ; box.  
 Pompomo (Im), *n.* a waterfall.  
 Popoza, *v.* gush, as water.  
 Poqoza, *v.t.* snap in two.  
 Posa or Ponsa, *v.* throw.  
 Posisa, *v.* make mistakes.  
 Posiso (Isi), *n.* a mistake.  
 Pota, *v.t.* twist, as thread.  
 Potela, *v.* menstruate.  
 Potololo (ukuti), chatter.  
 Potula, *v.t.* grind boiled corn.  
 Potyoza, *v.* talk at random.  
 Pubuka, *v.* misbehave.  
 Puca, *v.t.* shave.  
 Pucula, *v.t.* shave.  
 Pucuza, *v.t.* scour.  
 Puco (Im), *n.* a razor.  
 Pukane (Im), *n.* a fly.  
 Puku (Im), *n.* a mouse.  
 Pukupuku (Isi), *n.* a simpleton.  
 Pukuza, *v.i.* act foolishly.  
 Pulu or Gamu (Um), *n.* hard feces.  
 Puluka, *v.i.* be recovered from sickness.  
 Pulula, *v.t.* stroke.  
 Puma, *v.i.* go out.  
 Pumalanga (Im), *n.* the East.  
 Pumisa, *v.t.* cause to go out.  
 Pumputa, *v.i.* grope, as a blind man.

Pumputekisa, *v.* make blind.  
 Pumula, *v.i.* rest.  
 Pumulo (Im), *n.* nose.  
 Pumuza, *v.t.* cause to rest.  
 Pundu (Isi), *n.* occiput.  
 Punga, *v.t.* hush with the hand ; flap flies.  
 Punga (I), *n.* a stink.  
 Pungula, *v.t.* lighten a load ; thin mealie-plants.  
 Punyuka, *v.i.* get slipped out.  
 Punyula, *v.t.* slip out.  
 Punza, *v.* abort, as an animal.  
 Pupa, *v.i.* dream.  
 Pupo (I), *n.* a dream.  
 Pupu (Im), *n.* meal, flour.  
 Pupuma, *v.* boil over ; miscarry.  
 Pusa, *v.i.* dry up, as a cow.  
 Puta, *v.i.* fall short, as a crop.  
 Putaza, *v.t.* touch familiarly, or indecently.  
 Putuka, *v.i.* get galled.  
 Putuza, *v.i.* eat nice food.  
 Putyini (Im), *n.* Thornville.  
 Puza, *v.* drink.  
 Puzu (I), *n.* a knot in wood.  
 Pwiliqa, *v.* crack a whip at.

## Q.

Qa, *adv.* no.  
 Qabuka, *v.* be broken, as a string.  
 Qabula, *v.t.* refresh.  
 Qabunga (I), *n.* a leaf.  
 Qakala (I), *n.* ancle,  
 Qala, *v.* begin.  
 Qalaza, *v.i.* look in all directions.  
 Qaleka, *v.i.* faint.  
 Qama, *v.i.* appear distinctly, or attractively.  
 Qama (Im), *n.* ram.  
 Qamba, *v.t.* invent.  
 Qamuka, *v.i.* appear, as an eruption.  
 Qanda (I), *n.* egg.  
 Qanga, *v.* be ironical.  
 Qanti (Isi), *n.* scrag, as of mutton.  
 Qantya, *v.i.* fly off, as sparks.  
 Qapa, *v.* watch, as a cat.  
 Qapela, *v.* attend to.  
 Qapuza, *v.i.* speak fluently.

Qaqa, *v.t.* rip open.  
 Qaqamba, *v.i.* throb.  
 Qaqazela, *v.i.* shiver.  
 Qata, *v.t.* break up new ground.  
 Qataza, *v.i.* be very angry.  
 Qawe (I), *n.* a brave.  
 Quzula, *v.t.* grind coarsely.  
 Qeda, *v.* finish.  
 Qekeza, *v.* split open.  
 Qenya, *v.i.* strut.  
 Qepu (Isi), *n.* a piece, bit, serap, as of calico, &c.  
 Qiana, *v.i.* sit, as a bold rider.  
 Qili (I), *n.* a crafty person.  
 Qili (Ubu), *n.* craftiness.  
 Qina, *v.i.* be firm.  
 Qingatisa, *v.t.* half-fill.  
 Qiniso (I), *n.* truth.  
 Qoba, *v.* carve meat.  
 Qobi (Um), *n.* a carver.  
 Qobisisa, *v.* mince meat.  
 Qojema, *v.i.* sit, as a dog.  
 Qokota, *v.* twine, as string.  
 Qola, *v.t.* perfume.  
 Qolozela, *v.t.* gaze earnestly.  
 Qoma (I), *n.* mealie-basket.  
 Qonda, *v.* understand.  
 Qongqota, *v.i.* knock.  
 Qopa, *v.* notch.  
 Qoqoqo (U), *n.* wind-pipe.  
 Qoto, *adj.* sincere, upright.  
 Qoto (Isi), *n.* hail.  
 Qotyama, *v.i.* crouch upon the hams.  
 Qu (Isi), *n.* bottom, as of a vessel.  
 Quba, *v.t.* push.  
 Qude (I), *n.* cock.  
 Quleka, *v.* faint.  
 Qulo (Um), *n.* stitch in the side.  
 Qumba, *v.i.* swell up, as with flatulency.  
 Qumquuu (U), *n.* Cape gooseberry.  
 Qumuka, *v.i.* burst into laughter.  
 Qunda, *v.t.* blunt, as a tool.  
 Qunga (Isi), *n.* tambootie grass.  
 Quqa, *v.* trot.  
 Qwa (Ili), *n.* snow.  
 Qwaiba (Um), *n.* biltong.  
 Qwala (Isi), *n.* a lame person.  
 Qweba, *v.* wink at,

## R.

Rabula, *v.* sip.  
 Rala (U), *n.* thread.  
 Ramula, *v.* scorch.  
 Raqa, *v.* surround.  
 Rara, *v.* desire greedily.  
 Raraza, *v.* fizz, as fat.  
 Ratyaratya, *adj.* rough.  
 Rau (Um), *n.* strong emotion.  
 Rankela, *v.t.* compassionate.  
 Raye (Ama), *n.* roughness.  
 Riba (Imi), *n.* business.  
 Rilela, *v.* button, as a coat.  
 Rini (I), *n.* Grahamstown.  
 Rogo (Isi), *n.* hell-fire.  
 Ronqa, *v.* snore.  
 Ropo (Isi), *n.* a harlot.  
 Roro (I), *n.* pelvis.  
 Rubela, *v.* thread, as a needle.  
 Ruda, *v.* go to stool.  
 Rudula, *v.* drag along the ground.  
 Rulumeni (U), *n.* the Governor.  
 Rume (Um), *n.* a den.  
 Ruquzela, *v.* creep on the stomach.  
 Rwanqa (I), *n.* whisker.  
 Rwatyaza, *v.* rustle, as trees.

## S.

Sa or Esa, *v.* dawn.  
 Sa (Umu), *n.* kindness.  
 Saba or Esaba, *v.t.* fear.  
 Sabeka or Esabeka, *v.* be wonderful, astonishing.  
 Saka (I), *n.* a sack.  
 Sakaza, *v.t.* throw about, scatter.  
 Sala, *v.* remain.  
 Salelo (In), *n.* remainder.  
 Sanga (In), *n.* a squinting person.  
 Sango (I), *n.* a gate.  
 Sangu (In), *n.* wild hemp.  
 Sapaza, *v.* squander.  
 Sapo (U for Ulu), *n.* all the children of a family.  
 Sauzela, *v.t.* scold away at.  
 Sebe (Um), *n.* a ray of light.  
 Sebe (U for Ulu), *n.* a bank of a river; beach.  
 Sebenza, *v.i.* work.  
 Sebenzi (Um), *n.* work.

Sekela, *v.t.* support.  
 Sekelo (Isi), *n.* foundation.  
 Sekezela, *v.t.* support, as a proposition.  
 Sela (I), *n.* a thief.  
 Sele (Um), *n.* a ditch.  
 Selesele (I), *n.* a frog.  
 Selo (In), *n.* a hoof.  
 Seme (I), *n.* a paw.  
 Sende (I), *n.* a testicle.  
 Senga, *v.t.* milk.  
 Sengetye (In), *n.* mica-stone.  
 Sensane (In), *n.* a gnat.  
 Sezela, *v.* sniff.  
 Shelene (U), *n.* a shilling.  
 Shinga, *v.i.* act wickedly.  
 Shinga (I), *n.* a base person.  
 Shiya, *v.t.* leave.  
 Shiyela, *v.t.* give snuff to.  
 Shiya (I), *n.* eyebrow.  
 Shudula, *v.i.* scrape with the feet ; paw,  
     as a horse.  
 Shuka, *v.t.* rub a skin.  
 Shukela (U), *n.* sugar.  
 Shukuma, *v.i.* move about, as trees.  
 Shumayela, *v.i.* make a speech : preach.  
 Shumayeli (Um), *n.* a preacher.  
 Shumayeza, *v.t.* inform.  
 Shwabana, *v.i.* shrink.  
 Si (Ama), *n.* sour-milk.  
 Si (Umu), *n.* steam.  
 Si (U for Ulu), *n.* any pleasant odour.  
 Sibekela, *v.t.* cover.  
 Sibekelo (Isi), *n.* a cover.  
 Sibukula, *v.t.* uncover.  
 Sika, *v.t.* cut.  
 Sika (In), *n.* pillar.  
 Siku (Ubu), *n.* winter.  
 Sikisela, *v.* hint.  
 Siko (U for Ulu), *n.* border, edge.  
 Sila, *v.* grind.  
 Sila (In), *n.* dirt.  
 Sila (Isi), *n.* tail of bird.  
 Sila (Um), *n.* tail of animal.  
 Silaka, *v.t.* smear the udder of a cow.  
 Simama, *v.i.* stand firm.  
 Simbi (In), *n.* a y metal.  
 Simelela, *v.* walk with a staff.  
 Simu (In, *plur.* Ama), *n.* a garden.  
 Sina, *v.* dance.

Sinda, *v.i.* escape ; be heavy.  
 Sinde (Isi), *n.* sod, turf.  
 Sindisa, *v.* save.  
 Sindo (Isi), *n.* weight.  
 Sindo (Um), *n.* a noise.  
 Sineka, *v.* grin.  
 Singa (Isi), *n.* string for fastening a calf, &c.  
 Singa (Um), *n.* a current of water.  
 Singata, *v.t.* clasp to the bosom.  
 Sini (In), *n.* gum of the mouth.  
 Sinya, *v.i.* wane, as the moon.  
 Sipa (Um), *n.* sinew.  
 Sipo (In), *n.* soap.  
 Sipula, *v.t.* pull up, as weeds.  
 Sisiteka, *v.i.* move, as an elephant.  
 Sita, *v.t.* screen from view.  
 Sitibala, *v.i.* be cloudy.  
 Siyana (In), *n.* a defect.  
 Siza, *v.t.* help.  
 Siza (I), *n.* site of a house.  
 Sizi (U for Ulu), *n.* sorrow.  
 Sizi (Um), *n.* gunpowder.  
 Sizwa (In), *n.* a young man.  
 So (Ili), *n.* eye.  
 So (In), *n.* kidney.  
 So (Umu), *n.* to-morrow.  
 So (Ubu), *n.* a face.  
 Sobi (In), *n.* resemblance.  
 Soka, *v.* be circumcised.  
 Soka (I), *n.* a bachelor.  
 Sola, *v.t.* blame, (*v.i.*) complain.  
 Sombuluko (Um), *n.* Monday.  
 Sombulula, *v.t.* open, as a roll.  
 Somlotyana (U), *n.* raspberry.  
 Sondela, *v.i.* approach.  
 Sondeza, *v.t.* bring near.  
 Sondo (I), *n.* wheel.  
 Songa, *v.t.* fold.  
 Songe (In), *n.* worm of an anger.  
 Sonta, *v.t.* twist ; keep Sunday.  
 Son'ti (Umu), *n.* real yellow-wood.  
 Sonto (I), *n.* Sunday.  
 Su (Isi), *n.* belly.  
 Su (U for Ulu), *n.* paunch.  
 Sudu (In), *n.* an abundance.  
 Suduka, *v.i.* get out of the light.  
 Sudusa, *v.t.* take out of the light.  
 Suka, *v.i.* get away.  
 Subela, *v.t.* to attack.

Suku (U for Ulu), *n.* day.  
 Suku (Ubu), *n.* night.  
 Sulu (U for Ulu), *n.* scorn.  
 Suluza, *v.t.* wind up a watch.  
 Sumpa (In), *n.* a wart.  
 Sundu (Um), *n.* a worm.  
 Sunduza, *v.t.* push forward.  
 Sungubezi (In), *n.* a mountain-pass.  
 Sungulo (U for Ulu), *n.* awl.  
 Susa, *v.t.* take away.  
 Susa (Isi), *n.* introduction; origin of a matter.  
 Sutisa, *v.* satiate.  
 Suza, *v.* break wind.  
 Suzela, *v.* sting.  
 Swabula, *v.* jeer at.  
 Swakamisa, *v.t.* moisten.  
 Swazi (U for Ulu), *n.* a switch.  
 Swela, *v.t.* need.  
 Swelaboya (In), *n.* assassin.  
 Swele (I), *n.* onion.  
 Swelela, *v.i.* begin to grow dark.  
 Swendo (Um), *n.* nap of a blanket, &c.  
 Sweswe (Um), *n.* a strip of cloth.  
 Swica, *v.t.* strike with a stone.  
 Swipo (Isi), *n.* a whip.

## T.

Ta or Eta, *v.i.* pour between the thumbs.  
 Ta (Um), *n.* short for child.  
 Ta (Isi), *n.* an enemy.  
 Taba (In), *n.* a mountain, hill.  
 Tabata, *v.t.* take.  
 Tafa (I), *n.* flat country.  
 Tafula (I), *n.* a table.  
 Takataka (Ubu), *n.* feebleness.  
 Takata, *v.t.* bewitch.  
 Takati (Um), *n.* a villain.  
 Takazela, *v.t.* welcome, as a friend.  
 Tala (I), *n.* shelf.  
 Tama (I), *n.* a mouthful of liquid.  
 Tama (Um), *n.* a mouthful of food.  
 Tamba, *v.i.* be soft, gentle.  
 Tambama (In), *n.* afternoon.  
 Tambeka, *v.i.* slope.  
 Tambeka (U), *n.* a slope.  
 Tambisa, *v.t.* soften.  
 Tambo (I), *n.* a bone; white beads.  
 Tambo (In), *n.* a reim, &c.

Tambo (Um), *n.* a vein.  
 Tamo (In), *n.* neck.  
 Tanda, *v.t.* love.  
 Tandaza, *v.* pray.  
 Tandela, *v.t.* wind round.  
 Tandi (Um), *n.* a lover.  
 Tando (In), *n.* will.  
 Tando (Isi), *n.* smithy.  
 Tando (U for Ulu), *n.* love.  
 Tandulula, *v.t.* unwind.  
 Tanga (I), *n.* thigh; pumpkin.  
 Tanga (In), *n.* the same age.  
 Tangala (Um), *n.* stone-face.  
 Tangamu (Isi), *n.* heat of the sun.  
 Tango (U for Ulu), *n.* a fence.  
 Tantalaza, *v.i.* go smoothly.  
 Tanyaza, *v.t.* press, as a peach.  
 Tasisela, *v.* give additional information, &c.  
 Tata, *v.t.* take.  
 Tata (Ama), *n.* hurry, haste.  
 Tati (Isi), *n.* clover.  
 Tanini (I), *n.* a town.  
 Te, te, te (ukuti), *v.* be low, as the sun setting.  
 Te (Ama), *n.* saliva.  
 Tebe (Isi), *n.* eating-mat; table-mat.  
 Tefula, *v.* misplace letters in speaking.  
 Tekela, *v.t.* visit for food, &c.  
 Tekeza, *v.i.* speak roughly.  
 Teku (I), *n.* a bay.  
 Tekwini (E), *n.* D'Urban.  
 Tela, *v.* pour, as water.  
 Tele (Ama), *n.* hoof-sickness.  
 Telezi (In), *n.* the sensitive plant.  
 Telosi (I), *n.* a sailor.  
 Temba, *v.* trust.  
 Temba (I), *n.* hope.  
 Tembisa, *v.* promise.  
 Tembiso (Isi), *n.* promise.  
 Tembu (Isi), *n.* polygamy.  
 Tembuzza, *v.i.* practise polygamy.  
 Temeleza, *v.* act devoutly.  
 Tena, *v.t.* castrate.  
 Tende (Isi), *n.* heel.  
 Tende (Um), *n.* a stripe.  
 Tendele (I), *n.* a partridge.  
 Tenga, *v.* buy.  
 Tentesa, *v.* not take one's fancy.

- Tete (In), *n.* a locust.  
 Tetelela, *v.t.* forgive.  
 Tetema, *v.i.* be fretful.  
 Tetisa, *v.* scold.  
 Tetimacala (Um), *n.* a magistrate.  
 Teza, *v.t.* cut firewood.  
 Tezane (Ama), *n.* filgets.  
 Ti, *v.* think, say.  
 Ti (Umu), *n.* tree, medicine.  
 Ti (Ubu), *n.* poison.  
 Ti (Uku), *adv.* namely.  
 Tikatika, *v.t.* tickle.  
 Tikimeza, *v.t.* distract.  
 Tile, *adj.* certain.  
 Tilongo (I), *n.* a prison.  
 Timani (Isi), *n.* black beads.  
 Timba (Um), *n.* a wedding party.  
 Timula, *v.i.* sneeze.  
 Tina, *pro.* we; us.  
 Tina, *adv.* truly.  
 Tini (Isi), *n.* a brick.  
 Tini (Um), *n.* an otter.  
 Tinsila, *v.* throw down a load.  
 Tinta, *v.t.* touch.  
 Tintita, *v.* beat in order to remove dust.  
 Titibala, *v.i.* be sodden.  
 Titihoya (I), *n.* the plover.  
 Titinya, *v.t.* feel a parcel; sound a person.  
     or river.  
 Tixo (U), *n.* God.  
 Tiya, *v.* trap.  
 To (U for Ulu), *n.* something.  
 To (Isi), *n.* limb.  
 Toba, *v.* bow, bend.  
 Toba (Isi), *n.* a fomentation; a poultice.  
 Toboza, *v.t.* flatter.  
 Tokoza, *v.i.* rejoice.  
 Pokozo (In), *n.* happiness.  
 Tola, *v.* pick up, find.  
 Tombe (Isi), *n.* a doll.  
 Tombi (In), *n.* a maiden.  
 Tombo (Isi), *n.* a spout.  
 Tombo (Um), *n.* a fountain, well.  
 Tombo (Imi), *n.* malt.  
 Tome (I), *n.* a bridle.  
 Tondolo (Um), *n.* a wether.  
 Tongo (Ubu), *n.* sleep.  
 Tonsa, *v.* drop.  
 Tonsi (I), *n.* a drop.  
 Totoba, *v.i.* walk slowly, as an invalid.  
 Totosa, *v.t.* pet.  
 Tuba (I), *n.* an opportunity.  
 Tuba (Isi), *n.* an opening.  
 Tubi (Isi), *n.* milk porridge.  
 Tubula, *v.t.* thump, as a calf sucking.  
 Tuka or Etuka, *v.i.* start, be startled.  
 Tukulu (Isi), stem of native pipe.  
 Tukulula, *v.t.* untie.  
 Tukutela, *v.i.* be angry.  
 Tukutuku (Isi), *n.* perspiration, arising  
     from mental agitation.  
 Tula, *v.i.* be quiet, silent.  
 Tulu (Isi), *n.* a deaf person.  
 Tulula, *v.* pour out.  
 Tulwa (Um), *n.* wild medlar tree.  
 Tuma, *v.* send.  
 Tuma (Um), *n.* thorn-apple.  
 Tumba, *v.t.* take captive.  
 Tumba (I), *n.* a boil.  
 Tumbu (Ama), *n.* bowels.  
 Tumbu (Ubu), *n.* pulp of fruit, &c.  
 Tuna, *v.t.* make ridiculous, &c.  
 Tuna (I), *n.* a grave.  
 Tundu (I), *n.* upper jaw.  
 Tunga, *v.* sew.  
 Tunga (I), *n.* a milking-vessel.  
 Tungo (Um), *n.* a seam.  
 Tungulu (Um), *n.* Natal-plum.  
 Tunganono (In), *n.* the secretary bird.  
 Tunja (In), *n.* eye of a needle.  
 Tunqa, *v.i.* smoke.  
 Tuntu (Ubu), *n.* bluntness.  
 Tunuka, *v.t.* hurt an old wound.  
 Tunzi (I), *n.* shadow of a large object.  
 Tunzi (Isi), *n.* shadow of a small object.  
 Tupaza, *v.t.* toddle.  
 Tusa or Etusa, *v.t.* startle.  
 Tusi (I), *n.* brass.  
 Tuta, *v.t.* convey from, or to a place.  
 Tuto (In), *n.* load, cargo.  
 Tutu (In), *n.* smoke.  
 Tutumela, *v.* tremble.  
 Tutwane (Isi), *n.* epileptic fit.  
 Tuva (In), *n.* scurf in the hair.  
 Twabi (I), *n.* hiccough.  
 Twala, *v.* carry.  
 Twala (In), *n.* a louse.  
 Twalo (Um), *n.* a loud.

Twanyazeka, *v.* be mellow, as fruit.  
 Twapa, *v.* commit perjury.  
 Twasa or Etwasa, *v.* **apper**, as the new moon.  
 Twazi (Um), *n.* monkey-rope.  
 Twatwi (Isi), *n.* hoar-frost.  
 Twesa, *v.t.* load.  
 Tya, *v.* be burned.  
 Tya, *adj.* fresh, new.  
 Tya (Ubu), *n.* youth.  
 Tyisa, *v.t.* burn.  
 Tyabalalisa, *v.t.* destroy.  
 Tyala, *v.t.* plant.  
 Tyanela, *v.t.* sweep.  
 Tyani (U for Ubu), *n.* grass.  
 Tyatyaza (I), *n.* a blister.  
 Tyaya, *v.t.* beat.  
 Tyayela, *v.t.* drive a wagon.  
 Tyayeli (Um), *n.* a wagon-driver.  
 Tye (Ili), *n.* a stone.  
 Tye (In), *n.* an ostrich.  
 Tyekula, *v.i.* skip about.  
 Tyela, *v.t.* tell.  
 Tyela (In), *n.* burnt porridge.  
 Tyelela, *v.i.* slip, slide.  
 Tylezi (Ubu), *n.* slipperiness.  
 Tyengula (In), *n.* a snuff-spoon.  
 Tyentyisa, *v.* change, as money.  
 Tyezi (Um), *n.* Bushman's river.  
 Tyisa, *v.t.* burn.  
 Tyityiliza, *v.* plough up the corn, as a locked wheel.  
 Tyo, *v.i.* say, affirm.  
 Tyodo (U for Ulu), *n.* blue calico.  
 Tyokolo (Isi), rejected lover.  
 Tyona, *v.i.* sink; set, as the sun.  
 Tyntyu (U), *n.* a hot spring.  
 Tywaqa, *v.* be astringent.  
 Tywala (U for Ulu), *n.* Kafir-beer.  
 Tywama or Etywama, *v.t.* eat the first fruits.  
 Tywila, *v.* twist words.

# U.

Ukuba, *conj.* that, if.  
 Ukuti, *adv.* namely; that.  
 Ukuze, *adv.* in order that.  
 Ula (Isi), *n.* a fool.  
 Ula (Ubu), *n.* folly.

Uma, *adv.* if.  
 Umakazi, *adv.* I wonder.  
 Umba (Isi), *n.* mould, smut, &c.  
 Undhlu (I), *n.* a young dog, &c.  
 Unga, *v.* influence by a charm.  
 Uru (Um), *n.* loose mealies, &c.

# V.

Va or Eva, *v.i.* come, as butter  
 Va (Ili), *n.* a thorn.  
 Vaba (Im), *n.* a skin-vessel for milk.  
 Vagatya, *v.* walk for pleasure, &c.  
 Vala, *v.t.* shut, as a door; stop up the entrance.  
 Valelisa, *v.* say farewell, &c.  
 Valo (Isi), *n.* a door.  
 Valo (Um), *n.* a cross-bar for shutting cattle-kraal.  
 Valo (U for Ulu), *n.* fright.  
 Vama, *v.* abound in.  
 Vama (Im), *n.* majority.  
 Vamba (I), *n.* a sloven, a slut.  
 Vana (Im), *n.* a lamb.  
 Vanganisa, *v.* mix with.  
 Veku (I), *n.* a deep pit for trapping game.  
 Vela, *v.i.* come from.  
 Velo (Im), *n.* custom, nature.  
 Venivane (U for Ulu), *n.* butterfly.  
 Veza, *v.t.* produce.  
 Vi (I), *n.* kneepan.  
 Vi (U for Ulu), *n.* a grey hair.  
 Vika, *v.* fence, parry.  
 Vikela, *v.* ward off.  
 Viki (Im), *n.* fencer.  
 Vikiza, *v.t.* cut down, as hail.  
 Vila (I), *n.* a lazy person.  
 Vilapa, *v.i.* be lazy.  
 Vimba, *v.* stop, as a bottle.  
 Vimbi (Um), *n.* continuous rain.  
 Vimbo (Isi), *n.* a stopper.  
 Vingili (I), *n.* a shop.  
 Vivi (Isi), *n.* lukewarm water.  
 Vivinya, *v.* shake, as a spear.  
 Vokomalisa, *v.t.* swell with pride, &c.  
 Vondwe (I), *n.* a large water rat.  
 Vongwe (U), *n.* drone.  
 Vova, *v.t.* strain, filter.  
 Vu (Im), *n.* a sheep.  
 Vuba, *v.t.* mix, as sour milk with mealies.

Vubelo (Im), *n.* leaven.  
 Vubu (Im), *n.* hippopotamus.  
 Vubula, *v.t.* bully.  
 Vuku, *v.i.* arise.  
 Vukuza, *v.t.* turn up soft soil.  
 Vukuzane (Im), *n.* a mole.  
 Vula, *v.* open, as a door.  
 Vula (Im), *n.* rain.  
 Vuma, *v.* consent, assent to ; sound, as a musical instrument.  
 Vumo (I), *n.* a tune.  
 Vumbulula, *v.* uncork.  
 Vuna, *v.t.* reap.  
 Vunda, *v.i.* be fertile.  
 Vundumvundu (Im), *n.* soft soil.  
 Vungazela, *v.i.* murmur.  
 Vungula, *v.i.* pick the teeth.  
 Vungunyeka, *v.i.* grumble in a low voice.  
 Vunguza, *v.* blow strong.  
 Vunula, *v.* adorn.  
 Vunya (Um), *n.* fish-moth.  
 Vusa, *v.t.* awaken, alarm.  
 Vuso (I), *n.* alarm.  
 Vutela, *v.t.* blow a fire.  
 Vutulula, *v.t.* shake off.  
 Vuvuka, *v.i.* swell.  
 Vuza, *v.i.* reward ; leak.  
 Vuzamanzi (I), *n.* a kind of watersnake.  
 Vuzo (Um), *n.* a reward.

## W.

Wa, *v.i.* fall.  
 Wa (Isi), *n.* precipice.  
 Wabazela, *v.* flap the wings, as a bird.  
 Wala (Ama), *n.* hastiness.  
 Wawa (I), *n.* bragging talk.  
 Wela, *v.* cross, as a river ; fall upon.  
 Wele (I), *n.* a twin.  
 Wena, *pro.* you.  
 Wetu, my good fellow.  
 Wetye (U), *n.* hollow of the hand.  
 Weta, *v.* push down.  
 Wo ! *int.* anger, admiration.  
 Wola, *v.* collect, as ashes.  
 Wolokohleka, *v.i.* fall with a loud crash.  
 Woza, *v.i.* come (used in the 2. Per.)

## X.

X ! *int.* expressing vexation.

Xabana, *v.* quarrel (na).  
 Xabeka, *v.i.* be in a difficulty.  
 Xanti (Isi), *n.* spine of a bullock.  
 Xapa, *v.* lap, as a cat.  
 Xapazela, *v.i.* sputter, as boiling water.  
 Xapozi (I), *n.* a marsh.  
 Xatula, *v.i.* impress anything soft.  
 Xebe (Isi), *n.* a sweetheart.  
 Xeka, *v.i.* be loose, as a nail, stake, hinge.  
 Xeku (I), *n.* an old man.  
 Xiba (I), *n.* a watch-hut.  
 Xilongo (I), *n.* a trumpet.  
 Xoki (I), *n.* a liar.  
 Kokozela, *v.t.* raise a hubbub.  
 Kokozeli (Um), *n.* a turbulent person.  
 Xolo (I), *n.* bark of a tree.  
 Xonza, *v.t.* knock off, as mealies from the cob.  
 Xopa, *v.t.* strike in the eye.  
 Xotya, *v.t.* drive away.  
 Xova, *v.t.* mash, mix.  
 Xoxa, *v.t.* woo.  
 Xubanisa, *v.t.* mingle.  
 Xuka, *v.i.* halt, be lame.  
 Xuku (Isi), *n.* a multitude of people.  
 Xukuzza, *v.t.* shake violently.  
 Xumelela, *v.* put on, as more oxen.  
 Xutya, *v.t.* cram, as a bag.  
 Xuxuma, *v.i.* struggle to get free.  
 Xuxuzela, *v.i.* rumble.  
 Xwala (I), *n.* a gathering in the lungs.  
 Xwaya, *v.* beware.  
 Xwazi (Isi), *n.* a bruise.  
 Xwembe (Isi), *n.* a ladle.

## Y.

Ya, *v.* go.  
 Yala, *v.t.* order, admonish.  
 Yali (Um), *n.* an admonisher.  
 Yalelo (Um), *n.* a law.  
 Yaleza, *v.t.* order ; charge.  
 Yalo (Imi), *n.* commands.  
 Yaluyalu (Isi), *n.* a whirlpool.  
 Yambazi (I), *n.* thin porridge.  
 Yangaza, *v.i.* look confounded.  
 Yayateka, *v.i.* writhe.  
 Yebo, *adv.* yes.  
 Yebo tina, *adv.* yes indeed.

Yeka, *v.t.* let alone ; leave off.  
 Yeka ! *int.* well to be sure ; dear me !  
 Yekela, *v.t.* forgive.  
 Yekezisa, *v.t.* slacken, as a rope.  
 Yeko (Um), *n.* hair in twisted strings.  
 Yenga, *c.* tempt, entice.  
 Yengi (Um), *n.* a tempter.  
 Yeni (Um), *n.* bridegroom.  
 Yenzakahle, *adv.* wait a moment.  
 Yeta, *v.i.* be low in spirits.  
 Yezane (Um), *n.* willow-tree.  
 Yezi (Isi), *n.* giddiness.  
 Yildo (U), *n.* thy, or your father.  
 Yinge (Isi), *n.* circle.  
 Yingiliza, *c.* make a circle.  
 Yise (U), *n.* his, or her father.  
 Yovuza, *v.* eat hot food in haste.

## Z

Za or Eza, *v.* come.  
 Za (Ili), *n.* a wave.  
 Zaba (I), *n.* a pretence.  
 Zaca, *v.* be lean.  
 Zacisa, *v.* to make lean.  
 Zagiga (U), *n.* mumps.  
 Zala, *v.t.* generate.  
 Zala (Um), *n.* a cousin.  
 Zalo (In), *n.* progeny.  
 Zalwane (Um), *n.* a brother.  
 Zama, *v.* strive.  
 Zamazama, *v.* quake, as the earth.  
 Zambane (I), *n.* potato.  
 Zamecolo (U), *n.* a flood.  
 Zamula, *v.* yawn.  
 Zanyana (Um), *n.* a nurse of children.  
 Zaula, *v.* cut the skin.  
 Ze (I), *n.* nothing ; nonsense.  
 Zeka (Uku), *n.* marriage.  
 Zeke (Isi), *n.* a man rejected by the girls.  
 Zekelala, *v.i.* go a long way round.  
 Zele (I), *n.* a green stalk.  
 Zenga, *v.i.* use many words.  
 Zenze (I), *n.* a flea.  
 Zenze (Isi), *n.* scissors.  
 Zenzisa, *v.* dissemble.  
 Zi (Umu), *n.* a kraal.

Zi (U for Ulu), *n.* strong fibre.  
 Ziba, *v.i.* pretend not to do, or hear ; act with reticence ; obliterate.  
 Ziba (Isi), *n.* patch of cloth ; pond.  
 Zibadu, *adj.* speckled.  
 Zibuko (I), *n.* drift, ford.  
 Zibukula, *v.* open, as a pot or box.  
 Zibulo (I), *n.* first-born.  
 Zika, *v.i.* sink ; do deep into a thing.  
 Zikilili (Um), *n.* a slight obstacle.  
 Ziko (I), *n.* fireplace.  
 Zila, *v.t.* abstain from.  
 Zila (Um), *n.* cattle-trail.  
 Zimba (Um), *n.* the body.  
 Zinu (I), *n.* a cannibal.  
 Zindhla, *c.* ponder.  
 Zingela, *v.t.* hunt.  
 Zinyane (I), *n.* a chick.  
 Zinyaza, *v.* be conscious of.  
 Zinyo (I), *n.* a tooth.  
 Zisisa, *v.* intrude one's self.  
 Zipo (U for Ulu), *n.* finger-nail.  
 Zolo (Ama), *n.* dew.  
 Zombe (I), *n.* circuitous path.  
 Zonda, *v.* hate.  
 Zondo (In), *n.* hatred.  
 Zukulwana (Um), *n.* a grand-child.  
 Zukulwana (Isi), *n.* generation.  
 Zula, *v.* wander.  
 Zulu (I), *n.* sky ; heaven.  
 Zuma, *v.t.* surprise.  
 Zungeza, *v.i.* revolve.  
 Zungu (Isi), *n.* loneliness.  
 Zunguzane (Isi), *n.* giddiness.  
 Zunguzungu (I), *n.* nape of the neck.  
 Zuza, *v.t.* get ; acquire.  
 Zuzo (In), *n.* gain.  
 Zuzu (Um), *n.* a while.  
 Zwa, Ezwa, *c.* perceive by any sense but sight.  
 Zwakala or Ezwakala, *c.* be tasted, heard, &c.  
 Zwane (I), *n.* toe.  
 Zwe (I), *n.* land ; country.  
 Zwe (Isi), *n.* tribe.  
 Zwi (Ili), *n.* word ; voice.

LONDON :  
GILBERT AND RIVINGTON, LD.,  
ST. JOHN'S HOUSE, CLERKENWELL, E.C.











